

PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT NO. 1  
(To the Prospectus dated September 9, 2022)

**Primary Offering of  
3,724,500 Shares of Common Stock Issuable Upon Exercise of Warrants  
Secondary Offering of  
14,434,863 Shares of Common Stock  
849,500 Warrants to Purchase Shares of Common Stock**



**Apexigen, Inc.**

This prospectus supplement supplements the prospectus, dated September 9, 2022 (as amended, the "Prospectus"), which forms a part of our registration statement on Form S-1 (No. 333-266846). This prospectus supplement is being filed to update and supplement the information in the Prospectus with the information contained in i) our Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 14, 2022 (the "November 2022 Report"), ii) our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 14, 2022 (the "Quarterly Report") and iii) our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on January 25, 2023 (the "January 2023 Report" and, together with the November 2022 Report, the "Current Reports"). Accordingly, we have attached the Quarterly Report and the Current Reports to this prospectus supplement.

The Prospectus and this prospectus supplement relate to the issuance by us of up to 3,724,500 shares of our Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("Common Stock") issuable upon the exercise of warrants, including (i) 2,875,000 shares issuable upon the exercise of an aggregate of 2,875,000 warrants, each of which is exercisable at a price of \$11.50 per share held by the former public stockholders of Brookline Capital Acquisition Corp., a Delaware corporation, our predecessor (the "Public Warrants"), (ii) 726,000 shares issuable upon the exercise of an aggregate of 726,000 warrants, each of which is exercisable at a price of \$11.50 per share held by the PIPE Investors (the "PIPE Warrants"), and (iii) 123,500 shares issuable upon the exercise of an aggregate of 123,500 warrants, each of which is exercisable at a price of \$11.50 per share held by Brookline Capital Holdings, LLC (the "Private Placement Warrants"). The warrants were all purchased as a part of a unit that consisted of one share of our Common Stock and one-half of one warrant. The purchase price of each unit was \$10.00 and the purchase price of each warrant was negligible.

In addition, the Prospectus and this prospectus supplement relate to the resale by the selling stockholders named in this prospectus (or their permitted transferees) (the "Selling Securityholders") of up to (a) 14,434,863 shares of Common Stock, including (i) 8,009,884 shares held by certain former stockholders of Legacy Apexigen, including our officers and directors (the "Business Combination Shares"), which shares were purchased at a weighted average price of \$10.40 per share, (ii) 1,452,000 shares held by the PIPE Investors (the "PIPE Shares"), which shares were purchased at a weighted average price of \$10.00 per share, (iii) 1,248,479 shares held by Brookline Capital Holdings, LLC, together with our predecessor's IPO underwriter and certain of its employees (the "Private Shares"), which shares were purchased at a weighted average price of \$1.99 per share, (iv) 2,875,000 shares issuable upon the exercise of the Public Warrants, (v) 726,000 shares issuable upon the exercise of the PIPE Warrants, and (vi) 123,500 shares issuable upon the exercise of the Private Placement Warrants (collectively, the "Offered Shares"); and (b) 849,500 warrants, including (i) 726,000 PIPE Warrants and (ii) 123,500 Private Placement Warrants (collectively, the "Offered Warrants").

We are a "smaller reporting company" and an "emerging growth company" as those terms are defined under the federal securities laws and, as such, have elected to comply with certain reduced public company disclosure and reporting requirements.

Our Common Stock is currently listed on The Nasdaq Capital Market ("Nasdaq") under the symbol "APGN." Our public warrants are traded on Nasdaq under the symbol "APGNW." On January 26, 2022, the last reported sales price of our Common stock was \$2.13 per share and the last reported sale price of our warrants was \$0.106 per warrant.

This prospectus supplement should be read in conjunction with the Prospectus and is not complete without, and may not be delivered or utilized except in connection with, the Prospectus, including any amendments or supplements thereto. This prospectus supplement is qualified by reference to the Prospectus, including any amendments or supplements thereto, except to the extent that the information in this prospectus supplement updates and supersedes the information contained therein. If there is any inconsistency between the information in the Prospectus and this prospectus supplement, you should rely on the information in this prospectus supplement.

**Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Before buying any securities, you should carefully read the discussion of the risks of investing in our securities in "Risk Factors" beginning on page 10 of the Prospectus.**

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus supplement or the Prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

Prospectus Supplement dated January 30, 2023.

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 8-K**

**CURRENT REPORT**

**Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

**Date of Report (Date of earliest event reported): November 08, 2022**

**Apexigen, Inc.**

(Exact name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)

**Delaware**  
(State or Other Jurisdiction  
of Incorporation)

**001-39488**  
(Commission File Number)

**85-1260244**  
(IRS Employer  
Identification No.)

**75 Shoreway Road  
Suite C  
San Carlos, California**  
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

**94070**  
(Zip Code)

**Registrant's Telephone Number, Including Area Code: (650) 931-6236**

(Former Name or Former Address, if Changed Since Last Report)

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K filing is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions:

- ☐ Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)
- ☐ Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)
- ☐ Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b))
- ☐ Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c))

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:**

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, \$0.0001 par value per share	APGN	The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC
Warrants, each whole warrant exercisable for one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share	APGNW	The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (§ 230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (§ 240.12b-2 of this chapter).

Emerging growth company ☒

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐

#### **Item 4.01. Changes in the Registrant's Certifying Accountant**

##### *Dismissal of independent registered public accounting firm*

On November 8, 2022, the audit committee of the board of directors (the "Audit Committee") of Apexigen, Inc. (the "Company"), dismissed Marcum LLP ("Marcum"), the Company's independent registered public accounting firm prior to the Company's business combination transaction that closed on July 29, 2022 (the "Business Combination").

Marcum's report on the Company's financial statements as of December 31, 2021 and 2020, and for the year ended December 31, 2021 and for the period from May 27, 2020 (inception) through December 31, 2020, did not contain an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion, and was not qualified or modified as to uncertainty, audit scope or accounting principles.

During the period from May 27, 2020 (inception) to December 31, 2021 and the subsequent interim period through November 8, 2022, there were no disagreements between the Company and Marcum on any matter of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure or auditing scope or procedure, which disagreements, if not resolved to the satisfaction of Marcum, would have caused it to make reference to the subject matter of the disagreements in connection with its report. During the period from May 27, 2020 (inception) to December 31, 2021 and the subsequent interim period through November 8, 2022, there were no "reportable events" (as defined in Item 304(a)(1)(v) of Regulation S-K under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended).

The Company provided Marcum with a copy of the foregoing disclosures and requested that Marcum furnish the Company with a letter addressed to the SEC stating whether it agrees with the statements made by the Company set forth above. A copy of Marcum's letter, dated November 14, 2022, is filed as Exhibit 16.1 to this Current Report on Form 8-K.

On November 8, 2022, the Audit Committee approved the engagement of Moss Adams LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm to audit the Company's consolidated financial statements for the year ending December 31, 2022. Moss Adams LLP served as the independent registered public accounting firm of Apexigen America, Inc. (formerly known as Apexigen, Inc.) prior to the Business Combination. During the period from May 27, 2020 (inception) to December 31, 2021 and subsequent interim period through November 8, 2022, neither the Company nor anyone on the Company's behalf consulted with Moss Adams LLP with respect to (i) the application of accounting principles to a specified transaction, either completed or proposed or the type of audit opinion that might be rendered on the Company's financial statements, and neither a written report or oral advice was provided that Moss Adams LLP concluded was an important factor considered by the Company in reaching a decision as to the accounting, auditing, or financial reporting issue, or (ii) any other matter that was either the subject of a disagreement or a reportable event (each as defined above).

#### **Item 8.01 Other Event.**

On November 14, 2022, the Company issued a press release announcing data from a Phase 2 clinical trial testing sotigalimab in combination with doxorubicin in patients with liposarcoma.

A copy of the press release is filed herewith as Exhibit 99.1, and the information contained therein is incorporated by reference into this Current Report on Form 8-K.

#### **Item 9.01 Financial Statements and Exhibits.**

##### **(d) Exhibit.**

Exhibit No.	Description
16.1	Letter from Marcum LLP as to the change in certifying accountant, dated as of November 14, 2022
99.1	Press Release dated November 14, 2022
104	Cover Page Interactive Data File

---

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

**Apexigen, Inc.**

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ Xiaodong Yang

Xiaodong Yang, M.D., Ph.D.

President & Chief Executive Officer

---

November 14, 2022

Securities and Exchange Commission  
100 F Street, N.E.  
Washington, DC 20549

Commissioners:

We have read the statements made by Apexigen, Inc. (formerly known as Brookline Capital Acquisition Corp.) under Item 4.01 of its Form 8-K dated November 8, 2022. We agree with the statements concerning our Firm in such Form 8-K; we are not in a position to agree or disagree with other statements of Apexigen, Inc. contained therein.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Marcum LLP

Marcum LLP

---

## **Apexigen Announces Positive Interim Results from Phase 2 Trial Evaluating its CD40 Antibody, Sotigalimab, in Combination with Doxorubicin in Patients with Liposarcoma**

*-Patients with liposarcoma (LPS) demonstrated prolonged median PFS (mPFS) relative to historical controls treated with standard of care of doxorubicin-*

*-Encouraging PFS data from the ongoing investigator sponsored trial in collaboration with Columbia University supports expansion of the LPS cohort to inform a potential registration-enabling trial-*

*-Apexigen to host investor call with sarcoma expert and principal investigator, Gary Schwartz, M.D. at Columbia University, today, November 14, at 8:00 a.m. ET-*

**SAN CARLOS, CA – November 14, 2022** – Apexigen, Inc. (NASDAQ: APGN) a clinical-stage company focused on developing innovative antibody-based therapeutics for the treatment of cancer with a focus on immuno-oncology, today announced topline data from an ongoing Phase 2 investigator sponsored trial in collaboration with Columbia University, evaluating sotigalimab (sotiga), Apexigen's agonist antibody targeting CD40, in combination with standard of care doxorubicin (dox), in patients with advanced soft tissue sarcoma (STS). In the subgroup of patients with liposarcoma (LPS), the second most common STS, treatment with sotiga combined with dox resulted in a median progression-free survival (mPFS) of 12.45 months relative to the historically observed mPFS of less than 5 months in patients treated with dox monotherapy.

"While the incidence of soft tissue sarcoma continues to rise, efforts to improve upon the standard of care treatment have largely stalled and remained largely unchanged for years," said Gary Schwartz, M.D., Chief of Columbia University Medical Center's Division of Hematology and Oncology and Principal Investigator of the study. "In contrast, results from the ongoing Phase 2 trial showed the subgroup of patients with LPS treated with sotigalimab in combination with dox achieved a mPFS more than double than historically seen with dox alone. With the favorable safety observed in these patients, the encouraging results support future evaluation of sotigalimab-based combinations while speaking to the potential of sotigalimab in the maintenance therapy setting."

Frank Hsu, M.D., Chief Medical Officer of Apexigen commented, "In collaboration with Columbia University, we are very pleased to have successfully completed enrollment of the LPS cohort and are encouraged by the promising clinical results to date. This impressive increase in PFS is an improvement of clinical benefit that builds on the standard of care treatment of this disease. We now plan to expand enrollment with an additional 10 patients with LPS. This expansion cohort will supplement the growing dataset suggesting sotiga in combination with dox may provide superior clinical benefit compared to emerging treatment approaches and currently approved standard of care chemotherapy. Further, these results could inform a potential Phase 3 registration-enabling study for patients with LPS in the first-line setting."

The objective of this ongoing study is to evaluate the efficacy of this novel combination and to further characterize the safety and feasibility of the combination of sotiga with dox. More information about the study is available at:

---

Interim efficacy results:

- Sotiga combined with dox led to encouraging PFS in the completed LPS cohort consisting of dedifferentiated liposarcomas.
  - o As of September 27, 2022, of the 10 evaluable patients with LPS, the mPFS was 12.45 months (range: 1.4 to 25.3 months), which compares favorably to the historically observed mPFS of LPS patients treated with dox alone (<5 months).
  - o Results support the initiation of an expansion cohort with an additional 10 patients to inform a potential registration-enabling trial in first-line LPS patients.

**Conference Call at 8:00 a.m. ET Today**

Apexigen will host a video conference call and webcast for investors and analysts today at 8:00 a.m. ET to discuss the most recent clinical data. Gary Schwartz, M.D., Chief of Columbia University Medical Center's Division of Hematology and Oncology and Principal Investigator of the study, as well as members of Apexigen's senior management team, will lead the discussion on the study results. The live webcast and replay can be accessed in the "Investors" section of our website ([apexigen.com](https://www.apexigen.com)), under "Events & Presentations" or by clicking <https://ir.apexigen.com/events-presentations>.

**About Apexigen**

Apexigen is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on discovering and developing a new generation of antibody therapeutics for oncology, with an emphasis on new immuno-oncology agents designed to harness the patient's immune system to combat and eradicate cancer. Sotigalimab and Apexigen's other programs were discovered using Apexigen's proprietary APXiMAB™ discovery platform. This platform has enabled Apexigen and its collaboration partners to discover and develop therapeutic antibodies against a variety of molecular targets, including targets that are difficult to drug with conventional antibody technologies. Multiple product candidates have been discovered using the APXiMAB platform, one of which is commercially available and the others are in clinical development, either internally by Apexigen or by its licensees. For more information, please visit [www.apexigen.com](https://www.apexigen.com).

**Forward-Looking Statements**

This press release contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, including statements regarding Apexigen's ability to provide innovative oncology solutions, meet the needs of patients and provide meaningful clinical benefits; the potential attributes, uses and effectiveness of Apexigen's lead candidate sotigalimab, including in combination with doxorubicin and in patients with LPS; Apexigen's plans, timelines and expectations with respect to its ongoing Phase 2 investigator sponsored trial in collaboration with Columbia University, including expanded enrollment in patients with LPS and the expectation that it is a potential registration-enabling study; and statements made by Apexigen's Chief Medical Officer and Columbia University Medical Center's Chief of the Division of Hematology and Oncology. Any statements contained herein that are not statements of historical fact may be deemed to be forward-looking statements. In addition, any statements that refer to projections, forecasts or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any

---

underlying assumptions, are forward-looking statements. The words “anticipate,” “believe,” “continue,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intends,” “may,” “might,” “plan,” “possible,” “potential,” “predict,” “project,” “should,” “would” and similar expressions may identify forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that a statement is not forward-looking. The forward-looking statements contained in this press release are based on certain assumptions and analyses made by the Apexigen’s management in light of their respective experience and their perception of historical trends, current conditions and expected future developments and their potential effects on Apexigen, as well as other factors they believe are appropriate in the circumstances. There can be no assurance that future developments affecting Apexigen will be those that Apexigen has anticipated. These forward-looking statements involve a number of risks, uncertainties (some of which are beyond Apexigen’s control) or other assumptions that may cause actual results or performance to be materially different from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements, including Apexigen’s early stages of clinical drug development, Apexigen’s ability to achieve successful clinical results or commercial adoption of sotigalimab, Apexigen’s competitors developing and marketing products that are more effective, safer, or less expensive than Apexigen’s product candidates, delays or difficulties in the enrollment of patients in Apexigen’s clinical trials, or that Apexigen will have sufficient capital to operate as anticipated. Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize, or should any of our assumptions prove incorrect, actual results may vary in material respects from those projected in these forward-looking statements. Additional factors that could cause actual results to differ are discussed under the heading “Risk Factors” and in other sections of Apexigen’s current and periodic reports filed or furnished from time to time with the SEC. All forward-looking statements in this press release are made as of the date hereof, based on information available to Apexigen, and Apexigen assumes no obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statement, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

**Investor Contact:**

Bruce Mackle  
LifeSci Advisors  
+1-646-889-1200  
[bmackle@lifesciadvisors.com](mailto:bmackle@lifesciadvisors.com)

**Apexigen Contact:**

William Duke  
Chief Financial Officer  
Apexigen, Inc.  
+1-650-931-6236  
[ir@apexigen.com](mailto:ir@apexigen.com)

---



**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, DC 20549**

**FORM 10-Q**

(Mark One)

☒ **QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the quarterly period ended September 30, 2022

OR

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission File Number: 001-39488

**Apexigen, Inc.**

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

**Delaware**

(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**75 Shoreway Road, Suite C  
San Carlos, CA**

(Address of principal executive offices)

**85-1260244**

(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**94070**

(Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (650) 931-6236

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share	APGN	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC
Warrants, each whole warrant exercisable for one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share	APGNW	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated filer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Smaller reporting company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		Emerging growth company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes ☐ No ☒

As of November 10, 2022, the registrant had 22,565,347 shares of common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share, outstanding.

## Table of Contents

	Page
<b>PART I.</b>	
<b><a href="#">FINANCIAL INFORMATION</a></b>	3
Item 1.	3
<a href="#">Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	3
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets as of September 30, 2022 (Unaudited) and December 31, 2021</a>	3
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss for the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2022 and 2021</a>	4
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity for the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2022 and 2021</a>	5
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for Nine Months Ended September 30, 2022 and 2021</a>	8
<a href="#">Notes to Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	9
Item 2.	25
<a href="#">Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	25
Item 3.	38
<a href="#">Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</a>	38
Item 4.	38
<a href="#">Controls and Procedures</a>	38
<b>PART II.</b>	
<b><a href="#">OTHER INFORMATION</a></b>	39
Item 1.	39
<a href="#">Legal Proceedings</a>	39
Item 1A.	39
<a href="#">Risk Factors</a>	39
Item 2.	88
<a href="#">Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds</a>	88
Item 3.	88
<a href="#">Defaults Upon Senior Securities</a>	88
Item 4.	88
<a href="#">Mine Safety Disclosures</a>	88
Item 5.	88
<a href="#">Other Information</a>	88
Item 6.	89
<a href="#">Exhibits</a>	89
<a href="#">Signatures</a>	90

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q contains forward-looking statements. All statements other than statements of historical facts contained in this report, including statements regarding our future results of operations and financial position, business strategy, product candidates, planned preclinical studies and clinical trials, results of clinical trials, research and development costs, regulatory approvals, timing, and likelihood of success, as well as plans and objectives of management for future operations, are forward-looking statements. These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties, and other important factors that are in some cases beyond our control and may cause our actual results, performance, or achievements to be materially different from any future results, performance, or achievements expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements.

In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terms such as “may,” “will,” “should,” “would,” “expect,” “plan,” “anticipate,” “could,” “intend,” “target,” “project,” “contemplate,” “believe,” “estimate,” “predict,” “potential,” or “continue” or the negative of these terms or other similar expressions. Forward-looking statements contained in this report include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- our success in retaining or recruiting, or changes required in, our officers, key employees or directors;
- our public securities’ potential liquidity and trading;
- the lack of a market for our securities;
- our financial performance;
- failure to realize the anticipated benefits of the Business Combination (as defined in Part I, Item 1, Note 3, “Business Combination,” in our notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q);
- the outcome of any legal proceedings that may be instituted against us related to the Business Combination;
- the timing and focus of our current and future clinical trials, and the reporting of data from those trials;
- our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approval of our product candidates;
- our estimates of the number of patients in the United States who suffer from the diseases we are targeting and the number of patients that will enroll in clinical trials;
- the timing or likelihood of regulatory filings and approvals for our product candidates for various diseases;
- our plans relating to commercializing our product candidates, if approved, including which indications will be pursued;
- the ability of our clinical trials to demonstrate safety and efficacy, and other positive results, of our product candidates;
- the beneficial characteristics, safety, efficacy, and therapeutic effects of our product candidates;
- the development of competitors’ product candidates;
- existing regulations and regulatory developments in the United States and other jurisdictions;
- the need to hire additional personnel and our ability to attract and retain such personnel;
- our plans and ability to obtain, maintain, enforce, or protect intellectual property rights;
- our continued reliance on third parties to conduct additional clinical trials of our product candidates, and for the manufacture of our product candidates for preclinical studies and clinical trials; and
- the success of our licensing agreements.

We have based these forward-looking statements largely on our current expectations and projections about our business, the industry in which we operate and financial trends that we believe may affect our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects, and these forward-looking statements are not guarantees of future performance or development. These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this report and are subject to a number of risks, uncertainties, and assumptions described in the section titled “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this report. Because forward-looking statements are inherently subject to risks and uncertainties, some of which cannot be predicted or quantified, you should not rely on these forward-looking statements as predictions of future events. The events and circumstances reflected in our forward-looking statements may not be achieved or occur and actual results could differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statements. We do not plan to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements contained herein whether as a result of any new information, future events, or otherwise.

In addition, statements that “we believe” and similar statements reflect our beliefs and opinions on the relevant subject. These statements are based upon information available to us as of the date of this report, and while we believe such information forms a reasonable basis for such statements, such information may be limited or incomplete, and our statements should not be read to indicate that we have conducted an exhaustive inquiry into, or review of, all potentially available relevant information. These statements are inherently uncertain, and you are cautioned not to unduly rely upon these statements.

PART I—FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Item 1. Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**  
**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**  
(In thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	September 30, 2022 (Unaudited)	December 31, 2021
<b>Assets</b>		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 12,708	\$ 23,443
Short-term investments	7,965	12,917
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	2,544	1,681
Deferred financing costs, current	1,776	-
Total current assets	24,993	38,041
Property and equipment, net	176	245
Right-of-use assets	198	483
Deferred financing costs, non-current	1,480	-
Other assets	727	327
Total assets	\$ 27,574	\$ 39,096
<b>Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity</b>		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 3,340	\$ 4,487
Accrued liabilities	7,096	8,488
Liability for common stock to be issued	1,350	-
Deferred revenue	5,137	3,610
Lease liabilities, current portion	210	369
Total current liabilities	17,133	16,954
Derivative warrant liabilities	28	-
Lease liabilities, less current portion	-	141
Total liabilities	17,161	17,095
Commitment and contingencies (Note 11)		
Stockholders' equity:		
Common stock, \$0.001 par value; 1,000,000,000 and 23,563,040 shares authorized as of September 30, 2022 (unaudited) and December 31, 2021, respectively; 22,065,347 and 18,051,470 shares issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2022 (unaudited) and December 31, 2021, respectively <sup>(1)</sup>	2	2
Additional paid-in capital	180,778	166,727
Accumulated deficit	(170,362)	(144,724)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(5)	(4)
Total stockholders' equity	10,413	22,001
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	\$ 27,574	\$ 39,096

*(1) The condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 2021 presented above reflects the retrospective application of recapitalization as if the Transaction had occurred on January 1, 2021. See Note 1, 3, and 7.*

See accompanying notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**  
**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS**  
(In thousands, except share and per share amounts)  
(Unaudited)

	Three Months Ended September 30,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2022	2021	2022	2021
Operating expenses:				
Research and development	\$ 5,683	\$ 5,501	\$ 18,796	\$ 15,122
General and administrative	3,116	1,807	7,240	5,735
Total operating expenses	8,799	7,308	26,036	20,857
Loss from operations	(8,799)	(7,308)	(26,036)	(20,857)
Other income, net	307	7	398	34
Net loss	\$ (8,492)	\$ (7,301)	\$ (25,638)	\$ (20,823)
Net loss per share	\$ (0.41)	\$ (0.40)	\$ (1.36)	\$ (1.16)
Weighted-average common shares used to compute net loss per share, basic and diluted	20,484,136	18,040,783	18,895,417	18,028,234
Comprehensive Loss:				
Net loss	\$ (8,492)	\$ (7,301)	\$ (25,638)	\$ (20,823)
Other comprehensive loss				
Unrealized (loss) gain on marketable securities	(1)	(2)	12	(4)
Comprehensive loss	\$ (8,493)	\$ (7,303)	\$ (25,626)	\$ (20,827)

See accompanying notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**  
**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**  
(In thousands, except share amounts)  
(Unaudited)

Three Months Ended September 30, 2022								
	Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock		Additional Paid-In	Accumulated	Accumulated Other Comprehensive	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Capital	Deficit	Income (Loss)	Equity (Deficit)
Balance at June 30, 2022, as previously reported	145,130,628	\$ 158,707	31,461,489	\$ 31	\$ 8,853	\$ (161,870)	\$ (17)	\$ (153,003)
Retroactive application of recapitalization	(145,130,628)	(158,707)	(13,369,861)	(29)	158,736	-	-	158,707
Balance at June 30, 2022, as adjusted	-	-	18,091,628	2	167,589	(161,870)	(17)	5,704
Business combination and private offering, net of transaction costs of \$9,232	-	-	3,143,464	-	8,468	-	-	8,468
Common stock issuance to Lincoln Park	-	-	766,684	-	4,115	-	-	4,115
Exercise of stock options	-	-	35,514	-	37	-	-	37
Exercise of restricted stock awards	-	-	23,518	-	242	-	-	242
Exercise of common stock warrant	-	-	4,539	-	-	-	-	-
Reclassification of preferred stock warrant	-	-	-	-	2	-	-	2
Stock-based compensation	-	-	-	-	325	-	-	325
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	(8,492)	-	(8,492)
Other comprehensive loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	12	12
Balance at September 30, 2022	-	\$ -	22,065,347	\$ 2	\$ 180,778	\$ (170,362)	\$ (5)	\$ 10,413

See accompanying notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

Nine Months Ended September 30, 2022								
	Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock		Additional Paid-In	Accumulated	Accumulated Other Comprehensive	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Capital	Deficit	Income (Loss)	(Deficit)
Balance at January 1, 2022, as previously reported	145,130,628	\$ 158,707	31,070,665	\$ 31	\$ 7,991	\$ (144,724)	\$ (4)	\$ (136,706)
Retroactive application of recapitalization	(145,130,628)	(158,707)	(13,019,073)	(29)	158,736	-	-	158,707
Balance at January 1, 2022, as adjusted	-	-	18,051,592	2	166,727	(144,724)	(4)	22,001
Business combination and private offering, net of transaction costs of \$9,232	-	-	3,143,464	-	8,468	-	-	8,468
Common stock issuance to Lincoln Park	-	-	766,684	-	4,115	-	-	4,115
Exercise of stock options	-	-	75,550	-	110	-	-	110
Exercise of restricted stock awards	-	-	23,518	-	242	-	-	242
Exercise of common stock warrant	-	-	4,539	-	-	-	-	-
Reclassification of preferred stock warrant	-	-	-	-	2	-	-	2
Stock-based compensation	-	-	-	-	1,114	-	-	1,114
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	(25,638)	-	(25,638)
Other comprehensive loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(1)	(1)
Balance at September 30, 2022	-	\$ -	22,065,347	\$ 2	\$ 180,778	\$ (170,362)	\$ (5)	\$ 10,413

Three Months Ended September 30, 2021								
	Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock		Additional Paid-In	Accumulated	Accumulated Other Comprehensive	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Capital	Deficit	Loss	(Deficit)
Balance at June 30, 2021, as previously reported	145,130,628	\$ 158,707	30,910,665	\$ 31	\$ 7,396	\$ (129,330)	1	\$ (121,902)
Retroactive application of recapitalization	(145,130,628)	(158,707)	(12,875,464)	(29)	158,736	-	-	158,707
Balance at June 30, 2021, as adjusted	-	-	18,035,201	2	166,132	(129,330)	1	36,805
Exercise of stock options	-	-	16,391	-	75	-	-	75
Stock-based compensation	-	-	-	-	264	-	-	264
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	(7,301)	-	(7,301)
Other comprehensive loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(2)	(2)
Balance at September 30, 2021	-	\$ -	18,051,592	\$ 2	\$ 166,471	\$ (136,631)	(1)	\$ 29,841

See accompanying notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.



**Nine Months Ended September 30, 2021**

	<b>Convertible Preferred Stock</b>		<b>Common Stock</b>		<b>Additional Paid-In Capital</b>	<b>Accumulated Deficit</b>	<b>Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss</b>	<b>Total Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)</b>
	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Amounts</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Amounts</b>				
Balance at January 1, 2021, as previously reported	145,130,628	\$ 158,707	30,521,693	\$ 31	\$ 6,750	\$ (115,808)	\$ 3	\$ (109,024)
Retroactive application of recapitalization	(145,130,628)	(158,707)	(12,526,339)	(29)	158,736	-	-	158,707
Balance at January 1, 2021, as adjusted	-	-	17,995,354	2	165,486	(115,808)	3	49,683
Exercise of stock options	-	-	56,238	-	99	-	-	99
Stock-based compensation	-	-	-	-	886	-	-	886
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	(20,823)	-	(20,823)
Other comprehensive loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	(4)	(4)
Balance at September 30, 2021	-	\$ -	18,051,592	\$ 2	166,471	\$ (136,631)	\$ (1)	\$ 29,841

See accompanying notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**  
**CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**  
(In thousands)  
(Unaudited)

	Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2022	2021
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES:</b>		
Net loss	\$ (25,638 )	\$ (20,823 )
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Depreciation	84	79
Stock-based compensation	1,114	886
Expense from exercise of restricted stock awards	242	-
Accretion of discount and amortization of premiums on marketable securities	(4)	160
Amortization of deferred financing costs	296	-
Change in fair value of derivative warrant liabilities	(62)	-
Change in fair value of liability for common stock to be issued	(150)	-
Non-cash lease expense	300	422
Other	-	6
Changes in current assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(1,251)	(294)
Other assets	(90)	(73)
Accounts payable	(1,955)	33
Accrued expenses	(1,738)	51
Deferred revenue	1,527	1,227
Lease liabilities	(315)	(428)
Net cash used in operating activities	(27,640)	(18,754)
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES:</b>		
Purchases of property and equipment	(57)	(54)
Purchases of marketable securities	(18,945)	(20,179)
Sales of marketable securities	23,932	33,380
Net cash provided by investing activities	4,930	13,147
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES:</b>		
Proceeds from business combination and private offering	18,094	-
Payments of deferred transaction costs	(8,729)	(50)
Proceeds from common stock issuance to Lincoln Park	2,500	-
Proceeds from exercise of stock options	110	99
Net cash provided by financing activities	11,975	49
<b>Net decrease in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>(10,735)</b>	<b>(5,558)</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period</b>	<b>23,443</b>	<b>25,284</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, end of period</b>	<b>\$ 12,708</b>	<b>\$ 19,726</b>
<b>Supplemental disclosure of non-cash investing and financing activities:</b>		
Transaction costs in accounts payable and accrued liabilities at period end	\$ 492	\$ -
Financing costs in accounts payable and other accrued liabilities	\$ 386	\$ -
Common stock issuance to Lincoln Park for commitment fee	\$ 1,616	\$ -
Common stock to be issued to Lincoln Park for commitment fee	\$ 1,500	\$ -
Reclassification of warrant	\$ 2	\$ -

See accompanying notes to unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**  
**NOTES TO UNAUDITED CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**1. Organization and Description of the Business**

***Description of Business***

Apexigen, Inc. ("Apexigen" or "we") is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on discovering and developing antibody therapeutics for oncology, with an emphasis on new immuno-oncology agents designed to harness the patient's immune system to combat and eradicate cancer. Our lead product candidates are sotigalimab ("sotiga" or "APX005M"), which is a CD40 agonist antibody, and APX601, which is a TNFR2 antagonist antibody. We also have out-license arrangements for a number of programs. Since inception, we have devoted substantially all of our resources to performing research, development, and manufacturing activities in support of our product candidates. In October 2019, the first of our out-licensed product candidates was approved for commercial product sale. Apexigen is headquartered in San Carlos, California.

On March 17, 2022, Brookline Capital Acquisition Corp. ("BCAC") and Apexigen America, Inc., which was then known as Apexigen, Inc. ("Legacy Apexigen") entered into a business combination agreement ("Business Combination Agreement" or "BCA") pursuant to which BCAC and Legacy Apexigen agreed to combine, with the former equityholders of both entities holding equity in the combined public company listed on the Nasdaq Stock Exchange ("Nasdaq") and with Legacy Apexigen's existing equityholders owning a majority of the equity in the combined public company. Existing Legacy Apexigen equityholders received equity in the combined public company in the form of common shares, stock options and warrants. Under the Business Combination Agreement, the transaction valued Legacy Apexigen at \$205.0 million on a fully diluted basis, net of exercise proceeds for Legacy Apexigen's pre-closing stock options. Concurrently with the execution of the Business Combination Agreement, BCAC entered into subscription agreements with certain investors for a private investment in public equity ("PIPE") transaction to close concurrently with the business combination (see Note 3), and BCAC and Legacy Apexigen entered into a committed investment agreement with Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC ("Lincoln Park") (see Note 7) to allow the combined company to direct Lincoln Park to make certain equity purchases during the 24 months following the business combination subject to certain limitations. These arrangements are collectively referred to as the "Transaction."

The Transaction closed on July 29, 2022 ("Closing" or the "Closing Date"). As a result, the combined public company received approximately \$19.0 million in gross proceeds funded by \$4.5 million in cash held in BCAC's trust account net of redemption and \$14.5 million from the PIPE. The combined public company paid off the outstanding convertible and non-convertible unsecured promissory notes in the aggregate amount of \$0.9 million held by Brookline Capital Holdings, LLC, the sponsor of BCAC (the "Extension and Working Capital Notes"), and incurred \$9.2 million in transaction expenses relating to the Transaction, consisting of banking, legal, and other professional fees. The PIPE investors received an aggregate of 1,452,000 units (each a "PIPE Unit") at a purchase price of \$10.00 per unit. Each PIPE Unit consists of one share of BCAC Common Stock and one-half of one warrant. Each whole warrant entitles the PIPE Investor to purchase one share of BCAC Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share during the period commencing 30 days after July 29, 2022 and terminating on the five-year anniversary of July 29, 2022. In addition, the combined public company has the right to direct Lincoln Park to purchase up to an aggregate of \$50 million of common stock of the combined public company pursuant to the terms of an investment agreement.

Legacy Apexigen was incorporated in Delaware in 2010, the year Legacy Apexigen was spun-out of Epitomics, Inc. ("Epitomics"), which was a California-based biotechnology company that was acquired by Abcam plc in 2012. Legacy Apexigen was spun-out of Epitomics to focus on the discovery, development, and commercialization of humanized monoclonal antibody therapeutics.

***Liquidity and Capital Resources***

As of September 30, 2022, we had approximately \$20.7 million of cash, cash equivalents, and short-term investments and expect to fund our operations into the second quarter of 2023 assuming no additional proceeds from our committed equity line with Lincoln Park or any other potential financing or business development transactions. We have incurred substantial losses and negative cash flows from operations since inception and had an accumulated deficit of \$170.4 million as of September 30, 2022. Since inception through September 30, 2022, we have funded operations primarily through the issuance of equity, proceeds from collaborative research and development agreements, and borrowings under a debt arrangement. Due to our significant research, development, and manufacturing expenditures, we have generated operating losses in all periods presented. We expect to incur substantial additional losses in the future as we advance and expand our research and development activities and prepare to pursue the potential regulatory approval and commercialization of our product candidates. Based on our research and development activities and plans, there is uncertainty regarding our ability to maintain liquidity sufficient to operate the business effectively, which raises substantial doubt as to our ability to continue as a going concern.

We may seek additional funds through the sale and issuance of shares of our common stock in private or public offerings, other equity or debt financings, collaborations, or partnerships with third parties, or other transactions to monetize assets, including our right to receive milestone payments and royalties under our out-license arrangements. We cannot assure that we will succeed in acquiring additional funding at levels sufficient to fund our operations or on terms favorable to us. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing when needed, we may have to delay, reduce the scope of or suspend one or more of our clinical trials or preclinical studies or research and development programs. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of our product candidates, we are unable to estimate the amount of increased capital outlays and operating expenditures associated with our current and planned research, development, and manufacturing activities.

To the extent that we raise additional capital through strategic alliances, licensing arrangements or other monetization transactions with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our product candidates, future revenue streams or research programs or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we raise additional capital through public or private equity offerings, the ownership interest of the then-existing stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect our stockholders' rights. If we raise additional capital through debt financing, we may be subject to covenants limiting or restricting the ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures, or declaring dividends.

### ***Coronavirus Pandemic***

The ongoing COVID-19 pandemic continues to affect economies and business globally. The pandemic may continue to affect our business operations such as our ability to initiate and complete ongoing, planned, or future clinical trials and preclinical studies, including through the remainder of 2022. Our ability to raise additional funds to support our operations may also be adversely impacted by potential worsening global economic conditions and the recent disruptions to, and volatility in, financial markets in the U.S. and worldwide, including as a result of the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic. We actively monitor and manage our responses and continue to assess actual and potential impacts on our operations and financial condition, as well as our business developments.

We cannot predict the specific extent, duration, or full impact that the COVID-19 pandemic will have on our business, financial condition, and operations, including planned research, manufacturing, and clinical development timelines. The impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our financial performance will depend on future developments, including the duration of and surges in the pandemic, including due to new variants of the virus, the pandemic's impact on our manufacturing activities, clinical trials (including enrollment and operations at clinical trial sites), contract research organizations ("CROs"), and other third parties with whom we do business and the pandemic's impact on our employees. These developments and the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the financial markets and the overall economy are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted. If the financial markets or the overall economy are impacted for an extended period, our business may be significantly adversely affected.

## **2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

### ***Unaudited Interim Consolidated Financial Statements***

The condensed consolidated balance sheet as of September 30, 2022, the condensed consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, the condensed consolidated statements of stockholders' equity for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, and the condensed consolidated statements of cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021 are unaudited. The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the same basis as the annual consolidated financial statements and, in the opinion of management, reflect all adjustments, which include only normal, recurring adjustments that are necessary to present fairly our consolidated financial position as of September 30, 2022, our results of operations for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021 and our cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021. The financial data and the other financial information contained in these notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements related to the three- and nine- month periods are also unaudited. The condensed balance sheet as of December 31, 2021, is derived from our audited consolidated financial statements. The results of operations for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022, are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the year ending December 31, 2022, or for any other future annual or interim period. These condensed consolidated financial statements are not complete and are to be read in conjunction with our audited financial statements and the related notes for the year ended December 31, 2021. The audited financial statements and related notes for the year ended December 31, 2021 was filed in the Form S-1 and Form S-1/A on August 12, 2022 and September 1, 2022, respectively, with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.

### ***Basis of Presentation***

We prepare our consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP").

### ***Principles of Consolidation***

The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Apexigen and its wholly owned subsidiary. All significant inter-company transactions and balances have been eliminated in consolidation.

### ***Emerging Growth Company***

We are an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act, as modified by the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"), and may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to public companies that are not emerging growth companies. Section 102(b)(1) of the JOBS Act exempts emerging growth companies from being required to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards until private companies (that is, those that have not had a Securities Act registration statement declared effective or do not have a class of securities registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the "Exchange Act")) are required to comply with the new or revised financial accounting standards. The JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can elect to opt out of the extended transition period and comply with the requirements that apply to non-emerging growth companies but any such election to opt out is irrevocable. We have elected not to opt out of such extended transition period which means that when a standard is issued or revised and it has different application dates for public or private companies, we, as an emerging growth company, can adopt the new or revised standard at the time private companies adopt the new or revised standard. This may make comparison of our consolidated financial statements with another public company, which is neither an emerging growth company nor an emerging growth company that has opted out of using the extended transition period, difficult or impossible because of the potential differences in accounting standards used.

### ***Use of Estimates***

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts expensed during the reporting period. On an ongoing basis, management evaluates its estimates, including those related to accruals for research and development costs, stock-based compensation, uncertain tax positions and fair values of common stock and preferred stock. We adjust such estimates and assumptions when facts and circumstances dictate. Changes in those estimates resulting from continuing changes in the economic environment will be reflected in the consolidated financial statements in future periods. As future events and their effects cannot be determined with precision, actual results could materially differ from those estimates and assumptions.

### ***Segment Reporting***

We have one operating segment, which is the business of researching, developing and commercializing antibody therapeutics for oncology. Our chief operating decision maker, Chief Executive Officer, manages our operations on an aggregated basis for the purposes of allocating resources and evaluating financial performance.

### ***Cash and Cash Equivalents***

We consider all highly liquid investments purchased with original maturities of three months or less from the purchase date to be cash equivalents. Cash equivalents consist primarily of amounts invested in money market funds and corporate debt securities. The carrying amount of cash equivalents approximates their fair value.

### ***Short-Term Investments***

Short-term investments consist of debt securities with original maturities of greater than three months from the date of purchase but less than one year from the balance sheet date. Such investments are considered available-for-sale and reported at fair value with unrealized gains and losses included as a component of stockholders' deficit. The amortized cost of debt securities is adjusted for amortization of premiums and accretion of discounts to maturity, which is included as other income, net in the consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss. Realized gains and losses and declines in fair value determined to be other-than-temporary, if any, on investments are included in other income, net. We determine the cost of securities sold using the specific identification method.

### ***Fair Value Measurements***

We apply fair value accounting to all financial assets and liabilities and non-financial assets and liabilities that are recognized or disclosed at fair value in the consolidated financial statements on a recurring basis. The carrying amount of our financial assets and liabilities, including accounts payable and accrued expenses, approximate their fair values due to their short-term maturities.

### ***Concentrations of Credit and Other Risks***

Financial instruments that potentially subject us to a concentration of credit risk consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments. We hold our bank deposits at accredited financial institutions and these deposits may at times exceed insured limits. We are exposed to credit risk in the event of a default by the financial institutions holding our cash and cash equivalents to the extent of the amounts held in excess of federally insured limits. We limit our credit risk associated with cash and cash equivalents by placing them with financial institutions we believe are of high quality. We have not experienced any losses on our deposits of cash. Our investment policy limits investments to certain types of securities issued by the U.S. government, its agencies and institutions with investment-grade credit ratings and places restrictions on maturities and concentration by type and issuer. As of September 30, 2022 and 2021, we had no off-balance sheet concentrations of credit risk.

We are subject to a number of risks similar to other early-stage biopharmaceutical companies, including the need to obtain adequate additional funding, possible failure of clinical trials, the need to obtain marketing approval for our product candidates, competitors developing new technological innovations, the need to successfully commercialize and gain market acceptance of our products, and protection of proprietary technology. If we do not successfully develop, obtain regulatory approval for, commercialize or partner our product candidates, we will be unable to generate revenue from product sales or achieve profitability.

### ***Property and Equipment, Net***

Property and equipment are stated at cost, less accumulated depreciation. Depreciation is calculated using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the related assets. The estimated useful life of laboratory equipment, furniture and fixtures, office equipment, and software ranges from two to five years. We expense maintenance, repair and calibration costs as incurred.

### ***Impairment of Long-Lived Assets***

Our long-lived assets are comprised principally of our property and equipment and right-of-use lease assets. We periodically evaluate our long-lived assets for impairment whenever events or changes in business circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of the assets or group of assets may not be fully recoverable. We deem a long-lived asset impaired when the undiscounted future cash flows expected to be generated by the asset or group of assets is less than the carrying amount of the assets. If there is an impairment, we would reduce the carrying amount of the assets through an impairment charge, to their estimated fair values based on a discounted cash flow approach or, when available and appropriate, to comparable market values. We recorded no impairment of long-lived assets during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022.

### ***Deferred Transaction Costs***

Deferred transaction costs consist of direct legal, accounting, filing and other fees and costs directly attributable to the Transaction (see Note 3). We capitalized deferred transaction costs prior to the close of the Transaction and included in prepaid expenses and other current assets. We reclassified the deferred transaction costs related to the Transaction to additional paid-in capital to offset the proceeds received upon closing of the Transaction. There were deferred transaction costs of \$0.5 million on the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 2021. Upon the close of the Transaction, we reclassified transaction costs of \$9.2 million to additional paid-in capital to offset the proceeds received, where we paid transaction costs of approximately \$11,000 in 2021, paid \$8.7 million in 2022, and accrued \$0.5 million as of September 30, 2022 (see Note 3).

### ***Deferred Financing Costs***

Deferred financing costs consist of direct costs and commitment fees directly attributable to the commencement of the equity line of credit from Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC upon closing of the Transaction (see Note 7). We capitalize deferred financing costs and amortize these costs over 24 months of the equity line of credit. As of September 30, 2022, deferred financing costs totaled \$3.3 million. Amortization expense for deferred financing costs was \$0.3 million for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 .

## **Revenue Recognition**

Under Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) 606, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*, we recognize revenue when we transfer promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consolidated balance sheets to which we expect to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. We have not commenced sales of our drug candidates and did not have a product approved for marketing as of September 30, 2022.

We may also earn contingent fees, including milestone payments based on counterparty performance and royalties on sales, from collaborations and other out-license arrangements. We will recognize milestone payments as revenue once the underlying events are probable of being met and there is not a significant risk of reversal. We will recognize sales-based royalties as revenue when the underlying sales occur. In October 2019, Novartis’ Beovu® product, which is covered by one of our license agreements, was approved for commercial product sale. Under this agreement, Novartis is obligated to pay us a very low single-digit royalty on net sales of the Beovu product. However, Novartis has disputed its obligation to pay us royalties on Beovu sales under this agreement. As a result, we have determined that any sales-based Beovu product royalty revenue that we may earn under this agreement is currently fully constrained. We have recorded the royalty proceeds as deferred revenue in the consolidated balance sheets. As of September 30, 2022 and December 31, 2021, deferred revenue totaled \$5.1 million and \$3.6 million, respectively.

## **Lease**

We determine if an arrangement is a lease at inception and if so, we determine whether the lease qualifies as an operating or a finance lease. We include operating lease in operating lease right-of-use (“ROU”) assets and lease liabilities in our consolidated balance sheets. We did not have any finance leases as of September 30, 2022 or December 31, 2021. ROU assets represent the right to use an underlying asset for the lease term and lease liabilities represent the obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease. We recognize operating lease ROU assets and liabilities at the lease commencement date based on the present value of lease payments over the lease term. When a lease does not provide an implicit rate, we use an incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at the commencement date to determine the present value of lease payments. We use the implicit rate when readily determinable. The operating lease ROU assets also include any lease payments made and exclude lease incentives when paid by us or on our behalf. Our lease terms may include options to extend or terminate the lease when it is reasonably certain that we will exercise that option. We recognize lease expense for lease payments on a straight-line basis over the lease term. We also made an accounting policy election to recognize lease expense for short-term leases with a term of 12 months or less on a straight-line basis over the lease term and not to recognize ROU assets or lease liabilities for such leases.

We lease our facility under a non-cancelable operating lease agreement and recognize related rent expense on a straight-line basis over the terms of the leases. As an implicit interest rate is not readily determinable in our lease, the incremental borrowing rate is based on information available on the adoption date in determining the present value of lease payments. The lease term for our operating lease includes the non-cancellable period of the lease plus any additional periods covered by its option to extend the lease that we are reasonably certain to exercise.

## **Research and Development Expenses**

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Research and development expenses are primarily for the development of sotiga, our lead product candidate, as well as APX601 and other product candidates. Research and development costs consist primarily of external costs related to clinical development, contract manufacturing, preclinical development and discovery as well as personnel costs and allocated overhead, such as rent, equipment, depreciation, and utilities. Personnel costs consist of salaries, employee benefits and stock-based compensation.

We estimate external research and development expenses based on the services performed, pursuant to contracts with commercial and academic institutions that conduct and manage research and development services on our behalf. We record the costs of research and development activities based upon the estimated amount of services provided but not yet invoiced and include these costs in accrued liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. These costs are a component of our research and development expenses. We accrue these costs based on factors such as the number of patient visits, the number of active patients, the number of patients enrolled, estimates of the work completed and other measures in accordance with agreements established with our third-party service providers under the service agreements. As actual costs become known, we adjust our accrued liabilities. We have not experienced any significant differences between accrued costs and actual costs incurred. However, the status and timing of actual services performed may vary from our estimates, resulting in adjustments to expense in future periods. Changes in these estimates that result in significant changes to our accruals could significantly affect our results of operations.

Nonrefundable advance payments for goods or services to be received in the future for use in research and development activities are capitalized and then expensed as the related goods are delivered or the services are performed. We evaluate such payments for current or long-term classification based on when they will be realized.

### ***Preferred Stock Warrant Liability***

We record at fair value freestanding puttable or redeemable warrants, or warrants which are not considered to be indexed to our stock and include this amount in accrued expenses on our consolidated balance sheets. On the Closing of the Transaction, the preferred stock warrant that was outstanding immediately before the Closing became a common stock warrant. We adjusted the carrying value of such warrant to its estimated fair value at the Closing based upon the value of our common stock warrant and reclassified from accrued expenses to additional paid-in capital on the date of Closing.

### ***Derivative Warrant Liabilities***

We account for the private placement warrants issued in connection with the initial public offering as derivative warrant liabilities in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 815, “*Derivative and Hedging*”. Accordingly, we recognize the private placement warrants as liabilities at fair value and adjust the instruments to fair value at each reporting period. The liabilities are subject to re-measurement at each balance sheet date until exercised, and any change in fair value is recognized and included as other income, net in the condensed consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss. We measured the fair value of the private placement warrants using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The determination of the fair value of the warrant liabilities may be subject to change as more current information becomes available and accordingly the actual results could differ significantly. As of September 30, 2022, deferred warrant liabilities were approximately \$28,000. Change in fair value of derivative warrant liabilities was approximately \$62,000 for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022.

### ***Stock-Based Compensation***

We measure all stock-based awards granted to employees and non-employees based on the estimated grant date fair value. For awards subject to service-based vesting conditions, we recognize stock-based compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period, which is generally the vesting term. For awards subject to performance-based vesting conditions, we recognize stock-based compensation expense using the accelerated attribution method when it is probable that the performance condition will be achieved. We recognize forfeitures as they occur.

We use the Black-Scholes option-pricing model to estimate the fair value of stock option awards and recognize expense using the straight-line attribution approach. The Black-Scholes option-pricing model requires assumptions to be made related to the fair value of our common stock, the expected term of the awards, expected stock priced volatility, risk-free rate for a period that approximates the expected term of the awards and the expected dividend yield.

### ***Income Taxes***

We account for income taxes under the asset and liability method. Under this method, we recognize deferred tax assets and liabilities for the future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases and operating loss and tax credit carryforwards. We measure deferred tax assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates applied to taxable income in the years in which we expect to realize those temporary differences. We recognize the effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates as income or loss in the period that includes the enactment date. We establish a valuation allowance, when necessary, to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount we expect to realize. We recognize the financial statement effects of uncertain tax positions when it is more-likely-than-not, based on the technical merits of the position, that it will be sustained upon examination. We include interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits within the provision of income tax. To date, there have been no interest or penalties charged in relation to the unrecognized tax benefits.

### ***Comprehensive Loss***

Comprehensive loss includes net loss and certain changes in stockholders’ deficit that are excluded from net loss, primarily unrealized gains or losses on our marketable securities.



### **Net Loss per Share**

We calculate basic net loss per share by dividing the net loss by the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period, without consideration for potentially dilutive securities. Diluted net loss per share is the same as basic net loss per share for each period presented, since the effects of potentially dilutive securities are antidilutive given our net loss.

### **Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

The adoption dates discussed below reflect the election as an emerging growth company.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments—Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments*, as clarified in subsequent amendments. The standard changes the impairment model for certain financial instruments. The new model is a forward-looking expected loss model and will apply to financial assets subject to credit losses and measured at amortized cost and certain off-balance sheet credit exposures. This includes loans, held-to-maturity debt securities, loan commitments, financial guarantees and net investments in leases, as well as trade receivables. For available-for-sale debt securities with unrealized losses, credit losses will be measured in a manner similar to the existing standard, except that the losses will be recognized as allowances rather than reductions in the amortized cost of the securities. The standard is effective for Apexigen for fiscal years and interim periods beginning January 1, 2023. Early adoption is permitted. We have not yet assessed the effect of adopting the standard on our consolidated financial statements.

### **3. Business Combination**

On July 29, 2022, Legacy Apexigen and BCAC consummated the merger contemplated by the BCA, with Legacy Apexigen surviving the merger as a wholly-owned subsidiary of BCAC. As part of the consummation of the merger (the "Business Combination"), BCAC changed its name to Apexigen, Inc. and Legacy Apexigen changed its name to Apexigen America, Inc.

Upon the closing of the Business Combination, we amended and restated our certificate of incorporation to, among other things, increase the total number of authorized shares of capital stock to 1,020,000,000 shares, of which 1,000,000,000 shares were designated common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share, and of which 20,000,000 shares were designated preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value per share.

Immediately prior to the closing of the Business Combination, each issued and outstanding share of Legacy Apexigen's convertible preferred stock, was converted into shares of common stock based on a one-to-one ratio (see Note 7). The Business Combination is accounted for with a retrospective application of the Business Combination that results in 145,130,628 shares of convertible preferred stock converting into the same number of shares of Legacy Apexigen's common stock.

Upon the consummation of the Business Combination, each share of Legacy Apexigen common stock issued and outstanding was canceled and converted into the right to receive 0.102448 shares (the "Exchange Ratio") of our common stock (the "Per Share Merger Consideration").

Outstanding stock options, whether vested or unvested, to purchase shares of Legacy Apexigen's common stock granted under the 2010 and 2020 Plan ("Legacy Options") (see Note 10) converted into stock options for shares of our common stock upon the same terms and conditions that were in effect with respect to such stock options immediately prior to the Business Combination, after giving effect to the Exchange Ratio.

Outstanding warrants to purchase shares of common stock remained outstanding after the closing of the Business Combination. The warrants became exercisable 30 days after the completion of the Business Combination, subject to other conditions, including with respect to the effectiveness of a registration statement covering the shares of common stock underlying such warrants, and will expire five years after the completion of the Business Combination or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

In connection with the Business Combination, certain stockholders exercised their right to redeem certain of their outstanding shares for cash, resulting in the redemption of 4,618,607 shares of common stock for gross redemption payments of \$47.2 million. In addition, a number of investors purchased an aggregate of 1,452,000 shares of common stock (the "PIPE Shares"), for a purchase price of \$10.00 per share, as applicable, for an aggregate purchase price of \$14.5 million pursuant to separate subscription agreements. The PIPE investment closed simultaneously with the consummation of the Business Combination. In connection with the Business Combination, we incurred direct and incremental costs of approximately \$9.2 million related to the equity issuance, consisting primarily of investment banking, legal, accounting, and other professional fees, which we recorded to additional paid-in capital as a reduction of proceeds.

The Business Combination is accounted for as a reverse recapitalization in accordance with U.S. GAAP. Under this method of accounting, BCAC was treated as the “acquired” company for financial reporting purposes. Accordingly, for accounting purposes, the Business Combination was treated as the equivalent of Legacy Apexigen issuing stock for the net assets of BCAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. The net assets of BCAC are stated at historical cost, with no goodwill or intangible assets recorded.

Prior to the Business Combination, Legacy Apexigen and BCAC filed separate standalone federal, state, and local income tax returns. As a result of the Business Combination, we will file a consolidated income tax return. Although, for legal purposes, BCAC acquired Legacy Apexigen, and the transaction represents a reverse acquisition for federal income tax purposes. BCAC will be the parent of the consolidated group with Legacy Apexigen as a subsidiary, but in the year of the closing of the Business Combination, Legacy Apexigen will file a full-year tax return with BCAC joining in the return the day after the Closing Date.

Upon closing of the Business Combination, we received gross proceeds of \$19.0 million from the Business Combination and PIPE financing, offset by transaction costs of \$9.2 million recorded in 2022 and BCAC's Extension and Working Capital Notes repayment of \$0.9 million. The following table reconciles the elements of the Business Combination to the consolidated statements of cash flows and the consolidated statement of changes in stockholders' equity (in thousands):

Cash - BCAC's trust (net of redemption)	\$ 4,435
Cash - Private offering	14,520
Less: BCAC's Extension and Working Capital Notes repayment in 2022	(861)
Proceeds from business combination and private offering for the nine months ended September 30, 2022	18,094
Less: transaction costs paid in 2022	(8,729)
Net proceeds from business combination and private offering for the nine months ended September 30, 2022	9,365
Less: transaction costs paid in 2021	(11)
Less: transaction costs accrued as of September 30, 2022	(492)
Plus: net assets of BCAC	(394)
Business combination and private offering for the nine months ended September 30, 2022	<u>\$ 8,468</u>

The number of shares of common stock issued immediately following the consummation of the Business Combination was:

Common stock, outstanding prior to Business Combination	5,061,592
Less: redemption of BCAC shares	(4,618,607)
Common stock of BCAC	442,985
BCAC Sponsor shares	1,190,979
BCAC Representative shares	57,500
Shares issued in private offering	1,452,000
Business combination and private offering shares	3,143,464
Legacy Apexigen shares	18,147,032
Total shares of common stock immediately after Business Combination	21,290,496
Exercise of Legacy Apexigen common stock warrant	4,539
Shares issued to Lincoln Park (Note 7)	150,000
Total shares of common stock on July 29, 2022	<u>21,445,035</u>

The number of Legacy Apexigen's shares was determined as follows:

	Legacy Apexigen Shares	Legacy Apexigen Shares, effected for Exchange Ratio
Balance as of December 31, 2020	30,521,693	3,126,980
Recapitalization applied to Convertible Preferred Stock outstanding at December 31, 2020	145,130,628	14,868,374
Exercise of common stock options - 2021	548,972	56,238
Exercise of common stock options - 2022 (pre-Closing)	702,074	71,922
Exercise of common stock restricted awards - 2022 (pre-Closing)	229,556	23,518
Total	<u>177,132,923</u>	<u>18,147,032</u>

#### 4. Fair Value Measurement

We record financial assets and liabilities at fair value. The accounting guidance for fair value provides a framework for measuring fair value, clarifies the definition of fair value and expands disclosures about fair value measurements. Fair value is defined as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in an orderly transaction between market participants at the reporting date. We categorize assets and liabilities recorded at fair value in the consolidated financial statements based upon the level of judgment associated with the inputs used to measure their fair value. Hierarchical levels are directly related to the amount of subjectivity with the inputs to the valuation of these assets or liabilities as follows:

**Level 1** – Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

**Level 2** – Observable inputs other than Level 1 prices such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices for identical or similar assets or liabilities in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities.

**Level 3** – Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities.

As of September 30, 2022, our cash equivalents consisted of money market funds with less than a three-month maturity. Our short-term investments consisted of U.S. treasury securities and government debt securities, which we recorded as available-for-sale securities. Money market funds and U.S. treasury securities are classified as Level 1 because they are valued using quoted market prices. Government debt securities are classified as Level 2 because their value is based on valuations using significant inputs derived from or corroborated by observable market data.

In certain cases where there is limited activity or less transparency around the inputs to valuation, we classify securities as Level 3. Level 3 liabilities consist of derivative warrant liabilities and preferred stock warrant liability.

The following tables set forth the financial instruments that we measured at fair value on a recurring basis by level within the fair value hierarchy (in thousands):

September 30, 2022				
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
Financial assets:				
Money market funds	\$ 12,553	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 12,553
U.S. treasury securities	3,970	-	-	3,970
Government debt securities	-	3,995	-	3,995
Total	<u>\$ 16,523</u>	<u>\$ 3,995</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 20,518</u>
Financial liability:				
Derivative warrant liabilities	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 28	\$ 28
Total	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 28</u>	<u>\$ 28</u>
December 31, 2021				
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
Financial assets:				
Money market funds	\$ 18,526	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 18,526
Commercial paper	-	5,498	-	5,498
Corporate debt securities	-	4,512	-	4,512
Government debt securities	-	1,503	-	1,503
Asset backed securities	-	1,404	-	1,404
Total	<u>\$ 18,526</u>	<u>\$ 12,917</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 31,443</u>
Financial liability:				
Preferred stock warrant liability	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2	\$ 2
Total	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 2</u>	<u>\$ 2</u>

The financial liability measured at fair value on a recurring basis is the derivative warrant liabilities and preferred stock warrant liability, a level 3 instrument.

The derivative warrant liabilities had a fair value of \$28,000 as of September 30, 2022. We estimate the fair value of the derivative warrant liabilities using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model, which assumptions are related to expected stock-price volatility, expected life, risk-free interest rate and dividend yield. We estimate the volatility of our common stock warrants based on historical volatility of select peer company's common stock that matches the expected remaining life of the warrants. The risk-free interest rate is based on the U.S. Treasury zero-coupon yield curve on the grant date for a maturity similar to the expected remaining life of the warrants. The expected life of the warrants is assumed to be equivalent to their remaining contractual term. The dividend rate is based on the historical rate, which we anticipate remaining at zero.

The preferred stock warrant liability had a fair value of \$2,000 as of December 31, 2021. We estimate the fair value of the preferred stock warrant liability using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model, which requires inputs such as the expected volatility based on comparable public companies, the estimated fair value of the preferred stock, and the estimated time to liquidity. On the Closing of the Transaction, the preferred stock warrant that was outstanding immediately before the Closing became a common stock warrant. We adjusted the carrying value of such warrant to its estimated fair value at the Closing based upon the value of our common stock warrant and reclassified from accrued expenses to additional paid-in capital on the date of Closing.

The following tables summarize the estimated fair value of our marketable securities and the gross unrealized holding gains and losses (in thousands):

	September 30, 2022			
	Amortized Cost	Unrealized		Estimated Fair Value
		Gains	Losses	
Cash and cash equivalents:				
Cash	\$ 155	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 155
Money market funds	12,553	-	-	12,553
Total cash and cash equivalents	<u>\$ 12,708</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 12,708</u>
Marketable securities:				
U.S. treasury securities	\$ 3,970	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 3,970
Government debt securities	4,000		(5)	3,995
Total marketable securities	<u>\$ 7,970</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ (5)</u>	<u>\$ 7,965</u>
	December 31, 2021			
	Amortized Cost	Unrealized		Estimated Fair Value
		Gains	Losses	
Cash and cash equivalents:				
Cash	\$ 4,917	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 4,917
Money market funds	18,526	-	-	18,526
Total cash and cash equivalents	<u>\$ 23,443</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 23,443</u>
Marketable securities:				
Commercial paper	\$ 5,498	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 5,498
Corporate debt securities	4,515	-	(3)	4,512
Government debt securities	1,503	-	-	1,503
Asset backed securities	1,405	-	(1)	1,404
Total marketable securities	<u>\$ 12,921</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ (4)</u>	<u>\$ 12,917</u>

## 5. Balance Sheet Components

### *Property and Equipment, Net*

Property and equipment, net consists of the following (in thousands):

	September 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Laboratory equipment	\$ 909	\$ 943
Furniture and fixtures	28	28
Office equipment	25	25
Software	12	12
Total property and equipment	974	1,008
Less: accumulated depreciation	(798)	(763)
Total property and equipment, net	\$ 176	\$ 245

Depreciation expense for property and equipment was \$28,000 and \$26,000 for the three months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively, and \$84,000 and \$79,000 for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively.

### *Accrued Liabilities*

Accrued liabilities consist of the following (in thousands):

	September 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Accrued clinical trial and manufacturing costs	\$ 4,629	\$ 6,472
Accrued personnel costs	1,480	1,172
Other accrued liabilities	987	844
Total accrued liabilities	\$ 7,096	\$ 8,488

## 6. Lease

We lease our principal facility under a non-cancelable operating lease agreement with a lease term ending in March 2023. As our lease does not provide an implicit rate, we used our incremental borrowing rate as the discount rate to calculate the present value of lease payments. The incremental borrowing rate represents an estimate of the interest rate that would be required to borrow on a collateralized basis over a similar term at an amount equal to the lease payments in a similar economic environment. The weighted-average discount rate associated with operating lease modifications was 5.05%. As of September 30, 2022 and December 31, 2021, the right-of-use assets were \$0.2 million and \$0.5 million, respectively, and lease liabilities were \$0.2 million and \$0.5 million, respectively. Rent expense was \$0.1 million for the three months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, and \$0.3 million and \$0.4 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively.

Future minimum lease payments as of September 30, 2022, are as follows (in thousands):

	Operating Leases
Year ending December 31,	
2022 (3 months remaining)	\$ 106
2023	106
Total undiscounted future lease payments	212
Less: imputed interest	(2)
Total lease liabilities	\$ 210

## 7. Stockholder's Equity

### *Preferred Stock*

As discussed in Note 3, *Business Combination*, we retroactively adjusted the shares issued and outstanding prior to July 29, 2022 to give effect to the exchange ratio established in the BCA to determine the number of shares of common stock into which they were converted.

Prior to the Business Combination, Legacy Apexigen had shares of \$0.001 par value Series A-1, Series A-2, Series B, and Series C preferred stock outstanding, all of which were convertible into shares of common stock of Legacy Apexigen on a 1:1 basis, subject to certain anti-dilution protections. Upon the Closing, the outstanding shares of preferred stock were converted into common stock of Legacy Apexigen, and then into common stock of Apexigen at a ratio of 1:0.102448, the exchange rate established in the BCA.

Convertible Preferred Stock	July 29, 2022 (Closing Date)	
	Preferred Stock Shares	Common Stock Shares
Series A-1 (pre-combination)	39,196,116	4,015,564
Series A-2 (pre-combination)	12,625,343	1,293,442
Series B (pre-combination)	14,218,546	1,456,662
Series C (pre-combination)	79,090,623	8,102,706
Total	145,130,628	14,868,374

As of September 30, 2022, we are authorized to issue 20,000,000 shares of preferred stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share. The board of directors (the "Board") has the authority to issue preferred stock and to determine the rights, privileges, preferences, restrictions, and voting rights of those shares. As of September 30, 2022, we had no shares of preferred stock outstanding.

### Common Stock

The holders of common stock are entitled to one vote per share on all matters to be voted on by the stockholders of Apexigen. Subject to the preferences that may be applicable to any outstanding shares of the convertible preferred stock, the holders of the common stock are entitled to receive ratably such dividends, if any, as the Board may declare. The Board has declared no dividends to date.

At September 30, 2022, we had reserved the following shares of common stock for the following purposes:

Options issued and outstanding	4,110,900
Options available for future grants	1,874,745
Shares available for Employee Stock Purchase Plan	257,341
Common stock warrants	3,728,821
Total common stock reserved for issuance	9,971,807

### Lincoln Park

In conjunction with the Transaction (see Note 1), we entered into a purchase agreement (the "Purchase Agreement") and a registration rights agreement ("RRA") with Lincoln Park in March 2022, which provides that we may sell to Lincoln Park up to \$50.0 million of shares (the "Purchase Shares") of our common stock. The aggregate number of shares that we can sell to Lincoln Park under the Purchase Agreement may not exceed 4.99% of the outstanding common stock, subject to certain exceptions set forth in the Purchase Agreement.

On the date of Closing, we issued 150,000 shares of common stock to Lincoln Park as an initial fee for its commitment to purchase shares of our common stock under the Purchase Agreement. On the date that is 90 calendar days after the date of Closing, we were obligated to issue to Lincoln Park the lesser of (i) \$1.5 million of shares of common stock at a price per share equal to the arithmetic average of the closing sale price for our common stock during the ten consecutive business days immediately preceding the share delivery date and (ii) 500,000 shares of common stock. We recorded the additional commitment shares as liability for common stock to be issued in the consolidated balance sheets as of September 30, 2022. Liability for common stock to be issued was \$1.4 million as of September 30, 2022. The liability is subject to re-measurement at each balance sheet date until issued, and any change in fair value is recognized and included as other income, net in the condensed consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss. Change in fair value of liability for common stock to be issued was approximately \$150,000 for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022.

Subject to the terms of the Purchase Agreement, we have the right, in our sole discretion, to present Lincoln Park with a purchase notice (a "Regular Purchase Notice"), provided that the closing stock price of the common stock on the Nasdaq is not below \$3.00 per share. Each Regular Purchase Notice would direct Lincoln Park to purchase up to \$500,000 of Purchase Shares (a "Regular Purchase"), which amounts may be increased under certain circumstances. Lincoln Park's committed obligation under any single Regular Purchase generally will not exceed \$1.0 million. The Purchase Agreement provides for a purchase price per Purchase Shares for each Regular Purchase (the "Purchase Price") equal to the lesser of (i) the lowest sale price of the common stock on the Nasdaq on

the purchase date of such shares; and (ii) the average of the three lowest closing sale prices for the common stock traded on the Nasdaq during the ten consecutive business days ending on the business day immediately preceding the purchase date of such shares.

In addition, on any date on which we submit a Regular Purchase Notice for the maximum amount allowed for such a Regular Purchase to Lincoln Park, we also have the right, in our sole discretion, to present Lincoln Park with an accelerated purchase notice (an “Accelerated Purchase Notice”), directing Lincoln Park to purchase an amount of Purchase Shares (an “Accelerated Purchase”), which number of Purchase Shares will not exceed the lesser of (i) 300% of the number of shares purchased pursuant to such Regular Purchase Notice and (ii) 30% of the total volume of shares of the common stock traded on the Nasdaq during the Accelerated Purchase period. The purchase price per Purchase Share for each such Accelerated Purchase will be equal to the lesser of 95% of (i) the volume-weighted average price of the common stock on the Nasdaq during the applicable Accelerated Purchase period on the applicable Accelerated Purchase date; and (ii) the closing sale price of the common stock on the Nasdaq on the applicable Accelerated Purchase date. Lincoln Park has no obligation to purchase shares under the Purchase Agreement unless we comply with the terms of the RRA.

In September 2022, we received aggregate proceeds of \$2.5 million from Regular Purchases of 616,684 shares of common stock under the Purchase Agreement.

## **8. Public and Private Warrants**

As of September 30, 2022, we had 3,601,000 public warrants and 123,500 private placement warrants outstanding, each with an exercise price of \$11.50 per share. Each of these warrants became exercisable on August 28, 2022, which was 30 days after the Closing of the Transaction (Note 1), and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the Transaction, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

We may call the public warrants for redemption:

- in whole or in part;
- at a price of \$0.01 per warrant;
- upon a minimum of 30 days’ prior written notice of redemption; and
- if, and only if, the last reported closing price of the ordinary shares equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period on the third trading day prior to the date on which we send the notice of redemption to the warrant holders.

If we call the public warrants for redemption, management will have the option to require all holders that wish to exercise the public warrants to do so on a “cashless basis,” as described in the warrant agreement.

The private placement warrants are identical to the public warrants, except that none of the private placement warrants will be redeemable so long as they are held by the initial purchasers or any of their permitted transferees.

The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants may be adjusted in certain circumstances including in the event of a share dividend, recapitalization, reorganization, merger, or consolidation. However, the warrants will not be adjusted for issuance of common stock at a price below its exercise price.

## **9. Clinical Study Agreement Amendment with Parker Institute**

In April 2017, we entered into a collaboration agreement with Parker Institute for Cancer Immunotherapy (“PICI”) for the clinical development of sotiga. Under the terms of the arrangement, PICI funded the cost of a clinical trial of sotiga in combination with other agents in pancreatic cancer, and we supplied sotiga and provided related services.

In October 2019, we and PICI amended the agreement to amend our payment obligations. As a result of the amendment, we paid \$1.0 million and issued 132,213 shares of our common stock to PICI as compensation for services previously rendered. The \$1.0 million payment and the fair value of the common stock of \$0.9 million were recognized immediately as research and development expense. Upon PICI’s completion of milestones in 2020, we recognized \$0.7 million in research and development expenses. There were no expenses recognized during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021. Future amounts, up to an aggregate of \$9.5 million in cash and shares of our common stock, are payable based on the achievement of certain clinical development milestones, none of which were probable as of September 30, 2022, and no amounts have been recognized.

## 10. Stock-Based Compensation

### Equity Incentive Plans

In December 2010, we adopted the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan and 2010 Equity Incentive Plan, which expired in 2020. In August 2020, we adopted the 2020 Equity Incentive Plan. Upon the close of the Transaction (see Note 1), we adopted the 2022 Equity Incentive Plan (the 2022 Plan, the 2020 Equity Incentive Plan, the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan and the 2010 Equity Incentive Plan, collectively, the “Plans”). No further grants will be made under the 2020 Equity Incentive Plan. The 2022 Equity Incentive Plan provides for the grant of incentive stock options, non-statutory stock options, restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit, performance stock awards, and other forms of equity awards as described in the 2022 Equity Incentive Plan.

Initially, the maximum number of shares of common stock that we may issue under the 2022 Equity Incentive Plan is 2,573,405 shares plus any shares that may be added to the 2022 Plan’s reserve if awards from the 2010 Equity Incentive Plan or 2020 Equity Incentive Plan expire, are canceled or otherwise terminate, up to a maximum of 3,461,319 shares added from such expirations, cancellations, and terminations. As of September 30, 2022, Apexigen had reserved 5,985,645 shares of common stock for the issuance of incentive and non-statutory stock options to purchase common stock, stock awards, and restricted stock awards to employees, directors, and consultants under the Plans. The number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the 2022 Equity Incentive Plan will automatically increase on January 1 of each calendar year, starting on January 1, 2023 through January 1, 2032, in an amount equal to the lesser of (1) 5.0% of the total number of shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the calendar month before the date of each automatic increase, (2) 3,216,756 shares, or (3) such number of shares determined by the administrator of the 2022 Plan.

The Board determines the period over which options become exercisable and options generally vest over a four-year period. No option will become exercisable after the expiration of ten years from the date of grant. The term of an incentive stock option (“ISO”) granted to a 10% stockholder will not exceed five years from the date of the grant. The exercise price of an ISO and non-statutory stock option (“NSO”) will not be less than 100% of the estimated fair value of the shares on the date of grant, respectively, and the exercise price of an ISO and NSO granted to a 10% stockholder will not be less than 110% of the estimated fair value of the shares on the date of grant.

In February 2021, we entered into a consulting agreement with a Board member and granted an option (the “Stock Option”) to acquire 20,489 shares of common stock. The Stock Option vests upon the achievement of certain performance milestones and has a ten-year term. Based on the guidance in ASC Topic 718, *Stock Compensation*, we concluded that the Stock Option is a performance-based stock option. As determined by the Board, we achieved one of the performance milestones under the Stock Option during 2021. As a result, 5,122 options were vested during the three months ended March 31, 2021, and we recognized \$20,000 of stock-based compensation expense in the three months ended March 31, 2021. No other performance milestone was achieved as of September 30, 2022. The unrecognized stock-based compensation expense for this option as of September 30, 2022 is approximately \$60,000.

In July 2022, we granted restricted stock awards for 23,518 shares of common stock to two former Board members of Legacy Apexigen. The stock-based compensation of these restricted stock awards is approximately \$0.2 million and was recorded during the three months ended September 30, 2022.

In September 2022, we granted options to purchase 700,000 shares of common stock to our non-executive Board members at an exercise price of \$2.65 per share pursuant to our Outside Directors Compensation Policy. These stock options vest over 3 years in equal annual installments. The stock-based compensation of these stock options is approximately \$1.3 million.

Stock-based compensation is included in the consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss in research and development and general and administrative expense depending on the nature of the services provided. The following table illustrates stock-based compensation expense related to stock options granted under the Plans recognized for three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021 (in thousands):

	Three Months Ended September 30,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2022	2021	2022	2021
Research and development	\$ 126	\$ 56	\$ 384	\$ 242
General and administrative	199	208	730	644
Total stock-based compensation	<u>\$ 325</u>	<u>\$ 264</u>	<u>\$ 1,114</u>	<u>\$ 886</u>

During the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, we granted options to purchase 1,252,937 shares and 158,264 shares of common stock with a weighted-average exercise price of \$3.66 and \$4.59 per share, respectively. For the options granted during the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, we expect to recognize \$3.2 million and \$0.4 million of stock-based



compensation over the related vesting period, respectively. The weighted-average grant date fair value of options granted during the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021 was \$2.64 and \$3.39 per share, respectively. During the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, options to purchase 603,202 shares and 187,850 shares, respectively, were cancelled. For the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, the aggregate intrinsic value of the options exercised was \$0.5 million and \$0.2 million, respectively.

As of September 30, 2022, there was \$3.5 million of unrecognized stock-based compensation cost related to stock options granted to employees and others under the Plans, which we expect to recognize over a weighted average period of 2.7 years.

### ***Equity Stock Purchase Plan***

In August 2022, we adopted the Apexigen, Inc. 2022 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the “ESPP”). The ESPP provides eligible employees with a means of acquiring shares of our common stock at a discounted purchase price using their own accumulated payroll deductions. Under the terms of the ESPP, eligible employees can elect to have up to 15% of their eligible compensation, up to a maximum of \$25,000 per year, withheld to purchase shares of common stock for a purchase price equal to 85% of the lower of the fair market value per share of common stock on (i) the commencement date of the 24-month offering period or (ii) the respective purchase date.

The ESPP authorizes the issuance of 257,341 shares of common stock under purchase rights granted to our eligible employees or to eligible employees of any of our designated affiliates. The number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance will automatically increase on January 1 of each calendar year, beginning on January 1, 2023 through January 1, 2032, by the lesser of (1) 1.0% of the total number of shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the calendar month before the date of the automatic increase, and (2) 536,126 shares; provided that before the date of any such increase, our Board may determine that such increase will be less than the amount set forth in clauses (1) and (2).

The initial offering period will commence in November 2022. As of September 30, 2022, no shares of common stock were purchased under the ESPP. There was no expense related to the ESPP recognized during the nine months ended September 30, 2022. As of September 30, 2022, 257,341 shares were available under the ESPP for future issuance.

## **11. Commitments and Contingencies**

### ***Indemnification***

As permitted under Delaware law and in accordance with our bylaws, we have agreed to indemnify our officers and directors for certain events or occurrences, subject to certain limits, while the officer or director is or was serving at our request in such capacity. The term of the indemnification period is equal to the officer’s or director’s lifetime.

The maximum amount of potential future indemnification is unlimited. However, we currently hold director and officer liability insurance, which limits our exposure and may enable us to recover a portion of any future amounts paid. We believe that the fair value of these indemnification obligations is minimal. Accordingly, we have not recognized any liabilities relating to these obligations for any period presented.

We have certain agreements with service providers and other parties with which we do business that contain indemnification provisions pursuant to which we have agreed to indemnify the party against certain types of third-party claims. It is not possible to determine the maximum potential amount under these indemnification agreements due to the limited history of prior indemnification claims and the unique facts and circumstances involved in each particular agreement. Since these agreements were effective after September 30, 2022, there were no payments made by us under these agreements as of September 30, 2022. As of September 30, 2022, there was not a reasonable possibility that we had incurred a material loss with respect to indemnification of such parties. We had not recorded any liability for costs related to indemnification through September 30, 2022.

### ***Other***

No liabilities for loss contingencies arising from claims, assessments, litigation, fines, and penalties and other sources are recorded as it is not probable that a liability has been incurred and the amount cannot be reasonably estimated. Legal costs incurred in connection with loss contingencies are expensed as incurred. We enter into contracts in the normal course of business with contract research organizations for preclinical studies and clinical trials and contract manufacturing organizations for the manufacture of clinical trial materials.

## 12. Income Taxes

The effective tax rate for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021 was zero. The difference between the effective income tax rate and the U.S. federal statutory rate of 21% is primarily attributable to recording valuation allowances to offset deferred tax assets arising from federal and state net operating losses.

## 13. Net Loss Per Share

The following outstanding potentially dilutive common stock equivalents have been excluded from the calculation of diluted net loss per share for the periods presented due to their anti-dilutive effect:

	As of September 30,	
	2022	2021
Stock options	4,110,900	3,537,956
Common stock warrants	3,728,821	13,361
Total common stock reserved for issuance	7,839,721	3,551,317

## 14. Subsequent Events

We have evaluated subsequent events through November 14, 2022, and determined that there have been no events that have occurred that would require adjustments to the disclosures in the consolidated financial statements.

On October 7, 2022, our Board approved the grant of options to purchase 844,073 shares of common stock with an exercise price of \$2.46 per share and the grant of 243,618 shares of restricted stock units to various employees and a consultant. The expected stock-based compensation of the stock options and the expected fair value of the restricted stock units totaled approximately \$1.7 million.

On October 28, 2022, we issued 500,000 shares of common stock to Lincoln Park to settle the liability for common stock to be issued. The issuance of common stock was related to the additional commitment fee due 90 calendar days after the date of Closing (see Note 7). The expected fair value of the common stock is approximately \$1.3 million.

## Item 2. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.

*The following discussion and analysis provide information which Apexigen's management believes is relevant to an assessment and understanding of Apexigen's results of operations and financial condition. You should read the following discussion and analysis of Apexigen's results of operations and financial condition together with Apexigen's consolidated financial statements and related notes to those statements included elsewhere in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, and in the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed August 4, 2022, as amended. In addition to historical financial information, this discussion contains forward-looking statements based upon Apexigen's current expectations that involve risks and uncertainties, including those described in the section titled, "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements." Apexigen's actual results could differ materially from such forward-looking statements as a result of various factors, including those set forth under "Risk Factors" in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q. Unless otherwise indicated or the context otherwise requires, references included in this section to "Apexigen," "Apexigen's," "the Company," "the Company's," "we," "our," "us," and "its" refer to Apexigen.*

### Business Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on discovering and developing a new generation of antibody therapeutics for oncology, with an emphasis on new immuno-oncology agents designed to harness the patient's immune system to combat and eradicate cancer. We and our licensees are advancing several protein therapeutics that were discovered using our APXiMAB antibody platform. Our pipeline currently consists of our clinical-stage lead candidate, sotigalimab ("sotiga" or "APX005M"), and our IND-ready candidate, APX601. Additionally, five programs for the development of product candidates whose discovery was enabled by our APXiMAB platform have been licensed for further development by our license partners. We also have discovered several other innovative antibodies using our platform that we plan to advance after we obtain adequate financial resources.

Our most advanced wholly owned product candidates are as follows:

- **Sotigalimab** is a humanized agonist antibody that targets and activates CD40, a co-stimulatory receptor that is essential for activating both the innate and adaptive arms of the immune system, to stimulate an anti-tumor immune response. Sotigalimab is in ongoing, completing, or planned Phase 2 clinical development for the treatment of solid tumors such as melanoma, esophageal and gastroesophageal junction ("GEJ") cancers and soft tissue sarcoma in combination with immunotherapy, chemotherapy, radiation therapy and cancer vaccines.
- **APX601** is a humanized antagonist antibody that binds to TNFR2, which is highly expressed on immune suppressive cells, including Treg and suppressive myeloid cells, as well as on many cancers. We have largely completed the preclinical studies of APX601 necessary for an investigational new drug application, or an IND.

Due to our current resources, the state of the capital markets and the significant cost of conducting additional Phase 2 and, in particular, Phase 3 or registration-enabling clinical trials of sotiga, for the foreseeable future we plan to focus our efforts on:

- The development of sotiga in combination with doxorubicin to treat patients with advanced/unresectable or metastatic de-differentiated liposarcoma (LPS); and
- Completing activities related to our company-sponsored Phase 2 trials of sotiga in melanoma and esophageal and GEJ cancers, in which we have completed the protocol-defined treatment of all enrolled patients, are following patients for survival and are completing other trial closeout related activities.

We also continue to have financial support commitments to several investigator-sponsored clinical trials of sotiga in different settings and combinations, most significantly of which are (i) the Phase 2 clinical trial of sotiga in combination with doxorubicin in patients with advanced soft tissue sarcoma, which we recently expanded to enroll an additional 10 patients with liposarcoma, and (ii) a planned Phase 2 clinical trial of sotiga in combination with carboplatin and pegylated liposomal doxorubicin with and without radiotherapy in patients with recurrent ovarian cancer, which we expect will begin dosing patients after we obtain additional sotiga clinical drug product from our manufacturing campaign at WuXi by mid-2023. To support the advancement of the sotiga clinical development program, we are actively seeking a global development and commercialization collaboration partner for sotiga. We believe that such a global collaboration will eliminate the vast majority or all of our development and manufacturing costs related to the sotiga program and provide us with significant funding to allow us to advance the remainder of our pipeline. If we successfully execute such a collaboration for the development and commercialization of sotiga, we expect to then invest in advancing APX601 through an IND filing and into Phase 1 clinical development and begin IND-enabling activities for our APX801 program.

Our APXiMAB platform was used to enable the discovery of multiple protein therapeutic product candidates against a variety of molecular targets, including targets that are difficult to drug with conventional antibody technologies. In addition to the product candidates that we wholly own, several product candidates discovered through the use of the APXiMAB platform are in clinical development by our licensees. The most advanced of these programs is Novartis' Beovu®(brolucizumab-dblb) product, which received FDA approval in 2019 and is marketed in over 70 countries. Two other programs being developed by our licensees are in later-stage development; Sincere's BD0801 is in Phase 3 clinical development in ovarian cancer and Mabwell's 9MW0211 is in an adaptive, pivotal Phase 2/3 clinical trial in wet age-related macular degeneration ("AMD"). There is no guarantee that any of the product candidates discovered using our APXiMAB antibody platform, whether developed by us or our licensees, will receive regulatory approval.

## Our Strategy

We are focused on discovering and developing next-generation antibody therapeutics for the treatment of cancer. Our goal is to leverage the power of the body's immune system to combat and eradicate tumor cells, generating enhanced tumor-specific immunity and leading to significant clinical benefits such as improved survival for patients across a wide range of cancers. The key tenets of our business strategy to achieve this goal include:

- **Advance sotiga to registrational clinical trials with a partner.** We believe sotiga could be an effective treatment in a broad range of oncology indications and therapeutic combinations. We are evaluating sotiga in combination with other immuno-oncology agents, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and cancer vaccines in multiple clinical trials in patients with solid tumors, including melanoma, esophageal and gastroesophageal junction cancer and sarcoma.
- **Continue to advance and expand our pipeline.** In addition to sotiga, we plan to advance the remainder of our internal pipeline, which consists of two preclinical programs and multiple research-stage programs after we obtain adequate financial resources. We may supplement our current pipeline by selectively acquiring or exclusively in-licensing rights to develop product candidates from biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies.
- **Leverage our APXiMAB platform to develop additional novel product candidates.** Our APXiMAB platform has enabled discovery of a robust wholly owned pipeline as well as five additional product candidates that our licensees are developing. We believe there is significant opportunity to utilize our APXiMAB platform to discover and develop additional monoclonal antibodies with desirable attributes for oncology indications.
- **Establish strategic out-licenses and collaborations to supplement our development capabilities and generate funding.** We plan to establish additional clinical development collaborations, in particular in the near term for the development and commercialization of sotigalimab and one or more of our pre-clinical product candidates. These collaborations may allow us to supplement our development, manufacturing, regulatory and commercialization capabilities to broaden and accelerate clinical development and potential commercialization of our product candidates, provide us with significant funding to advance our pipeline and significantly reduce our share of the costs of the development and manufacturing of sotigalimab and any pre-clinical product candidates with respect to which we out-license development or commercialization rights.
- **Build U.S.-focused commercial capabilities.** We plan to retain U.S. commercial rights for our oncology products, including through agreements we may negotiate to share U.S. commercialization responsibilities with a collaboration partner. As our product candidates near commercialization, we plan to build sales and marketing capabilities in the United States. We currently have global rights to sotiga, APX601 and our other preclinical and research-stage programs, however, we plan in the near term to pursue opportunities for strategic out-licenses and collaborations for the development and commercialization of sotigalimab and one or more of our pre-clinical product candidates.

## Our Wholly Owned Pipeline

The following table shows the stage of development of our sotigalimab and APX601 product candidates in certain settings:

Molecule	Target	Therapeutic Area	Preclinical	IND-enabling	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3
Sotigalimab	CD40	Melanoma (post PD-1) <sup>(1)</sup>					
		Esophageal/GEJ <sup>(1)</sup>					
		Sarcoma					
APX601	TNFR2	Oncology					

- (1) Due to the development potential of sotiga in other oncology settings and therapeutic combinations, the significant cost of conducting a subsequent trial of sotiga in this setting, our current resources and the state of the capital markets, we do not plan to develop sotiga in this setting independently and are seeking to engage a global collaboration partner to advance the development of sotiga in this and other settings.

## Sotigalimab (APX005M) Program

### Melanoma

In our company-sponsored APX005M-002 clinical trial, we observed that the combination of sotiga and nivolumab could be administered to patients with PD-1 blockade-refractory melanoma repeatedly for greater than one year with an acceptable safety profile. The majority of adverse events (“AEs”) considered related to sotiga, nivolumab or the combination were transient and grade 1 or 2. The most common AEs consisted of fever, fatigue, chills, headache, nausea, pruritus, vomiting, rash, arthralgias, myalgias, and elevated liver function tests. No serious adverse effects (“SAEs”) or deaths were considered related to the study drugs and no treatment withdrawals or discontinuations were reported as due to AEs related to sotiga. The incidence of immune-related adverse events was low, and the AEs were similar in nature to those that have been reported with nivolumab alone. There were no reported cases of cytokine release syndrome.

We believe the data observed in the APX005M-002 clinical trial support the advancement of the development of sotiga as a potential treatment in combination with a PD-(L)1 inhibitor for patients with unresectable or metastatic melanoma that had progressive disease during treatment with anti-PD-(L)1 therapy. Accordingly, in June 2022, we discussed with the FDA in a Type C meeting our plans for a registration-enabling study of sotiga in this combination and setting. The company received feedback and support from the FDA for a potential randomized registration-enabling clinical trial of sotigalimab in combination with a PD-1 inhibitor to treat patients with PD-1 blockade refractory melanoma, which potential trial would compare the combination of sotigalimab and a PD-1 inhibitor against an investigator’s choice of standard of care therapy and would demonstrate the contribution of sotigalimab and the PD-1 inhibitor as components of the combination regimen. Due to the development potential of sotiga in other oncology settings, the significant cost of conducting a subsequent trial of sotiga in this setting, our current resources and the state of the capital markets, we do not plan to develop sotiga in this setting independently and are seeking to engage a global collaboration partner to advance the development of sotiga in this and other settings.

### Esophageal and GEJ Cancer

In December 2021, we completed enrollment of 34 patients in our Phase 2 clinical trial (NCT03165994) to study sotiga in combination with standard-of-care chemoradiation as a neoadjuvant treatment for patients with resectable esophageal or GEJ cancer (“APX005M-006 Trial”). The primary objective of the APX005M-006 Trial is to assess the efficacy of the combination, as measured by the pathologic complete response (“pCR”) rate, and to further characterize the safety and feasibility of the combination in this setting.

In September 2022, we reported results and data from our APX005M-006 Trial that were featured in a poster presentation at the annual European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO) Congress. The data presented from the APX005M-006 Trial showed that sotiga combined with neoadjuvant chemoradiation for esophageal/GEJ cancers was generally safe and well tolerated. The majority of patients treated in the trial had Grade 1-2 adverse events (AEs). Six serious AEs considered at least possibly related to sotiga included cytokine release syndrome observed in three patients, nausea and vomiting in one patient, dysphagia in one patient and Guillain-Barre Syndrome in one patient. There were no patient withdrawals due to sotiga and no deaths related to the combination. As of July 2022, of the 29 evaluable patients, 11 (38%) patients had a pCR and 19 (66%) patients had a mPR (major pathological response) with less than 10% of the residual tumor remaining after treatment. By histology, the pCR rate was 33% (8/24) in patients with adenocarcinoma

and 60% (3/5) in patients with squamous cell carcinoma. The pCR rate was 41.2% for patients (n= 17) receiving four doses of sotiga versus 33.3% for patients (n= 12) receiving three doses. The R0 resection was achieved in 86% (25/29) of the patients and progressive disease was only 7%. Paired biomarker analysis collected before and one to two weeks following a single run-in dose of sotiga alone demonstrated significantly increased tumor infiltration of activated dendritic cells, monocytes and both CD8 and CD4 T cells compared to baseline. We believe that the observed immune/inflammatory response in the tumor demonstrates the ability of sotiga to change the tumor immune microenvironment from “cold” to “hot”, which we believe validates sotiga’s mechanism of action.

We believe the data observed in the APX005M-006 Trial support the advancement of the development of sotiga as a potential treatment in combination with other therapeutics in patients with esophageal or GEJ cancer. However, due to the development potential of sotiga in other oncology settings, the significant cost of conducting a subsequent trial of sotiga to explore use as a treatment in patients with esophageal or GEJ cancer, our current resources and the state of the capital markets, we do not plan to develop sotiga in this setting independently and are seeking to engage a global collaboration partner to advance the development of sotiga in this and other settings.

#### Sotiga in Advanced Soft Tissue Sarcoma

We are collaborating with Columbia University on a multi-center, investigator-sponsored Phase 2 clinical trial (NCT03719430) of sotiga in combination with doxorubicin in patients with advanced soft tissue sarcoma (the APX005M-009 Trial). This trial is nearing completion of enrollment of an originally planned 32 patients. In November 2022, we announced that we had observed a median progression-free survival (mPFS) of 12.45 months (data as of September 27, 2022) in the evaluable patients (n=10) with advanced/unresectable or metastatic de-differentiated liposarcoma (LPS). Based on the mPFS observed thus far in these LPS patients, which is meaningfully higher than the historical mPFS of patients with LPS who are treated with standard-of-care doxorubicin alone, we and our collaborator Columbia University decided to expand the LPS cohort to enroll 10 additional patients with LPS to supplement the data we have observed and potentially inform a registration-enabling study in LPS.

#### **Financial Overview**

We do not have any products approved for sale and have not generated any revenue from product sales. We have funded our operations primarily through the issuance of convertible preferred stock as well as through proceeds from license agreements and borrowings under a debt arrangement. Our net losses were \$8.5 million and \$7.3 million for the three months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively, and \$25.6 million and \$20.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021. We expect to continue to incur significant losses for the foreseeable future. As of September 30, 2022, we had an accumulated deficit of \$170.4 million.

We expect our operating expenses to increase significantly as we continue to discover, develop, seek regulatory approvals for and prepare for potential commercialization of our product candidates, in particular to advance sotiga into additional and potentially registration-enabling clinical trials and advance APX601 into clinical development. Our net losses may fluctuate significantly from quarter-to-quarter and year-to-year, depending on the timing of our clinical trials and our expenditures on other research and development activities.

We will need substantial additional funding, in addition to the net proceeds of the Transaction (as defined below), to support our continuing operations and to pursue our long-term development strategy. We may seek additional funding through the issuance of common stock, other equity or debt financings or collaborations or partnerships with other companies. The amount and timing of our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including the pace and results of our clinical development efforts for our product candidates and other research, development, manufacturing, and commercial activities.

Legacy Apexigen was incorporated in Delaware in 2010, the year Legacy Apexigen was spun off from Epitomics, Inc. (“Epitomics”), which was a California-based biotechnology company that was acquired by Abcam Plc (“Abcam”) in 2012. Legacy Apexigen was spun off from Epitomics to focus on the discovery, development and commercialization of humanized monoclonal antibody therapeutics. Apexigen is headquartered in San Carlos, California.

#### ***Business Combination Agreement and Related Agreements***

On March 17, 2022, BCAC and Legacy Apexigen entered into a definitive business combination agreement (“Business Combination Agreement”) pursuant to which BCAC and Legacy Apexigen agreed to combine, with the equityholders of both entities holding equity in the combined company listed on the Nasdaq Stock Exchange (the “Combined Company”) and with Legacy Apexigen’s equityholders owning a majority of the equity in the Combined Company. The transactions contemplated under the Business Combination Agreement (the “Transaction”) closed on July 29, 2022. Legacy Apexigen equityholders received equity in the Combined Company in the form of common shares and warrants. Under the Business Combination Agreement, Legacy Apexigen was

valued at \$205.0 million on a fully diluted basis, net of exercise proceeds for Legacy Apexigen's pre-closing stock options. Concurrently with the execution of the Business Combination Agreement, BCAC entered into subscription agreements with certain investors for a private investment in public equity ("PIPE") transaction to close concurrently with the business combination. In addition, concurrent with the execution of the Business Combination Agreement, BCAC, Legacy Apexigen and Lincoln Park entered into a committed investment agreement under which the Combined Company would have the right to direct Lincoln Park to purchase up to an aggregate of \$50.0 million of our common stock over a 24-month period pursuant to the terms of a purchase agreement.

As a result, the Combined Company received approximately \$19.0 million in gross proceeds funded by approximately \$4.5 million in cash held in BCAC's trust account net of redemption and \$14.5 million from the PIPE. The Combined Company paid off the Extension and Working Capital Notes that totaled \$0.9 million and incurred \$9.2 million in transaction expenses relating to the Transaction, consisting of banking, legal, and other professional fees. The PIPE investors received an aggregate of 1,452,000 units (each a "PIPE Unit") at a purchase price of \$10.00 per unit. Each PIPE Unit consists of one share of common stock and one-half of one warrant. Each whole warrant entitles the PIPE Investor to purchase one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share during the period commencing 30 days after July 29, 2022 and terminating on the five-year anniversary of July 29, 2022.

The Business Combination is accounted for as a reverse recapitalization in accordance with U.S. GAAP. Under this method of accounting, BCAC was treated as the "acquired" company for financial reporting purposes. See Note 3, "Business Combination," to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Form 10-Q for further details. Accordingly, for accounting purposes, the Business Combination was treated as the equivalent of Legacy Apexigen issuing stock for the net assets of BCAC, accompanied by a recapitalization. The net assets of BCAC are stated at historical cost, with no goodwill or intangible assets recorded.

### ***COVID-19 Impact and Business Update***

The ongoing COVID-19 pandemic continues to affect economies and business globally. The pandemic may continue to affect our business operations such as our ability to initiate and complete ongoing, planned or future clinical trials and preclinical studies. We anticipate a continued impact through the remainder of 2022. Our ability to raise additional funds to support our operations may also be adversely impacted by potential worsening global economic conditions and the recent disruptions to, and volatility in, financial markets in the U.S. and worldwide, including as a result from the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic. We actively monitor and manage our responses and continues to assess actual and potential impacts onto our operations and financial condition, as well as our business developments.

We cannot predict the specific extent, duration, or full impact that the COVID-19 pandemic will have on our business, financial condition and operations, including planned research, manufacturing and clinical development timelines. The impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our financial performance will depend on future developments, including the duration of and surges in the pandemic, including due to new variants of the virus, the pandemic's impact on our manufacturing activities, clinical trials (including enrollment and operations at clinical trial sites), contract research organizations ("CROs"), and other third parties with whom we do business and the pandemic's impact on our employees. These developments and the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the financial markets and the overall economy are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted. If the financial markets or the overall economy are impacted for an extended period, our business may be significantly adversely affected.

### **Components of Results of Operations**

#### ***Operating Expenses***

##### ***Research and Development Expenses***

Research and development expenses consist primarily of costs incurred for the development of sotiga, our lead product candidate, as well as APX601 and other product candidates. We expense research and development costs as incurred. Nonrefundable advance payments that we make for goods or services to be received in the future for use in research and development activities are recorded as prepaid expenses. We expense the prepaid amounts as the related goods are delivered or the services are performed.

Research and development expenses include:

- Expenses incurred under agreements with third-party contract research organizations for clinical development;
- Costs related to production of drug substance, drug product and clinical supply, including fees paid to third-party contract manufacturers;
- Laboratory and vendor expenses related to the execution of preclinical activities;

- Employee-related expenses, which include salaries, benefits and stock-based compensation; and
- Facilities, depreciation and amortization, insurance and other direct and allocated expenses incurred in our research and development activities

The following table summarizes our research and development expenses incurred for the periods presented (in thousands):

	Three Months Ended September 30,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2022	2021	2022	2021
	(Unaudited)			
Clinical development	\$ 1,014	\$ 1,734	\$ 4,442	\$ 5,825
Contract manufacturing	2,877	1,061	8,282	2,749
Discovery and non-clinical	166	1,313	990	2,265
Personnel costs	1,255	1,104	4,191	3,424
Other allocated indirect costs	371	289	891	859
Total research and development expenses	<u>\$ 5,683</u>	<u>\$ 5,501</u>	<u>\$ 18,796</u>	<u>\$ 15,122</u>

We expect our research and development expenses to increase substantially for the foreseeable future as we advance the clinical development of sotiga, including potentially into a registration-enabling clinical trial, and advance APX601 through an IND application and into clinical development. The process of conducting the necessary clinical research to obtain regulatory approval is costly and time-consuming, and the successful development of our product candidates is highly uncertain. As a result, we are unable to determine the duration and completion costs of our research and development projects or when and to what extent we will generate revenue from the commercialization and sale of any of our product candidates.

#### *General and Administrative Expenses*

General and administrative expenses consist of salaries, benefits, and stock-based compensation expense for personnel in executive, operations, legal, human resources, finance and administrative functions, professional fees for legal, patent, consulting, accounting and audit services, and allocated expenses for technology and facilities. We expense general and administrative costs in the periods in which they are incurred.

We expect that our general and administrative expenses will increase substantially over the next several years as we hire additional personnel to support the continued research and development of our products and growth of our business. Following the completion of the Merger, we also anticipate that we will incur significant additional expenses related to compliance with the rules and regulations of the SEC, Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the listing standards of Nasdaq, additional corporate, director and officer insurance expenses, increased legal, audit and consulting fees and greater investor relations expenses. As a result, we expect that the general and administrative expenses will increase in future periods in the near-term.

#### *Other Income, Net*

Other income, net primarily relates to interest income on our cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments, change in fair value of derivative warrant liabilities, change in fair value of common stock liability, and fees related to our short-term investments.

### **Results of Operations**

#### **Comparison of the Three and Nine Months Ended September 30, 2022 and 2021**

The following table presents our consolidated statement of operations data for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, and the dollar and percentage change between the two periods (in thousands):

	Three Months Ended September 30,				Nine Months Ended September 30,			
	2022	2021	\$ Change	% Change	2022	2021	\$ Change	% Change
	(Unaudited)				(Unaudited)			
Operating expenses:								
Research and development	\$ 5,683	\$ 5,501	\$ 182	3 %	\$ 18,796	\$ 15,122	\$ 3,674	24 %
General and administrative	3,116	1,807	1,309	72 %	7,240	5,735	1,505	26 %
Total operating expenses	8,799	7,308	1,491	20 %	26,036	20,857	5,179	25 %
Loss from operations	(8,799)	(7,308)	(1,491)	20 %	(26,036)	(20,857)	(5,179)	25 %
Other income, net	307	7	300	4286 %	398	34	364	1071 %
Net loss	<u>\$ (8,492)</u>	<u>\$ (7,301)</u>	<u>\$ (1,191)</u>	<u>16 %</u>	<u>\$ (25,638)</u>	<u>\$ (20,823)</u>	<u>\$ (4,815)</u>	<u>23 %</u>



## **Costs and Expenses**

### *Research and Development*

Research and development expenses increased by \$0.2 million, or 3%, to \$5.7 million for the three months ended September 30, 2022 from \$5.5 million for the three months ended September 30, 2021. The increase primarily relates to an increase of \$0.2 million in compensation expenses.

Research and development expenses increased by \$3.7 million, or 24%, to \$18.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 from \$15.1 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2021. The increase primarily relates to an increase of \$5.5 million in contract manufacturing expenses and an increase of \$0.8 million in compensation expenses, partially offset by a decrease of \$1.4 million in clinical development expenses and a decrease of \$1.3 million in discovery and other non-clinical expenses.

The \$5.5 million increase in contract manufacturing expenses was primarily due to a \$5.7 million increase related to sotigalimab manufacturing costs, partially offset by a \$0.2 million decrease related to APX701.

### *General and Administrative*

General and administrative expenses increased by \$1.3 million, or 69%, to \$3.1 million for the three months ended September 30, 2022 from \$1.8 million for the three months ended September 30, 2021. The increase is primarily attributable to a \$0.7 million increase in compensation expenses, a \$0.3 million increase in business insurance expenses, and \$0.3 million increase in amortization of deferred financing costs.

General and administrative expenses increased by \$1.5 million, or 25%, to \$7.2 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 from \$5.7 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2021. The increase is primarily attributable to a \$1.1 million increase in compensation expenses, a \$0.3 million increase in business insurance expenses, and \$0.3 million increase in amortization of deferred financing costs, partially offset by the \$0.2 million decrease in spending on professional services.

### *Other Income, Net*

Other income, net, increased by \$0.3 million and \$0.4 million for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022, respectively, as compared to the equivalent prior year periods. The increases are primarily attributable to the increase in interest income of \$0.1 million, and a \$0.2 million change in fair value of derivative warrant liabilities and liability for common stock to be issued as a commitment fee to Lincoln Park.

## **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

Since inception through September 30, 2022, we have not generated any revenue from product sales and have incurred significant operating losses and negative cash flows from our operations. Our net losses were \$8.5 million and \$7.3 million for the three months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively, and \$25.6 million and \$20.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively. As of September 30, 2022, we had an accumulated deficit of \$170.4 million. We have funded our operations to date primarily through the issuance of convertible preferred stock as well as through proceeds from license agreements and borrowings under a debt arrangement. We will continue to be dependent upon equity and debt financings or collaboration-related revenue until we are able to generate positive cash flows from our operations. As of September 30, 2022, we had \$20.7 million in cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments and expect to fund our operations into the second quarter of 2023 without receiving any additional proceeds under our committed equity line with Lincoln Park or any proceeds from any other potential financing or business development transactions. Our cash and cash equivalents consist primarily of bank deposits and money market funds. Our short-term investments consist of government debt securities, corporate debt securities, commercial paper and asset-backed securities.

## **Funding Requirements**

Our primary use of cash, cash equivalents, and short-term investments is to fund operating expenses, which consist primarily of research and development expenditures related to our programs, and to a lesser extent, general and administrative expenditures. We plan to increase our research and development expenses for the foreseeable future as we continue the clinical development of our current and future product candidates. At this time, due to the inherently unpredictable nature of clinical development and the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, we cannot reasonably estimate the costs we will incur and the timelines required to complete development, obtain marketing approval, and commercialize our current product candidate or any future product candidates. For the

same reasons, we are also unable to predict when, if ever, we will generate revenue from product sales or our current or any future license agreements that we may enter into or whether, or when, if ever, we may achieve profitability. Clinical and preclinical development timelines, the probability of success, and development costs can differ materially from expectations. In addition, we cannot forecast the timing and amounts of milestone, royalty and other revenue from licensing activities, which future product candidates may be subject to future collaborations, when such arrangements will be secured, if at all, and to what degree such arrangements would affect our development plans and capital requirements.

Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including the following:

- the progress, timing, scope, results and costs of our clinical trials and preclinical studies for our product candidates, including the ability to enroll patients in a timely manner for our clinical trials;
- the costs of obtaining clinical and commercial supplies and validating the commercial manufacturing process for sotigalimab and any other product candidates;
- our ability to successfully commercialize sotigalimab and any other product candidates;
- the cost, timing and outcomes of regulatory approvals;
- the extent to which we may acquire or in-license other product candidates and technologies;
- the timing and amount of any milestone, royalty or other payments we are required to make pursuant to any current or future collaboration or license agreement;
- the extent to which we receive royalty payments through our current or any future partnership arrangements;
- our ability to attract, hire and retain qualified personnel;
- the cost of preparing, filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights; and
- the impact of the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic, which may exacerbate the magnitude of the factors discussed above.

Due to our significant research and development expenditures, we have generated operating losses in all periods presented. We expect to incur substantial additional losses in the future as we expand our research and development activities. Based on our research and development plans, there is uncertainty regarding our ability to maintain liquidity sufficient to operate our business effectively, which raises substantial doubt as to our ability to continue as a going concern. There can be no assurance that such additional capital, whether in the form of debt or equity financing, will be sufficient or available and, if available, that such capital will be offered on terms and conditions acceptable to us.

In addition to the proceeds that we received from the business combination transaction, including the related PIPE, we may seek additional funds through the sale and issuance of shares of our common stock in private or public offerings, other equity or debt financings, our committed purchase agreement with Lincoln Park, collaborations or partnerships with third parties, or other transactions to monetize assets, including our right to receive milestone payments and royalties under our out-license arrangements. We cannot assure that we will succeed in acquiring additional funding at levels sufficient to fund our operations or on terms favorable to us. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing when needed, we may have to delay, reduce the scope of or suspend one or more of our clinical trials or preclinical studies or research and development programs. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of our product candidates, we are unable to estimate the amount of increased capital outlays and operating expenditures associated with our current and planned research, development and manufacturing activities.

To the extent that we raise additional capital through strategic alliances or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our product candidates, future revenue streams or research programs or to grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we raise additional capital through public or private equity offerings, the ownership interest of our then-existing stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect our stockholders' rights. If we raise additional capital through debt financing, we may be subject to covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends.

## Cash Flows

The following table summarizes our cash flow data for the periods presented (in thousands):

	Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2022	2021
	(Unaudited)	
Net cash used in operating activities	\$ (27,640)	\$ (18,754)
Net cash provided by investing activities	4,930	13,147
Net cash provided by financing activities	11,975	49

## Comparison of the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2022 and 2021

### Operating Activities

For the nine months ended September 30, 2022, cash used in operating activities was \$27.6 million, which consisted of a net loss of \$25.6 million and a net change of \$3.8 million in our net operating assets and liabilities, partially offset by non-cash charges of \$1.8 million. The change in our net operating assets and liabilities was primarily due to a decrease of \$3.7 million in accounts payable and accrued expenses during the nine months ended September 30, 2022. The non-cash charges are primarily comprised of \$1.1 million for stock-based compensation expense, \$0.2 million for expense from exercise of restricted stock awards, \$0.3 million for amortization of deferred financing costs and \$0.3 million for non-cash lease expense, partially offset by \$0.1 million for change in fair value of liability for common stock to be issued.

For the nine months ended September 30, 2021, cash used in operating activities was \$18.8 million, which consisted of a net loss of \$20.8 million, partially offset by non-cash charges of \$1.6 million and a net change of \$0.5 million in our net operating assets and liabilities. The non-cash charges are primarily comprised of \$0.9 million for stock-based compensation expense, \$0.2 million for accretion of discount and amortization of premiums on marketable securities, \$0.4 million for non-cash lease expense, and \$0.1 million for depreciation expense. The change in our net operating assets and liabilities was primarily due an increase of \$1.2 million from proceeds recorded to deferred revenue, partially offset by a decrease of \$0.3 million in increased prepaid expenses and other current assets as a result of timing of payments and a decrease of \$0.4 million from the amortization of lease liabilities.

Changes in prepaid expenses and other current assets, accounts payable and accrued liabilities were generally due to the advancement of our research programs and the timing of vendor payments.

### Investing Activities

For the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, cash provided by investing activities was \$4.9 million and \$13.1 million, respectively. The change in cash flows from investing activities was principally from the timing of purchases and sales of marketable securities.

### Financing Activities

Net cash provided by financing activities for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 was \$12.0 million and consisted primarily of proceeds from the business combination and private offering and proceeds from common stock issued to Lincoln Park during the period. Net cash used in financing activities for the nine months ended September 30, 2021 was not significant.

## Contractual Obligations

We lease our principal facility under a non-cancelable operating lease agreement with a lease term ending in March 2023.

In addition, we have entered into certain licensing agreements pursuant to which we will owe royalty payments if and when we sublicense or commercialize certain of our products, as well as certain collaboration agreements pursuant to which we may in the future owe certain amounts to our collaboration partners upon the achievement of certain milestones. Because these obligations are uncertain, and their timing and amount are not known, they are not included in the table above. These agreements are described in more detail in the section titled “*Licensing and Other Arrangements*” below.

We also enter into agreements in the normal course of business with contract research organizations for clinical trials, preclinical studies, manufacturing and other services and products for operating purposes, which are generally cancelable upon written notice. These obligations and commitments are also not included in the table above.

### **Licensing and Other Arrangements**

We have entered into royalty-bearing license agreements and partnership agreements. Under the terms of these agreements described below, we have the right to collect, or are obligated to pay, certain milestone payments upon the achievement of specified pre-clinical, clinical or commercial milestones.

#### ***Beovu® and Antibody Candidate Discovery and Development Agreement with Novartis***

We have an agreement with Novartis relating to antibodies that Epitomics generated that target certain molecules which were used to develop antibody product candidates. Under the agreement, Novartis has a non-exclusive, irrevocable, worldwide, sublicensable, royalty-bearing and perpetual license to our rights in certain intellectual property to develop and commercialize those drug product candidates. Pursuant to the terms of the agreement, the upfront fee and all milestone payments due upon the achievement of certain pre-clinical and clinical development milestones have been paid. Novartis remains obligated to pay us a very low single-digit royalty on net sales of the Beovu (brovacizumab-dbl) product for therapeutic uses by Novartis, its affiliates or licensees.

In October 2019, Novartis' Beovu was approved for commercial sale. Novartis has disputed its obligation to pay Beovu royalties to us and continues to pay such royalties under protest. As a result, we have determined that any sales-based royalty revenue that we may earn under this agreement is currently fully constrained. We have recorded the Beovu royalty proceeds as deferred revenue in the consolidated balance sheets. Deferred revenue totaled \$5.1 million and \$3.6 million as of September 30, 2022 and December 31, 2021, respectively.

#### ***Other Agreements***

We have entered into certain other partnership program agreements that may eventually lead to royalty payments or other payments to us, but we do not anticipate any potential payments under these agreements in the foreseeable future, if at all.

#### ***Clinical Collaborations***

We have entered into a number of collaboration arrangements for the clinical development of sotigalimab with companies and academic and non-profit institutions. These arrangements specify whether we or the collaborator bears the cost of the clinical trials, and in the case of combination therapies, typically the collaborators provide the supply of such drug products while we supply sotigalimab. Our applicable share of the costs of these clinical collaborations are reflected as research and development expenses.

We entered into an agreement with PICI whereby PICI sponsored a Phase 1b/2 clinical trial, APX005M-004, to evaluate the combination of sotigalimab with gemcitabine and nab-paclitaxel, with and without nivolumab, in patients with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. PICI funded the cost of the study, and we supplied sotigalimab and provided related services at no cost to PICI.

In October 2019, we amended the PICI agreement. As a result of the amendment, we paid \$1.0 million in cash and issued 132,213 shares of our common stock to PICI as compensation for services PICI rendered. The cash payment and the fair value of the common stock of \$0.9 million were recognized immediately as research and development expense. Upon completion of the other milestones, we recognized \$0.7 million in research and development expenses for the year ended December 31, 2020. There were no expenses recognized during the year ended December 31, 2021 and nine months ended September 30, 2022.

Upon achievement of certain regulatory and clinical milestones related to the development of sotigalimab in pancreatic cancer, we will be obligated to pay an aggregate of up to \$9.5 million in cash and shares of common stock. Because we are not currently advancing the development of sotiga in pancreatic cancer, none of these milestones were probable as of September 30, 2022, and no amounts have been recognized.

#### **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We do not have any off-balance sheet arrangements that have, or are reasonably likely to have, a current or future significant effect on our financial condition, results of operations, liquidity or cash flows.

## **Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates**

We prepare our consolidated financial statements in accordance with GAAP. The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires our management to make a number of estimates and assumptions relating to the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the period. We evaluate our significant estimates on an ongoing basis, including estimates related to accruals for research and development costs, stock-based compensation and uncertain tax positions. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

We believe that the accounting policies described below involve a significant degree of judgment and complexity. Accordingly, we believe these are the most critical to aid in fully understanding and evaluating our financial condition and results of operations. For further information, see Note 2, *Summary of Significant Accounting Policies*, to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Form 10-Q.

### **Emerging Growth Company**

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act, as modified by the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the “JOBS Act”). We may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to public companies that are not emerging growth companies. Section 102(b)(1) of the JOBS Act exempts emerging growth companies from being required to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards until private companies (that is, those that have not had a Securities Act registration statement declared effective or do not have a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act) are required to comply with the new or revised financial accounting standards. The JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can elect to opt out of the extended transition period and comply with the requirements that apply to non-emerging growth companies but any such election to opt out is irrevocable. We have elected not to opt out of such extended transition period, which means that when a standard is issued or revised and it has different application dates for public or private companies, we, as an emerging growth company, can adopt the new or revised standard at the time private companies adopt the new or revised standard. This may make comparison of our consolidated financial statements with another public company, which is neither an emerging growth company nor an emerging growth company that has opted out of using the extended transition period, difficult or impossible because of the potential differences in accounting standards used.

### **Revenue Recognition**

Under Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic 606, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*, we recognize revenue when we transfer promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which we expect to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. We have not commenced sales of our product candidates and do not have a product approved for sale as of September 30, 2022.

We have other license agreements with third parties, under which we may also earn contingent fees including milestone payments based on counterparty performance and royalties on sales. We recognize milestone payments as revenue once the underlying events are probable of being met and there is not a significant risk of reversal. We recognize sales-based royalties as revenue when the underlying sales occur.

For more information on revenue recognition, see Note 2, *Summary of Significant Accounting Policies*, to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Form 10-Q.

### **Research and Development Expenses**

We expense research and development costs as incurred. Research and development consist of costs incurred for the development of sotiga, our lead product candidate, as well as APX601 and other product candidates. Research and development costs consist primarily of external costs related to clinical development, contract manufacturing, preclinical development and discovery as well as personnel costs and allocated overhead, such as rent, equipment, depreciation and utilities. Personnel costs consist of salaries, employee benefits and stock-based compensation.

We estimate external research and development expenses based on the services performed, pursuant to contracts with commercial and academic institutions that conduct and manage research and development services on our behalf. We record the costs of research and development activities based upon the estimated amount of services provided but not yet invoiced and includes these costs in accrued liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. These costs are a component of our research and development expenses.

We accrue these costs based on factors such as the number of subject visits, the number of active patients, the number of patients enrolled, and estimates of the work completed and other measures in accordance with agreements established with our third-party service providers. As actual costs become known, we adjust our accrued liabilities. We have not experienced any significant differences between accrued costs and actual costs incurred. However, the status and timing of actual services performed may vary from our estimates, resulting in adjustments to expenses in future periods. Changes in these estimates that result in significant changes to our accruals could significantly affect our results of operations.

Nonrefundable advance payments for goods or services to be received in the future for use in research and development are capitalized and then expensed as the related goods are delivered or the services are performed. We evaluate such payments for current or long-term classification based on when they will be realized.

### ***Fair Value Measurements***

We apply fair value accounting to all financial assets and liabilities and non-financial assets and liabilities that are recognized or disclosed at fair value in the consolidated financial statements on a recurring basis. The carrying amount of our financial assets and liabilities, including accounts payable and accrued expenses, approximate their fair values due to their short-term maturities.

For more information, see Note 4, *Fair Value Measurement*, to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Form 10-Q.

### ***Stock-based Compensation***

Stock-based compensation, inclusive of stock options with only a service condition and stock options with performance conditions, are awarded to our officers, directors, employees, and certain non-employees.

We account for stock-based compensation in accordance with ASC Topic 718, “*Compensation—Stock Compensation*.” We measure all stock-based awards granted to employees and non-employees based on the estimated grant date fair value. For awards subject to service-based vesting conditions, we recognize stock-based compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period, which is generally the vesting term. For awards subject to performance-based vesting conditions, we recognize stock-based compensation expense using the accelerated attribution method when it is probable that the performance condition will be achieved. We recognize forfeitures as they occur.

We calculate the fair value of stock options using the Black-Scholes option pricing model and recognize expense using the straight-line attribution approach. The Black-Scholes option pricing model requires inputs based on certain subjective assumptions, including the fair value of our common stock, the expected term of the awards, expected stock price volatility, the risk-free interest rate for a period that approximates the expected term of the awards and our expected dividend yield.

*Expected Term*—We determine the expected life of options granted using the “simplified” method. Under this approach, we presume the expected terms to be the mid-point between the weighted-average vesting term and the contractual term of the option. The simplified method makes the assumption that the award recipient will exercise share options evenly over the period when the share options are vested and ending on the date when the share options would expire.

*Risk-Free Interest Rate*—We base the risk-free interest rate from the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the measurement date with maturities approximately equal to the expected term.

*Expected Volatility*—Because our stock is recently traded in an active market, we calculate volatility by using the historical volatilities of the common stock of comparable publicly traded companies. The historical volatility data was computed using the daily closing prices for the selected companies’ shares during the equivalent period of the calculated expected term of the stock-based awards. We will continue to apply this process until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of our own stock price becomes available.

*Expected Dividends*—We have never paid cash dividends on our common stock and do not have plans to pay cash dividends in the future. Therefore, we use an expected dividend yield of zero.

As of September 30, 2022, the unrecognized stock-based compensation expense related to stock options was \$3.5 million and is expected to be recognized as expense over a weighted-average period of approximately 2.7 years.

For more information, see Note 10, *Stock-Based Compensation*, to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Form 10-Q.

**New Accounting Pronouncements**

See Note 2, *Summary of Significant Accounting Policies*, to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Form 10-Q.

### **Item 3. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk.**

We are exposed to certain credit and interest rate risks as part of our ongoing business operations.

#### ***Credit Risk***

We are exposed to credit risk on our investment portfolio. Investments that potentially subject us to credit risk consist principally of cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments. We place our cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments with financial institutions with high credit standing and our excess cash in marketable investment grade securities. Our short-term investments consist of government debt securities, corporate debt securities, commercial paper, and asset backed securities.

#### ***Interest Rate Risk***

We had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments of \$20.7 million and \$36.4 million as of September 30, 2022 and December 31, 2021, respectively. The primary goals of our investment policy are liquidity and capital preservation. We do not enter into investments for trading or speculative purposes. We believe that we do not have any significant exposure to changes in the fair value of these assets as a result of changes in interest rates due to the short-term nature of our cash and cash equivalents. Declines in interest rates, however, would reduce future investment income. A hypothetical 1.00% (100 basis points) increase in interest rates would not have materially impacted the fair value of our short-term investments as of September 30, 2022 and December 31, 2021. If overall interest rates had increased or decreased by 1.00% (100 basis points), our interest income would not have been materially affected during the year ended December 31, 2021 or nine months ended September 30, 2022.

#### ***Effects of Inflation***

Inflation generally affects us by increasing our cost of labor and research and development contracts. We do not believe that inflation has had a significant effect on our financial results during the periods presented. However, to the extent that the inflation the United States has recently experienced results in rising interest rates and has other adverse effects on the market, it may adversely affect our future consolidated financial condition and results of operations.

### **Item 4. Controls and Procedures.**

#### ***Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures***

Under the supervision and with the participation of our management, including our principal executive officer and principal financial officer, we conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of the end of the period ended September 30, 2022, as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act. Based on this evaluation, our principal executive officer and principal financial officer have concluded that during the period covered by this report, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of September 30, 2022 to ensure that information we are required to disclose in reports that we file or submit under the Exchange Act (i) is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported within the time periods specified in SEC rules and forms, and (ii) is accumulated and communicated to our management, including our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

#### ***Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

There was no change in our internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the three months ended September 30, 2022 covered by this Quarterly Report that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.



**Item 1. Legal Proceedings.**

From time to time, we may become involved in litigation or other legal proceedings. We are not currently a party to any litigation or legal proceedings that, in the opinion of our management, are likely to have a material adverse effect on our business. Regardless of outcome, litigation can have an adverse impact on us because of defense and settlement costs, diversion of management resources, and other factors.

**Item 1A. Risk Factors.**

*An investment in our common stock involves risks. Prior to making a decision about investing in our common stock, you should consider carefully the risks together with all of the other information contained in this prospectus, including any risks described below. Each of the referenced risks and uncertainties could adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition, as well as adversely affect the value of an investment in our securities. Additional risks not known to us or that we believe are immaterial may also adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition and the value of an investment in our securities. “Apexigen,” “the Company,” “we,” “us” or “our” refers to Legacy Apexigen prior to the consummation of the Business Combination and to Apexigen following the Business Combination.*

**Summary Risk Factors**

Our business is subject to numerous risks and uncertainties that you should consider before investing in our company, as more fully described below. The principal factors and uncertainties that make investing in our company risky include, among others:

- We are in the early stages of clinical drug development and have a limited operating history and no products approved for commercial sale.
- We have incurred net losses since inception and expect to continue to incur significant net losses for the foreseeable future.
- We will require substantial additional capital to finance operations. If we are unable to raise such capital when needed or on acceptable terms, we may be forced to delay, reduce, and/or eliminate one or more research and drug development programs or future commercialization efforts.
- We are dependent on the success of our product candidates, including our lead product candidate, sotigalimab, which is currently in multiple clinical trials.
- The clinical trials of our current and any future product candidates may not demonstrate safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of regulatory authorities or otherwise be timely conducted or produce positive results.
- If our competitors develop and market products that are more effective, safer, or less expensive than our product candidates, we will be negatively impacted.
- If we experience delays or difficulties in the enrollment of patients in clinical trials, our receipt of necessary marketing approvals could be delayed or prevented.
- The regulatory approval processes of the Food and Drug Administration, European Medicines Agency, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities are lengthy, time-consuming, and inherently unpredictable. If we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, we will be unable to generate product revenue and our business will be substantially harmed.
- If we are unable to obtain, maintain, enforce, or protect our intellectual property rights in any products we develop or in our technology, if the scope of the intellectual property protection obtained is not sufficiently broad, or if we infringe the intellectual property rights of others, third parties could develop and commercialize products and technology similar or identical to ours, we could be prevented from commercializing our products and we may not be able to compete effectively in our markets.

## **Risks Related to Our Business, Financial Condition, and Need for Additional Capital**

***We are in the early stages of clinical drug development and have a limited operating history and no products approved for commercial sale, which may make it difficult for you to evaluate our current business and predict our future success and viability.***

We are an early clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. Apexigen was incorporated and commenced operations in 2010 following a spin-out transaction from its parent company. We have no products approved for commercial sale and have not generated any revenue from commercial product sales. Our operations to date have been limited to performing research and development activities in support of our product development and licensing efforts, hiring personnel, raising capital to support and expand such activities, providing general and administrative support for these operations, developing potential product candidates, conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, including clinical trials of sotigalimab, our lead product candidate, and our other wholly owned product candidates, and entering into, and performing our obligations under, licensing arrangements that have resulted in additional product candidates in clinical development or commercialization by our licensees. Other than sotigalimab, all of our wholly owned programs are in preclinical or research development. We have not yet demonstrated our ability to successfully complete any large-scale pivotal clinical trials, obtain marketing approvals, manufacture a drug on a commercial scale or arrange for a third party to do so on our behalf, or conduct sales and marketing activities. In addition, only one of our licensees has obtained marketing approvals for product candidates we have out-licensed. As a result, it may be more difficult for you to accurately predict our future success or viability than it could be if we had a longer operating history.

In addition, as a business with a limited operating history, we may encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, delays, and other known and unknown factors and risks frequently experienced by early-stage biopharmaceutical companies in rapidly evolving fields. We also would need to transition from a company with a research and development focus to a company capable of supporting commercial activities after approval of any of our product candidates. We have not yet demonstrated an ability to successfully overcome such risks and difficulties, or to make such a transition. If we do not adequately address these risks and difficulties or successfully make such a transition, our business will suffer.

***We have incurred net losses since inception and expect to continue to incur significant net losses for the foreseeable future.***

Apexigen has incurred net losses since inception, has not generated any significant revenue to date, and has financed its operations prior to the Business Combination primarily through the issuance of convertible preferred stock, proceeds from collaborative research and development and out-license agreements, and borrowings under a debt arrangement. Apexigen's net loss was \$24.1 million and \$28.9 million for the years ended December 31, 2020 and 2021, respectively. Apexigen's net losses were \$8.5 million and \$7.3 million for the three months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively, and \$25.6 million and \$20.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2022 and 2021, respectively.

As of September 30, 2022, Apexigen had an accumulated deficit of \$170.4 million. Apexigen has devoted substantially all of its resources and efforts to date to research and development. Our clinical-stage pipeline currently consists of multiple product candidates, including our lead product candidate, sotigalimab, and our other internal programs are in preclinical or research development. As a result, we expect that it will be several years, if ever, before we generate revenue from product sales. Even if we succeed in receiving marketing approval for and commercializing one or more of our product candidates, we expect that we will continue to incur substantial research and development and other expenses in order to develop and market additional potential products. In addition, for certain of our licensees from whom we are entitled to receive royalty payments if they successfully develop and commercialize any products covered by licenses we have with them, there is no guarantee that their product development and commercialization will lead to any such payments even if any such product candidates receive regulatory approval for commercial sale, including Beovu® (brolocizumab-dblI), which is commercialized by Novartis, for which Apexigen has received sales-based royalties that are currently fully constrained and recorded as deferred revenue on Apexigen's consolidated balance sheet, as discussed below.

In connection with the Closing, we raised approximately \$19.0 million of gross proceeds. We incurred approximately \$9.2 million in transaction costs relating to the Business Combination, consisting of banking, legal, and other professional fees. The total net cash proceeds to us were approximately \$8.9 million after we paid off the Extension and Working Capital Notes that totaled \$0.9 million.

Our consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2021 and for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2022, included elsewhere in this prospectus have been prepared assuming we will continue as a going concern. As a development stage company, we expect to incur significant and increasing losses until regulatory approval is granted for sotigalimab, our lead product candidate. Regulatory approval is not guaranteed and may never be obtained. As a result, these conditions raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

We expect to continue to incur significant expenses and increasing operating losses for the foreseeable future. The net losses we incur may fluctuate significantly from quarter-to-quarter such that a period-to-period comparison of our results of operations may not be a good indication of our future performance. The size of our future net losses will depend, in part, on the rate of future growth of our expenses and our ability to generate revenue. Our expected future losses will continue to have an adverse effect on our working capital and our ability to achieve and maintain profitability.

***Our ability to generate revenue and achieve profitability depends significantly on our ability to achieve a number of objectives.***

Our business depends entirely on the successful development and commercialization of our product candidates. Apexigen currently generates no revenue from commercial sales of any products. Apexigen has no products approved for commercial sale and we do not anticipate generating any revenue from product sales unless and until sometime after we have successfully completed clinical development and received marketing approval for the commercial sale of a product candidate, if ever. In addition, we may not receive significant amounts of royalty revenue, if any, from our licensees for their product candidates if and when such candidates receive regulatory approval for commercial sale and are commercialized, including Beovu, which is commercialized by Novartis, for which Apexigen has received sales-based royalties that are currently fully constrained and recorded as deferred revenue on Apexigen's consolidated balance sheet as discussed below. Our ability to generate revenue and achieve profitability depends significantly on our ability to achieve a number of objectives, including:

- successful and timely completion of preclinical and clinical development of current and any future product candidates;
- timely receipt of marketing approvals from applicable regulatory authorities for current and any future product candidates for which we successfully complete clinical development;
- the extent of any required post-marketing approval commitments to applicable regulatory authorities;
- developing an efficient and scalable manufacturing process for current and any future product candidates, including establishing and maintaining commercially viable supply and manufacturing relationships with third parties to obtain finished products that are appropriately packaged for sale;
- successful launch of commercial sales following any marketing approval, including the development of a commercial infrastructure, whether in-house or with one or more partners or collaborators;
- a continued acceptable safety profile following any marketing approval;
- commercial acceptance of current and any future product candidates as viable treatment options by patients, the medical community, and third-party payors;
- addressing any competing technological and market developments;
- identifying, assessing, acquiring, and developing new product candidates;
- obtaining and maintaining patent protection, regulatory exclusivity, and other intellectual property-related protection, both in the United States and internationally;
- enforcing and defending our rights in our intellectual property portfolio, including our licensed intellectual property;
- negotiating favorable terms in any partnership, collaboration, licensing, or other arrangements that may be necessary to develop, manufacture, or commercialize our product candidates; and
- attracting, hiring, and retaining qualified personnel.

We may never be successful in achieving our objectives and, even if we do, may never generate revenue that is significant or large enough to achieve profitability. If we do achieve profitability, we may not sustain or increase profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. Our failure to become and remain profitable would decrease the value of our company and could impair our ability to maintain or further our research and development efforts, raise additional necessary capital, grow our business, and/or continue our operations.

***We will require substantial additional capital to finance our operations. If we are unable to raise such capital when needed, or on acceptable terms, we may be forced to delay, reduce, and/or eliminate one or more of our research and drug development programs or future commercialization efforts.***

Developing pharmaceutical products, including conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, is a very time-consuming, expensive, and uncertain process that takes years to complete. We expect our expenses to increase in connection with our ongoing activities, particularly as we conduct clinical trials of, and seek marketing approval for sotigalimab and our other product candidates. In order to support the advancement of the sotigalimab clinical development program, we are actively seeking a global development and commercialization collaboration partner for sotigalimab. In addition, if we obtain marketing approval for any of our product candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses related to drug sales, marketing, manufacturing, and distribution. We also expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company. Accordingly, we will need to obtain substantial additional funding in order to maintain our continuing operations. If we are unable to raise capital when needed or on acceptable terms, or to enter into a collaboration to support the advancement of the sotigalimab development program, we may be forced to delay, reduce, and/or eliminate one or more of our research and drug development programs or future commercialization efforts. Changing circumstances, some of which may be beyond our control, could cause us to consume capital significantly faster than we currently anticipate, and we may need to seek additional funds sooner than planned.

We plan to continue to use our cash on hand to fund our development of our product candidates and for other research and development activities, working capital, and other general corporate purposes. This may include additional research, hiring additional personnel, capital expenditures, and the costs of operating as a public company. Advancing the development of our current and any future product candidates will require a significant amount of capital. Our current cash and cash equivalents are not sufficient to fund all of the actions that are necessary to complete the development of sotigalimab or any of our other product candidates. We will be required to obtain further funding through public or private equity offerings, sale of shares of our common stock through utilization of our equity line with Lincoln Park, debt financings, partnership, collaborations, and licensing arrangements or other sources, which may dilute our stockholders or restrict our operating activities. In addition, there are certain conditions and limitations on our ability to utilize our \$50,000,000 equity line with Lincoln Park. We are required to satisfy various conditions in order to be able to initiate additional purchases by Lincoln Park under the equity line. Once such conditions are satisfied, the Lincoln Park equity line purchases are subject to volume limitations tied to periodic market prices, ownership limitations limiting Lincoln Park from owning more than 4.99% of our common stock, a minimum closing price of \$3.00 per share of common stock at which we can deliver a Regular Purchase notice to Lincoln Park to purchase shares of common stock, and other limitations as specified in the Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement. If any of these conditions are not satisfied or limitations are in effect, we may not be able to fully utilize the Lincoln Park equity line, which would have an adverse impact on our ability to satisfy our capital needs and could materially adversely impact our business. Adequate additional financing may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. Our failure to raise capital as and when needed would have a negative impact on our financial condition and our ability to pursue our business strategy.

#### **Risks Related to the Discovery, Development, and Commercialization of Our Product Candidates**

***We are dependent on the success of our product candidates, including our lead product candidate, sotigalimab, which is currently in multiple clinical trials. If we are unable to obtain approval for and commercialize our product candidates for one or more indications in a timely manner, our business will be materially harmed.***

Our success is dependent on our ability to timely complete clinical trials and obtain marketing approval for, and then successfully commercialize, our product candidates, including our lead product candidate, sotigalimab, for one or more indications. Our product candidates are in the early stages of development and we are investing the majority of our efforts and financial resources in the research and development of sotigalimab for multiple indications, both directly through our own efforts and indirectly through clinical collaboration arrangements, including investigator- and cooperative group-sponsored trials (“ISTs”). Our product candidates will require additional clinical development, preclinical and manufacturing activities, marketing approval from government regulators, substantial investment, and significant marketing efforts before we generate any revenue from product sales. We are not permitted to market or promote any product candidates, in a jurisdiction before receiving marketing approval from the relevant regulatory authority, including, for example, the Food and Drug Administration (“FDA”) for marketing in the United States and the European Medicines Agency (“EMA”) for marketing in the European Union, and we may never receive such marketing approvals.

- The success of our product candidates will depend on numerous factors, including the following:
- successful and timely completion of our ongoing clinical trials;
- initiation and successful patient enrollment and completion of additional clinical trials on a timely basis;

- efficacy, safety and tolerability profiles that are satisfactory to the FDA, EMA or any comparable foreign regulatory authority for marketing approval;
- raising additional funds, or entering into collaborations, necessary to complete the clinical development of and to commercialize of our product candidates;
- timely receipt of marketing approvals for our product candidates from applicable regulatory authorities;
- the extent of any required post-marketing approval commitments to applicable regulatory authorities;
- the maintenance of existing or the establishment of new supply arrangements with third-party drug product suppliers and manufacturers;
- the maintenance of existing or the establishment of new scaled production arrangements with third-party manufacturers to obtain finished products that are appropriately packaged for sale;
- obtaining and maintaining patent protection, trade secret protection and regulatory exclusivity, both in the United States and internationally;
- protection of our rights in our intellectual property portfolio, including our licensed intellectual property;
- successful launch of commercial sales following any marketing approval;
- a continued acceptable safety profile following any marketing approval;
- commercial acceptance by patients, the medical community, and third-party payors; and
- our ability to compete with other therapies.

We do not have complete control over many of these factors, including certain aspects of clinical development and the regulatory submission process, including trial design, implementation, and timely provision of data in our collaboration based clinical trials and ISTs; potential threats to our intellectual property rights; and the manufacturing, marketing, distribution, and sales efforts of any future collaborator. If we are unable to achieve one or more of the objectives set forth above, our business will be materially harmed.

***Our clinical trials may reveal serious adverse events, toxicities, or other side effects of our current and any future product candidates that result in a safety profile that could inhibit regulatory approval or market acceptance of our product candidates.***

In order to obtain marketing approval for our current or any future product candidates, we must demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the product candidate for the relevant clinical indication or indications through preclinical studies and clinical trials as well as additional supporting data. If our product candidates are associated with undesirable side effects in preclinical studies or clinical trials, or have unexpected characteristics, we may need to interrupt, delay, or abandon their development or limit development to more narrow uses or subpopulations in which the undesirable side effects or other characteristics are less prevalent, less severe, or more acceptable from a risk-benefit perspective.

Although we have conducted various preclinical studies and have data from various early-stage clinical trials, we do not know the predictive value of these studies and trials for our future clinical trials, and we cannot guarantee that any positive results in preclinical studies or previous clinical trials will successfully translate to patients in our future clinical trials. It is not uncommon to observe results in clinical trials that are unexpected based on preclinical testing or previous clinical trials, and many product candidates fail in clinical trials despite promising preclinical or early-stage clinical results. Moreover, preclinical and clinical data are often susceptible to varying interpretations and analyses, and many companies that believed their product candidates performed satisfactorily in preclinical studies and clinical trials have nonetheless failed to obtain marketing approval for their products.

While we believe that sotigalimab has been reasonably well tolerated in our clinical trials, subjects have experienced adverse events that have been considered treatment-related. Some of the more common adverse events included fever, chills, fatigue, asthenia, nausea, vomiting, pruritus, abnormal liver function/gamma gamma-glutamyl transferase/alkaline phosphatase tests, decreased appetite, rash, headache, diarrhea, infusion-related reactions, and cytokine release syndrome (“CRS”). The majority of these events were mild/moderate in severity, responded to symptomatic treatment and/or were transient and resolved with time.

Serious, including sometimes fatal, adverse events (“SAEs”) have been reported in clinical studies with sotigalimab. The majority of these SAEs were considered unrelated to sotigalimab by the investigators. Some SAEs were considered at least possibly related to sotigalimab as well as possibly to other therapies it was combined with.

These possibly related events have included infusion-related reactions, CRS, elevated liver enzymes, bilirubin, fever, and colitis. Less frequent related SAEs reported in one patient each have included kidney injury, hepatic failure, bleeding, immune-mediated encephalitis, myositis, optic neuritis. Many of these SAEs were also considered possibly related to the chemotherapy, radiation or anti-PD(L)1 agent that were used in combination or were assessed as not related to sotigalimab after a safety review by the trial sponsor.

Subjects experienced numerous other SAEs that have been determined to be caused by their health condition or the side effects from other components of the treatment regimens, and not or unlikely related to sotigalimab. Given the high mortality rates of the cancers for which we are initially pursuing development, in particular melanoma, esophageal and gastroesophageal junction (“GEJ”) cancers, sarcoma, and ovarian cancer, and the pretreated nature of many patients in our completed, ongoing and planned clinical trials of sotigalimab, a number of these subjects have died as a result of their cancer or from direct side effects of surgery and other treatment regimens for their cancer. For example, in our clinical trial for esophageal and GEJ cancers, sotigalimab is combined with standard of care neoadjuvant chemotherapy, radiation and surgery. These standard of care treatments alone are associated with significant toxicities including fatal outcomes, and in this study, complications of surgery have resulted in the death of a patient.

We expect that subjects in our ongoing and planned clinical trials for our product candidates may in the future suffer adverse effects (“AEs”), SAEs or other side effects, including those not observed in our preclinical studies or previous clinical trials. Results of these trials could reveal a high and unacceptable severity and prevalence of side effects or unexpected characteristics. Undesirable side effects caused by our product candidates could result in the delay, suspension, or termination of clinical trials by us or the FDA, EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authority for a number of reasons. Additionally, a number of the subjects in these clinical trials are expected to die during a trial due to the cancers they suffer and any of the treatment regimens they may have previously experienced, which could impact the development of our product candidates. If we elect or are required to delay, suspend, or terminate any clinical trial, the commercial prospects of our product candidates will be harmed and our ability to generate product revenue from this product candidate will be delayed or eliminated. SAEs observed in clinical trials could hinder or prevent market acceptance of our drug candidates. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, prospects, financial condition, and results of operations significantly.

Even in circumstances in which we do not believe that an AE is related to our product candidates, the investigation into the circumstances of such AE may be time-consuming or inconclusive. In particular, patients may face serious medical issues associated with the underlying cancer indications that our product candidates target, as well as AEs from toxicities and other complications related to other study drugs administered alongside or in combination with our product candidates in clinical trials. For example, some of our clinical trials involve combination therapies of our product candidate with other cancer therapies, such as standard-of-care chemotherapy, chemoradiation or anti-PD-(L)1 agents. In these trials, it is difficult to ascertain whether treatment-related AEs are attributable to our product candidates or to the other agents, and the combination of therapies may have a complicating multiplier effect on such AEs that cannot be determined. As a result, while not directly associated with our product candidates, there are attendant risks with the space in which our product candidates operate, and any related investigations may interrupt our development and commercialization efforts, delay our regulatory approval process or impact and limit the type of regulatory approvals our product candidates receive or maintain.

If further SAEs or other side effects are observed in any of our current or future clinical trials, we may have difficulty recruiting patients to the clinical trials, patients may discontinue treatment or withdraw from our trials or we may be required to abandon the trials or our development efforts of that product candidate altogether. We, the FDA, the EMA, other applicable regulatory authorities or an Institutional Review Board (“IRB”)/Ethics Committee may suspend clinical trials of a product candidate at any time for various reasons, including a belief that subjects in such trials are being exposed to unacceptable health risks or adverse side effects. Some potential therapeutics developed in the biotechnology industry that initially showed therapeutic promise in early-stage studies have later been found to cause side effects that prevented their further development. Even if the side effects do not preclude a drug from obtaining or maintaining marketing approval, undesirable side effects may inhibit market acceptance of the approved product due to its tolerability versus other therapies. Any of these developments could materially harm our business, financial condition, and prospects.

Further, if any of our product candidates obtains marketing approval, toxicities associated with our product candidates may also develop after such approval and lead to a requirement to conduct additional clinical safety trials, additional warnings being added to the labeling, significant restrictions on the use of the product, or the withdrawal of the product from the market. We cannot predict whether our product candidates will cause toxicities in humans that would preclude or lead to the revocation of regulatory approval based on preclinical studies or early-stage clinical testing.

***If we experience delays or difficulties in the enrollment of patients in clinical trials, our receipt of necessary marketing approvals could be delayed or prevented.***

We may not initiate, continue or complete clinical trials for our product candidates if we are unable to locate and enroll a sufficient number of eligible patients to participate in these trials as required by the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities.

Patient enrollment is a significant factor in the timing of clinical trials, and our ability to enroll eligible patients may be limited or may result in slower enrollment than we anticipate. Patient enrollment may also be affected by other factors, including:

- size and nature of the patient population;
- severity of the disease under investigation;
- availability and efficacy of approved drugs for the disease under investigation;
- patient eligibility criteria for the trial in question;
- efforts to facilitate timely enrollment in clinical trials;
- patient referral practices of physicians;
- clinicians' and patients' awareness of, and perceptions as to the potential advantages and risks of, our product candidates in relation to other available therapies, including any new drugs that may be approved for the indications we are investigating;
- the ability to monitor patients adequately during and after treatment;
- competing ongoing clinical trials for the same indications as our product candidates;
- proximity and availability of clinical trial sites for prospective patients;
- whether we become subject to a partial or full clinical hold on any of our clinical trials; and
- continued enrollment of prospective patients by clinical trial sites, including delays due to pandemics, wars etc. that can impact patient willingness to participate and travel for investigative therapy and reductions in clinical trial site staff and services.

Our inability to enroll a sufficient number of patients for our clinical trials would result in significant delays or may require us to abandon one or more of our clinical trials altogether. Enrollment delays in our clinical trials may result in increased development costs for our product candidates and jeopardize our ability to obtain marketing approval for the sale of our product candidates.

***The clinical trials of our current and any future product candidates may not demonstrate safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of regulatory authorities or otherwise be timely conducted or produce positive results.***

Before obtaining marketing approval from regulatory authorities for the sale of our product candidates, we must complete preclinical development and then conduct extensive clinical trials to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of our product candidates. Clinical testing is expensive, difficult to design and implement, can take many years to complete, and its ultimate outcome is uncertain. A failure of one or more clinical trials can occur at any stage of the process. The outcome of preclinical studies and early-stage clinical trials may not be predictive of the success of later clinical trials. Moreover, preclinical and clinical data are often susceptible to varying interpretations and analyses, and many companies that have believed their product candidates performed satisfactorily in preclinical studies and clinical trials have nonetheless failed to obtain marketing approval of their drugs. In addition, in our clinical trials of sotigalimab that are in combination with other available therapies, the results may be uncertain as to the efficacy of the sotigalimab combination when compared to the efficacy of other therapies that are being applied in the trial.

We do not know whether our future clinical trials will begin on time or enroll patients on time, or whether our ongoing and/or future clinical trials will be completed on schedule or at all. Clinical trials can be delayed for a variety of reasons, including delays related to:

- obtaining regulatory approval to commence a trial;
- delays in reaching, or the inability to reach, agreement on acceptable terms with prospective contract research organizations (“CROs”), clinical trial sites, laboratory service providers, companion diagnostic development partners, contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, and other service providers we may engage to support the conduct of our clinical trials;
- obtaining IRB approval at each clinical trial site;
- recruiting a sufficient number of suitable patients to participate in a trial;
- patients failing to comply with trial protocol or dropping out of a trial, rendering them not evaluable for study endpoints;
- clinical trial sites deviating from trial protocol or dropping out of a trial;
- the availability of any applicable combination therapies;
- developments in the safety and efficacy of any applicable combination therapies;
- the need to add new clinical trial sites; or
- delays in the testing, validation and manufacturing of product candidates and the delivery of these product candidates to clinical trial sites.
- We may experience numerous unforeseen events during, or as a result of, clinical trials that could delay or prevent receipt of marketing approval or our ability to commercialize our product candidates, including:
- receipt of feedback from regulatory authorities that requires us to modify the design of our clinical trials;
- negative or inconclusive clinical trial results that may require us to conduct additional clinical trials or abandon certain drug development programs;
- regulators or IRBs may not authorize us, our collaborators, or our investigators to commence a clinical trial or to conduct a clinical trial at a prospective site;
- the number of patients required for clinical trials being larger than anticipated, enrollment in these clinical trials being slower than anticipated, or participants dropping out of these clinical trials at a higher rate than anticipated;
- third-party contractors failing to comply with regulatory requirements or meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner, or at all;
- the suspension or termination of our clinical trials for various reasons, including non-compliance with regulatory requirements, a finding that our product candidates have undesirable side effects, safety or efficacy concerns, or any particular combination therapy or other unexpected characteristics or risks;
- the cost of clinical trials of our product candidates being greater than anticipated;
- for clinical trials testing combination treatment of our product candidates with third-party drug products, delays in procuring such third-party drug products and the delivery of such third-party drug products to clinical trial sites, or the inability to procure such third-party drug products at all; and
- regulators revising the requirements for approving our product candidates, including as a result of newly approved agents changing the standard of care of an indication.



Any unforeseen events may cause us to be required to conduct additional clinical trials or other testing of our product candidates beyond those that we currently contemplate, or to be unable to successfully complete clinical trials of our product candidates or other testing. Clinical trial or test results may also not be positive or may be only modestly positive or may have safety concerns. For example, in the APX005M-002 Trial, we enrolled 95 patients with non-small cell lung cancer (“NSCLC”) who were either immunotherapy naïve or who had progressed while on anti-PD(L)1 therapy and treated those patients with sotigalimab in combination with nivolumab. Although we observed a modest number of objective responses in immunotherapy naïve patients and stable disease in patients who had previously progressed on or were refractory to prior anti-PD-(L)1 therapy, the data did not support advancing the development of sotigalimab in these lines of therapy in patients with NSCLC. Any of the foregoing events may cause us to incur unplanned costs, be delayed in obtaining marketing approval, if ever, receive more limited or restrictive marketing approval, be subject to additional post-marketing testing requirements, or have the drug removed from the market after obtaining marketing approval.

***The outcome of preclinical testing and early clinical trials that we obtain and that we publish may not be predictive of the success of later clinical trials, and the results of our clinical trials may not satisfy the requirements of the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities.***

We currently have no products approved for sale and we cannot guarantee that we will ever have marketable drugs. Clinical failure can occur at any stage of clinical development. Clinical trials may produce negative or inconclusive results, and we or any future collaborators may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical trials or preclinical studies. We will be required to demonstrate with substantial evidence through well-controlled clinical trials that our product candidates are safe and effective for use in a diverse population before we can seek marketing approvals for their commercial sale. Success in preclinical studies and early-stage clinical trials does not mean that future larger registration clinical trials will be successful. This is because product candidates in later-stage clinical trials may fail to demonstrate sufficient safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of the FDA, EMA, and other regulatory authorities despite having progressed through preclinical studies and early-stage clinical trials. In particular, no compound with the mechanism of action of sotigalimab has been commercialized, and the outcome of preclinical studies and early-stage clinical trials may not be predictive of the success of later-stage clinical trials. We do not know whether any clinical trials we may conduct will demonstrate consistent or adequate efficacy and safety results sufficient to obtain marketing approval to market our product candidates.

***Summary or preliminary data from our clinical trials that we announce or publish may change as new or revised patient data becomes available, and is subject to source verification procedures that could result in material changes in the final data.***

As more patient data becomes available, we may publicly disclose new or revised preliminary data from our clinical trials. These preliminary updates are based on analyses of then-available data, and the results and related findings and conclusions are subject to change following a more comprehensive review of the data related to the particular study or trial. We also make assumptions, estimations, calculations and conclusions as part of our analyses of data, and we may not have received or had the opportunity to fully and carefully evaluate all data. As a result, the summary or preliminary results that we report may differ from future results of the same studies, or different conclusions or considerations may qualify such results, once additional data have been received and fully evaluated. Summary or preliminary data also remain subject to source verification procedures that may result in the final data being materially different from the summary or preliminary data we previously published. As a result, summary or preliminary data should be viewed with caution until the final data are available. In addition, we may report interim analyses of only certain endpoints rather than all endpoints. Preliminary data from clinical trials that we conduct may not be indicative of the final results of the trials and are subject to the risk that one or more of the clinical outcomes may materially change as patient enrollment continues and more patient data become available. Adverse changes between preliminary data and final data could significantly harm our business and prospects. Further, additional disclosure of preliminary data by us or by our competitors in the future could result in volatility in the price of our common stock.

Further, others, including regulatory agencies, may not accept or agree with our assumptions, estimates, calculations, conclusions or analyses or may interpret or weigh the importance of data differently, which could impact the value of the particular program, the approvability or commercialization of the particular product candidate, and our company in general. In addition, the information we choose to publicly disclose regarding a particular study or clinical trial is typically selected from a more extensive amount of available information. Interested parties may not agree with what we determine is the material or otherwise appropriate information to include in our disclosure, and any information we determine not to disclose may ultimately be deemed significant with respect to future decisions, conclusions, views, activities, or otherwise regarding a particular product candidate or our business. If the preliminary or topline data that we report differ from late, final or actual results, or if others, including regulatory authorities, disagree with the conclusions reached, our ability to obtain approval for, and commercialize, our product candidates may be harmed, which could harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

In some instances, there can be significant variability in safety and efficacy results between different clinical trials of the same product candidate due to numerous factors, including changes in trial protocols, differences in size and type of the patient populations, differences in and adherence to the dosing regimen and other trial protocols, use in combination with other therapies, and the rate of discontinuations by clinical trial participants. In addition, we may use patient-reported outcome assessments in some of our clinical trials, which involve patients' subjective assessments of efficacy of the treatments they receive in the trial. Such assessments can vary widely from day to day for a particular patient, and from patient to patient and site to site within a clinical trial. This subjectivity can increase the uncertainty of, and adversely impact, our clinical trial outcomes.

***Our product candidates may not achieve adequate market acceptance among physicians, patients, healthcare payors, and others in the medical community necessary for commercial success.***

Even if our product candidates receive regulatory approval, they may not gain adequate market acceptance among physicians, patients, healthcare payors, and others in the medical community. For example, current standard-of-care cancer treatments, such as existing chemotherapy and radiation therapy, are well established in the medical community, and doctors may continue to rely on these treatments. The degree of market acceptance of any of our approved product candidates, if approved for commercial sale, will depend on a number of factors, including:

- the efficacy and safety profile as demonstrated in clinical trials;
- the timing of market introduction of the product candidate as well as competitive products;
- the approval of other new therapies for the same indications;
- the clinical indications for which the product candidate is approved;
- restrictions on the use of our products, if approved, such as boxed warnings, contraindications in labeling, or restrictions on use of our products together with other medications, or a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy ("REMS"), if any, which may not be required of alternative treatments and competitor products;
- the potential and perceived advantages of product candidates over alternative treatments or in combination therapies;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments;
- the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement and pricing by third parties and government authorities;
- relative convenience and ease of administration;
- the effectiveness of sales and marketing efforts;
- the willingness of the target population to try new therapies and of physicians to prescribe these therapies; and
- unfavorable publicity relating to the product candidate.

If any product candidate is approved but does not achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians, hospitals, healthcare payors, and patients, we may generate less revenue from that product candidate than anticipated, which could harm our financial results.

***The sizes of the patient populations suffering from some of the diseases we are targeting may be based on estimates that are inaccurate, may be small, or may be smaller than estimated.***

We rely on estimates to project the incidence and prevalence of diseases we are targeting and the subset of patients with these diseases who have the potential to benefit from treatment with sotigalimab and our other product candidates. We derive these estimates from a variety of sources, including United States and global cancer databases, scientific literature, surveys of clinics, physician interviews, patient foundations, and market research, and they may prove to be incorrect. Further, new studies may change the estimated incidence or prevalence of these diseases. The number of patients may turn out to be lower than expected. Additionally, the potentially addressable patient population for sotigalimab and any other future product candidates may be more limited than we originally estimated or may not be amenable to treatment with sotigalimab and any other product candidates, if and when approved. For example, in March 2022, the FDA approved nivolumab and relatlimab-rmbw (Opdivo<sup>TM</sup>) for use in patients with unresectable or

metastatic melanoma, which may limit the number of patients with unresectable or metastatic melanoma that have progressive disease during treatment with anti-PD-(L)1 therapy, which would be the target population for a potential registration-enabling study of sotigalimab in combination with a PD-(L)1 inhibitor that we are considering. Even if we obtain significant market share for sotigalimab and any other product candidates, small potential target populations for certain indications means we may never achieve profitability without obtaining market approval for additional indications.

***Many of our additional internal programs, including APX601, are at earlier stages of development than sotigalimab and may fail in development or suffer delays, including if we are unable to raise adequate additional funding, that adversely affect their commercial viability.***

Other than sotigalimab, all of our internal programs are in preclinical development or at the research stage and may fail in development or suffer delays that adversely affect their commercial viability. These programs may fail to yield product candidates. A product candidate can unexpectedly fail at any stage of preclinical and clinical development. The historical failure rate for product candidates is high due to risks relating to safety, efficacy, clinical execution, changing standards of medical care, and other unpredictable variables. The results from preclinical testing or early clinical trials of a product candidate may not be predictive of the results that will be obtained in later-stage clinical trials of the product candidate. The success of any product candidates we may develop will depend on many factors, including the following:

- generating sufficient data to support the initiation or continuation of clinical trials;
- obtaining regulatory permission to initiate clinical trials;
- contracting with the necessary parties to conduct clinical trials;
- the successful enrollment of patients in, and the completion of, clinical trials;
- the timely manufacture of sufficient quantities of the product candidate, and any combination therapy, for use in clinical trials; and
- acceptable adverse profile in the clinical trials.

We will need additional funding to continue to advance the development of our other internal programs, including APX601. If we are unable to secure adequate funding to continue such development, we expect that we will be required to delay or stop the development of such programs.

Even if we successfully advance any other product candidates into clinical development, their success will be subject to all of the clinical, regulatory and commercial risks described elsewhere in this “*Risk Factors*” section. Accordingly, we cannot assure you that we will ever develop, obtain regulatory approval of, commercialize, or generate significant revenue from any product candidate.

***Any product candidates we develop may become subject to unfavorable third-party reimbursement practices and pricing regulations.***

The availability and extent of coverage and adequate reimbursement by governmental and private payors is essential for most patients to afford the expense of antibody therapeutics like sotigalimab and our other product candidates. Sales of any of our product candidates that receive marketing approval will depend substantially, both in the United States and internationally, on the extent to which the costs of our product candidates will be paid by health maintenance, managed care, pharmacy benefit, and similar healthcare management organizations or reimbursed by government health administration authorities, private health coverage insurers, and other third-party payors. If reimbursement is not available, or is available only to limited levels, we may not successfully commercialize our product candidates. Even if coverage is provided, the approved reimbursement amount may not be high enough to allow us to establish or maintain pricing sufficient to realize an adequate return on our investment. Coverage and reimbursement may impact the demand for, or the price of, any product candidate for which we obtain marketing approval. If coverage and reimbursement are not available or reimbursement is available only to limited levels, we may not successfully commercialize any product candidate for which we obtain marketing approval.

There is significant uncertainty related to insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly approved products. In the United States, principal decisions about reimbursement for new products are typically made by Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (“CMS”), an agency within the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (“HHS”). CMS decides whether and to what extent a new product will be covered and reimbursed under Medicare, and private payors often follow CMS’s decisions regarding coverage

and reimbursement to a substantial degree. However, one payor's determination to provide coverage for a drug product does not assure that other payors will also provide coverage for the drug product. As a result, the coverage determination process is often time-consuming and costly. This process will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our products to each payor separately, with no assurance that coverage and adequate reimbursement will be applied consistently or obtained in the first instance.

Increasingly, third-party payors require that drug companies provide them with predetermined discounts from list prices and challenge the prices charged for medical products. Further, such payors increasingly challenge the price, examine the medical necessity and review the cost effectiveness of medical drug products. There may be especially significant delays in obtaining coverage and reimbursement for newly approved drugs. In August 2022, Congress passed the Inflation Reduction Act of 2022, which includes prescription drug provisions that have significant implications for the pharmaceutical industry and Medicare beneficiaries, including allowing the federal government to negotiate a maximum fair price for certain high-priced single source Medicare drugs, imposing penalties and excise tax for manufacturers that fail to comply with the drug price negotiation requirements, requiring inflation rebates for all Medicare Part B and Part D drugs, with limited exceptions, if their drug prices increase faster than inflation, and redesigning Medicare Part D to reduce out-of-pocket prescription drug costs for beneficiaries, among other changes.

Third-party payors may limit coverage to specific drug products on an approved list, known as a formulary, which might not include all FDA-approved drugs for a particular indication. We may need to conduct expensive studies to demonstrate the medical necessity and cost-effectiveness of our products. Nonetheless, our product candidates may not be considered medically necessary or cost effective. We cannot be sure that coverage and reimbursement will be available for any product that we commercialize and, if reimbursement is available, what the level of reimbursement will be.

Outside the United States, international operations are generally subject to extensive governmental price controls and other market regulations, and we believe the increasing emphasis on cost-containment initiatives in Europe, Canada and other countries has and will continue to put pressure on the pricing and usage of therapeutics such as our product candidates. In many countries, particularly the countries of the European Union, medical product prices are subject to varying price control mechanisms as part of national health systems. In these countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after a product receives marketing approval. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidate to other available therapies. In general, product prices under such systems are substantially lower than in the United States. Other countries allow companies to fix their own prices for products, but monitor and control company profits.

Additional foreign price controls or other changes in pricing regulation could restrict the amount that we are able to charge for our product candidates. Accordingly, in markets outside the United States, the reimbursement for our products may be reduced compared with the United States and may be insufficient to generate commercially reasonable revenue and profits.

If we are unable to establish or sustain coverage and adequate reimbursement for any future product candidates from third-party payors, the adoption of those products and sales revenue will be adversely affected, which, in turn, could adversely affect the ability to market or sell those product candidates. Coverage policies and third-party reimbursement rates may change at any time. Even if we attain favorable coverage and reimbursement status for one or more products for which we receive regulatory approval, less favorable coverage policies and reimbursement rates may be implemented in the future.

***If our competitors develop and market products that are more effective, safer, or less expensive than our product candidates, our commercial opportunities will be negatively impacted.***

The biotechnology industry is highly competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological change. Moreover, the oncology field is characterized by strong and increasing competition, with a strong emphasis on intellectual property. Products we may develop in the future for the treatment of cancer and any other diseases are likely to face competition from other drugs and therapies, including those of which we may not currently be aware. In addition, our products may need to compete with off-label drugs used by physicians to treat the indications for which we seek approval. This may make it difficult for us to replace existing therapies with our products.

Major multinational pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, emerging and start-up companies, universities, and other research institutions, could focus their future efforts on developing competing therapies and treatments for any of the indications we are currently targeting or may target in the future. For example, each of Hoffmann-La Roche AG, Alligator Bioscience AB, Celldex Therapeutics, Inc., Seagen Inc., Lyvgen Biopharma, Eucure Biopharma, a subsidiary of Biocytogen, and AbbVie Inc. are developing CD40-based antibody product candidates for solid tumor oncology indications that are in clinical trials, typically in combination therapies, and other companies and institutions have other CD40-based product candidates in development..

Many of these current and potential competitors have significantly greater financial, manufacturing, marketing, drug development, technical and human resources, and commercial expertise than we do. Large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, in particular, have extensive experience in clinical testing, obtaining regulatory approvals, recruiting patients, and manufacturing biotechnology products. These companies also have significantly greater research, development, and marketing capabilities than we do and may also have products that have been approved or are in late stages of development, and collaborative arrangements in our target markets with leading companies and research institutions. Established pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies may also invest heavily to accelerate discovery and development of novel compounds or to in-license novel compounds that could make the product candidates that we develop obsolete. As a result of any of these factors, our competitors may succeed in obtaining approval from the FDA, EMA, or foreign regulatory authorities or discovering, developing, and commercializing products in our field before or more successfully than we do.

Smaller and other early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These companies compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel, establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for planned clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. In addition, the biotechnology industry is characterized by rapid technological change. If we fail to stay at the forefront of technological change, we may be unable to compete effectively. Technological advances or products developed by our competitors may render our technologies or product candidates obsolete, less competitive or not economical.

***We have limited resources and are currently focusing our efforts on developing sotigalimab and APX601. As a result, we may fail to capitalize on other product candidates or indications that may ultimately have proven to be more profitable.***

We are currently focusing our efforts on developing sotigalimab for a variety of indications, including melanoma, esophageal and GEJ cancers, sarcoma and rectal cancer and advancing the development of APX601 for use in solid tumors. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities for other indications or with other product candidates that may have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable product candidates or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future research and development activities for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable drugs. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target markets for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration, licensing, or other strategic arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights to such product candidate.

***We may not succeed in our efforts to use our technology platform to expand our pipeline of product candidates and develop marketable products.***

Because we have limited financial and managerial resources, we focus our pipeline research efforts on using our APXiMAB platform to identify product candidates to molecular targets of interest. Our business depends on our successful development and commercialization of sotigalimab, APX601, and internal product candidates that may emerge from our preclinical research and development activities. Even if we continue to successfully expand our pipeline, development of the potential product candidates that we identify will require substantial investment in clinical development, management of preclinical, clinical, and manufacturing activities, regulatory approval in multiple jurisdictions, obtaining manufacturing supply capability, building a commercial organization, and significant marketing efforts before we generate any revenue from product sales. Furthermore, such product candidates may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of their harmful side effects, limited efficacy, or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to be products that will receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance. If we cannot validate our technology platform by successfully developing and commercializing product candidates based upon our technological approach, we may not obtain product or partnership revenue in future periods, which would adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition, and results of operations.

***We are developing some of our product candidates for use in combination with standard-of-care as well as emerging or experimental cancer therapies, which exposes us to several risks beyond our control.***

We are developing some of our product candidates, including sotigalimab, for use in combination with current standard of care or other emerging or experimental cancer therapies. This exposes us to supply risk to the extent there is not an adequate supply of these therapies for use in combination with our product candidates, either in clinical trials or after any approval, as well as pricing risk if these combination therapies are expensive and the addition of our product candidates would be too costly to support reimbursement or payor coverage. In particular, providers of some of these emerging or experimental therapies have been contributing their therapies to use in combination trials at generally no or limited cost to us. If this were to change, our trial costs could increase substantially. Also, although combinations with an experimental agent that has not been approved may prove to be clinically beneficial, the experimental agent will still need to meet regulatory approval requirements for the combined therapy to become commercially

available. In addition, if the standard of care were to evolve or change, the clinical utility of our product candidates could be diminished or eliminated. If any of these were to occur, our business could be materially harmed.

***We may use companion diagnostics in the future in our development programs, and if such companion diagnostics for our product candidates are not successfully, and in a timely manner, validated, developed, or approved, we may not achieve marketing approval or realize the full commercial potential of our product candidates.***

We may use companion diagnostics in our future product candidate development programs. If such companion diagnostics are developed in conjunction with clinical programs, the FDA, EMA, or comparable regulatory authority may require regulatory approval of a companion diagnostic as a condition to approval of the product candidate. For example, if we use a diagnostic to test which patients are most likely to benefit from our product candidate for the treatment of a particular indication as a criterion for enrollment, then we will likely be required to obtain FDA approval or clearance of the companion diagnostic, concurrent with approval of our product candidate. We may also be required to demonstrate to the FDA the predictive utility of a companion diagnostic, i.e. that the diagnostic selects for patients in whom the therapy will be effective or more effective compared to patients not selected for by the diagnostic. We do not have experience or capabilities in developing or commercializing diagnostics and plan to rely in large part on third parties to perform these functions. We do not currently have any agreement in place with any third party to develop or commercialize companion diagnostics for any of our product candidates. Companion diagnostics are subject to regulation by the FDA, the EMA, and other foreign regulatory authorities as medical devices and require separate regulatory approval or clearance prior to commercialization.

- If we or our partners, or any third party, are unable to successfully develop companion diagnostics in the future in our product candidates, or experience delays in doing so:
- the development of our product candidates may be adversely affected if we are unable to appropriately select patients for enrollment in our planned clinical trials;
- our product candidates may not receive marketing approval if their safe and effective use depends on a companion diagnostic; and
- we may not realize the full commercial potential of any product candidates that receive marketing approval if, among other reasons, we are unable to appropriately identify patients targeted by our product candidates.

In addition, any future product candidates developed in conjunction with companion diagnostics may be perceived negatively compared to alternative treatments that do not require the use of companion diagnostics, either due to the additional cost of the companion diagnostic, the requirement of samples for testing, or the need to complete additional procedures to identify genetic markers prior to administering our product candidates. If any of these events were to occur, it would significantly harm our business, results of operations and prospects.

***Our business entails a significant risk of product liability, and if we are unable to obtain sufficient insurance coverage, the costs of product liability could have an adverse effect on our business and financial condition.***

Our business exposes us to significant product liability risks inherent in the development, testing, manufacturing, and marketing of therapeutic treatments. Product liability claims could delay or prevent completion of our development programs. If we succeed in marketing products, such claims could result in an FDA, EMA, or other regulatory investigation of the safety and effectiveness of our products, our manufacturing processes and facilities, or our marketing programs. Such regulatory investigation could potentially lead to a recall of our products or more serious enforcement action, limitations on the approved indications for which they may be used, or suspension or withdrawal of approvals. Regardless of the merits or eventual outcome, liability claims may also result in decreased demand for our products, injury to our reputation, costs to defend the related litigation, a diversion of management's time and our resources, and substantial monetary awards to trial participants or patients. We would expect to obtain product liability insurance prior to marketing any of our product candidates. Any insurance Apexigen has now or that we may obtain may not provide sufficient coverage against potential liabilities. Furthermore, clinical trial and product liability insurance is becoming increasingly expensive. As a result, we may be unable to obtain sufficient insurance at a reasonable cost to protect us against losses caused by product liability claims that could have an adverse effect on our business and financial condition.

#### **Risks Related to Regulatory Approval and Other Legal Compliance Matters for Our Product Candidates**

***The regulatory approval processes of the FDA, EMA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities are lengthy, time-consuming and inherently unpredictable. If we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, we will be unable to generate product revenue and our business will be substantially harmed.***

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA, EMA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities is unpredictable, typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical trials, and depends upon numerous factors, including the type, complexity, and novelty of the product candidates involved. In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions, which may cause delays in the approval or the decision not to approve an application. Regulatory authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process and may refuse to accept any application or may decide that our data are insufficient for approval and require additional preclinical, clinical, or other studies. For example, FDA's Oncology Center of Excellence initiated Project Optimus to reform the dose optimization and dose selection paradigm in oncology drug development and Project FrontRunner to help develop and implement strategies to support approvals in early clinical setting, among other goals. How the FDA plans to implement these goals and their impact on specific clinical programs and the industry are unclear. We have not submitted for, or obtained regulatory approval for, any product candidate, and it is possible that none of our existing product candidates or any product candidates we may seek to develop in the future will ever obtain regulatory approval.

Applications for our product candidates could fail to receive regulatory approval in an initial or subsequent indication for many reasons, including the following:

- the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design, implementation, or results of our clinical trials;
- the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may determine that our product candidates are not safe and effective, only moderately effective, or have undesirable or unintended side effects, toxicities, or other characteristics that preclude our obtaining marketing approval or prevent or limit commercial use;
- the population studied in the clinical program may not be sufficiently broad or representative to assure safety and efficacy in the full population for which we seek approval, including for example due to biologic and genetic differences that might occur in subjects in certain populations such as defined by race or other factors;
- we may be unable to demonstrate to the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that a product candidate's risk-benefit ratio when compared to the standard of care is acceptable;
- the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data from preclinical studies or clinical trials;
- the data collected from clinical trials of our product candidates may not be sufficient to support the submission of a Biologics License Application ("BLA"), New Drug Application ("NDA"), or other submission or to obtain regulatory approval in the United States or elsewhere;

- we may be unable to demonstrate to the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that a product candidate's risk-benefit ratio for a proposed indication is acceptable;
- the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may fail to approve the manufacturing processes, test procedures and specifications, or facilities of third-party manufacturers with which we contract for clinical and commercial supplies; and
- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

Further, development of our product candidates and/or regulatory approval may be delayed for reasons beyond our control. For example, a U.S. federal government shutdown or budget sequestration, such as ones that occurred during 2018 and 2019, or other FDA priorities, such as responding to COVID-19, may result in significant reductions to, or demands on, the FDA's budget, employees, and operations, which may lead to slower response times and longer review periods, potentially affecting our ability to progress development of our product candidates or obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates.

This lengthy approval process, as well as the unpredictability of the results of clinical trials, may result in our failing to obtain regulatory approval to market any of our product candidates, which would significantly harm our business, results of operations, and prospects.

***Our product candidates may cause undesirable side effects or have other properties that could prevent their regulatory approval or result in significant negative consequences.***

Adverse events or other undesirable side effects caused by our product candidates could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay, or halt clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA, EMA, or other comparable foreign regulatory authorities. Drug-related side effects could affect patient recruitment, the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial, and/or result in potential product liability claims. Regardless of merit or eventual outcome, product liability claims may result in impairment of our business reputation, withdrawal of clinical trial participants, costs due to related litigation, distraction of management's attention from our primary business, initiation of investigations by regulators, substantial monetary awards to patients or other claimants, the inability to commercialize our product candidates, and decreased demand for our product candidates, if approved for commercial sale.

Additionally, if one or more of our product candidates receives marketing approval, and we or others later identify undesirable side effects or adverse events caused by such products, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw approvals of such product and cause us to recall our products;
- regulatory authorities may require additional warnings on the label or impose a more restrictive, narrower indication for use of the agent;
- we may be required to change the way the product is administered or conduct additional clinical trials or post-approval studies;
- we may be required to create a REMS plan, which could include a medication guide outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients, a communication plan for healthcare providers, and/or other elements, such as boxed warning on the packaging, to assure safe use;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the particular product candidate, if approved, and could significantly harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, and growth prospects.



***For any current and future clinical trials for our product candidates outside the United States, the FDA, EMA, and applicable foreign regulatory authorities may not accept data from such trials.***

We conduct clinical trials outside the United States, including in Europe, and we may choose to conduct future clinical trials outside the United States. The acceptance of study data from clinical trials conducted outside the United States or another jurisdiction by the FDA, EMA, or applicable foreign regulatory authority may be subject to certain conditions. In cases where data from foreign clinical trials are intended to serve as the basis for marketing approval in the United States, the FDA will generally not approve the application on the basis of foreign data alone unless the data are applicable to the United States population and United States medical practice, and the trials were performed by clinical investigators of recognized competence and pursuant to Good Clinical Practice (“GCP”) regulations. Additionally, the FDA’s clinical trial requirements, including sufficient size of patient populations and statistical powering, must be met. Many foreign regulatory bodies have comparable approval requirements, including appropriate examination of the product in the country-specific population. In addition, such foreign trials would be subject to the applicable local laws of the foreign jurisdictions where the trials are conducted. There can be no assurance that the FDA, EMA, or any applicable foreign regulatory authority will accept data from trials conducted outside of the United States or the applicable jurisdiction. If the FDA, EMA, or any applicable foreign regulatory authority does not accept such data, it may result in the need for additional trials, which would be costly and time-consuming and delay aspects of our business plan, and may result in our product candidates not receiving approval or clearance for commercialization in the applicable jurisdiction.

***Obtaining and maintaining regulatory approval of our product candidates in one jurisdiction does not mean that we will succeed in obtaining regulatory approval of our product candidates in other jurisdictions.***

Obtaining and maintaining regulatory approval of our product candidates in one jurisdiction does not guarantee that we will obtain or maintain regulatory approval in any other jurisdiction, but a failure or delay in obtaining regulatory approval in one jurisdiction may have a negative effect on the regulatory approval process in others. For example, even if the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authority grants marketing approval of a product candidate, comparable regulatory authorities in foreign jurisdictions must also approve the manufacturing, marketing, and promotion of the product candidate in those countries. Approval procedures vary among jurisdictions and can involve requirements and administrative review periods different from those in the United States, including additional preclinical studies or clinical trials, as clinical trials conducted in one jurisdiction may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions. In many jurisdictions outside the United States, a product candidate must be approved for reimbursement before it can be approved for sale in that jurisdiction. In some cases, the price that we intend to charge for our products is also subject to approval. Obtaining foreign regulatory approvals and compliance with foreign regulatory requirements could result in significant delays, difficulties, and costs for us and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in certain countries. If we or any partner we work with fails to comply with the regulatory requirements in international markets or fails to receive applicable marketing approvals, our target market will be reduced, and our ability to realize the full market potential of our product candidates will be harmed.

***Even if we apply for and obtain accelerated approval or Breakthrough Therapy, Fast Track or other designation intended to expedite, facilitate or reduce the cost of pursuing development or regulatory review or approval with the FDA or other regulatory authorities for any of our product candidates, there is no guarantee that such designation would lead to faster development, regulatory review, or approval, nor would it increase the likelihood that any such product candidate will receive marketing approval.***

If a product candidate is intended for the treatment of a serious condition and nonclinical or clinical data demonstrate the potential to address unmet medical need for such condition or a substantial improvement over available therapy for such condition, a product candidate sponsor may apply for FDA Fast Track or Breakthrough Therapy designation, and there may be other priority designations available under various regulatory bodies. In the future, we may apply for such priority designation depending on the results of our clinical trials. Even though we may apply for and receive a Fast Track, Breakthrough Therapy or other priority designations, such priority designation does not ensure that we will receive marketing approval or that approval will be granted within any particular timeframe. We may not experience a faster development or regulatory review or approval process with the priority designation compared to conventional FDA procedures. In addition, the FDA may withdraw Fast Track or Breakthrough Therapy designation if it believes that the designation is no longer supported by data from our clinical development program. Fast Track or Breakthrough Therapy designation alone does not guarantee qualification for the FDA’s priority review procedures. Further, even if any of our products obtain Fast Track or Breakthrough Therapy designation, this may not lead to earlier regulatory approval or commercialization of our products due to the extensive and time-consuming steps necessary to obtain FDA approval and commercialize a product candidate.

***Even if we obtain regulatory approval for a product candidate, our products will remain subject to extensive regulatory scrutiny.***

If any of our product candidates are approved, they will be subject to ongoing regulatory requirements for manufacturing, labeling, packaging, storage, advertising, promotion, sampling, record-keeping, conduct of post-marketing studies, and submission of safety, efficacy, and other post-market information, including both federal and state requirements in the United States and requirements of comparable foreign regulatory authorities.

Manufacturers and manufacturers' facilities are required to comply with extensive requirements imposed by the FDA, EMA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities, including ensuring that quality control and manufacturing procedures conform to Good Manufacturing Practice ("GMP") regulations. As such, we and our contract manufacturers will be subject to continual review and inspections to assess compliance with GMP and adherence to commitments made in any BLA, NDA, or Marketing Authorization Application ("MAA"). Accordingly, we and others with whom we work must continue to expend time, money, and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production, and quality control.

Any regulatory approvals that we receive for our product candidates will be subject to limitations on the approved indicated uses for which the product may be marketed and promoted or to the conditions of approval (including potentially the requirement to implement a REMS), or contain requirements for potentially costly post-marketing testing. We will be required to report certain adverse reactions and production problems, if any, to the FDA, EMA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities. Any new legislation addressing drug safety issues could result in delays in product development or commercialization, or increased costs to assure compliance. The FDA and other agencies, including the Department of Justice, closely regulate and monitor the post-approval marketing and promotion of products to ensure that they are manufactured, marketed, and distributed only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling. We will have to comply with requirements concerning advertising and promotion for our products. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved label. As such, we may not promote our products for indications or uses for which they do not have approval. The holder of an approved BLA, NDA, or MAA must submit new or supplemental applications and obtain approval for certain changes to the approved product, product labeling, or manufacturing process. We could also be asked to conduct post-marketing clinical trials to verify the safety and efficacy of our products in general or in specific patient subsets. If original marketing approval was obtained via the accelerated approval pathway, we could be required to conduct a successful post-marketing clinical trial to confirm clinical benefit for our products. An unsuccessful post-marketing study or failure to complete such a study could result in the withdrawal of marketing approval.

If a regulatory agency discovers previously unknown problems with a product, such as adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or problems with the facility where the product is manufactured, or disagrees with the promotion, marketing, or labeling of a product, such regulatory agency may impose restrictions on that product or us, including requiring withdrawal of the product from the market. If we fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, a regulatory agency or enforcement authority may, among other things:

- issue warning letters that would result in adverse publicity;
- impose civil or criminal penalties;
- suspend or withdraw regulatory approvals;
- suspend any of our ongoing clinical trials;
- refuse to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications submitted by us;
- impose restrictions on our operations, including closing our contract manufacturers' facilities;
- seize or detain products; or
- require a product recall.

Any government investigation of alleged violations of law could require us to expend significant time and resources in response, and could generate negative publicity. Any failure to comply with ongoing regulatory requirements may significantly and adversely affect our ability to commercialize and generate revenue from our products. If regulatory sanctions are applied or if regulatory approval is withdrawn, this would significantly harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, and growth prospects.

***Healthcare legislative measures aimed at reducing healthcare costs may have a material adverse effect on our business and results of operations.***

Third-party payors, whether domestic or foreign, or governmental or commercial, are developing increasingly sophisticated methods of controlling healthcare costs. In both the United States and certain foreign jurisdictions, there have been a number of legislative and regulatory changes to the healthcare system that could impact our ability to sell our products profitably. In particular, in 2010, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (“ACA”) was enacted, which, among other things, subjected biologic products to potential competition by lower-cost biosimilars, addressed a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted, or injected, increased the minimum Medicaid rebates owed by most manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program, extended the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to utilization of prescriptions of individuals enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations, subjected manufacturers to new annual fees and taxes for certain branded prescription drugs, and provided incentives to programs that increase the federal government’s comparative effectiveness research. Complying with any new legislation or reversing changes implemented under the ACA could be time-intensive and expensive, resulting in a material adverse effect on our business.

There have been, and likely will continue to be, legislative and regulatory proposals at the foreign, federal and state levels directed at containing or lowering the cost of healthcare. We cannot predict the initiatives that may be adopted in the future. The continuing efforts of the government, insurance companies, managed care organizations and other payors of healthcare services to contain or reduce costs of healthcare and/or impose price controls may adversely affect:

- the demand for our products after obtaining any regulatory approval;
- our ability to receive or set a price that we believe is fair for our products;
- our ability to generate revenue and achieve or maintain profitability;
- the level of taxes that we are required to pay; and
- the availability of capital.

We expect that the ACA, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other healthcare funding, more rigorous coverage criteria, lower reimbursement and new payment methodologies. For example, in August 2022, Congress passed the Inflation Reduction Act of 2022, which includes prescription drug provisions that have significant implications for the pharmaceutical industry and Medicare beneficiaries, including allowing the federal government to negotiate a maximum fair price for certain high-priced single source Medicare drugs, imposing penalties and excise tax for manufacturers that fail to comply with the drug price negotiation requirements, requiring inflation rebates for all Medicare Part B and Part D drugs, with limited exceptions, if their drug prices increase faster than inflation, and redesigning Medicare Part D to reduce out-of-pocket prescription drug costs for beneficiaries, among other changes. The prescription drug provisions of the Inflation Reduction Act and other healthcare reforms that may be implemented in the future could lower the price that we receive for any approved product. Any denial in coverage or reduction in reimbursement from Medicare or other government-funded programs may result in a similar denial or reduction in payments from private payors, which may prevent us from being able to generate sufficient revenue, attain profitability or commercialize our product candidates, if approved.

***Our employees, independent contractors, consultants, commercial partners and vendors may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements.***

We are exposed to the risk of fraud, misconduct or other illegal activity by our employees, independent contractors, consultants, commercial partners and vendors. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless and negligent conduct that fails to:

- comply with the laws of the FDA, EMA and other comparable foreign regulatory authorities;
- provide true, complete and accurate information to the FDA, EMA and other comparable foreign regulatory authorities;
- comply with manufacturing standards we have established;
- comply with healthcare fraud and abuse laws in the United States and similar foreign fraudulent misconduct laws; or
- report financial information or data accurately or to disclose unauthorized activities to us.

If we obtain FDA approval of any of our product candidates and begin commercializing those products in the United States, our potential exposure under such laws will increase significantly, and our costs associated with compliance with such laws are also likely to increase. In particular, research, sales, marketing, education and other business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws designed to prevent fraud, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, educating, marketing and promotion, sales and commission, certain customer incentive programs and other business arrangements generally. Activities subject to these laws also involve the improper use of information obtained in the course of patient recruitment for clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and cause serious harm to our reputation. We plan to adopt a code of business conduct and ethics in connection with this offering, but it is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by employees and third parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to be in compliance with such laws. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant fines or other sanctions.

***If we fail to comply with healthcare laws, we could face substantial penalties and our business, operations, and financial conditions could be adversely affected.***

If we obtain FDA approval for any of our product candidates and begin commercializing those products in the United States, our operations will be subject to various federal and state fraud and abuse laws. The laws that may impact our operations include the following:

- The federal Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering, or paying any remuneration (including any kickback, bribe, or rebate), directly or indirectly, overtly or covertly, in cash or in kind, to induce, or in return for, either the referral of an individual, or the purchase, lease, order, or recommendation of any good, facility, item, or service for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under a federal healthcare program, such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs. A person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. In addition, the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act.
- Federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalty laws, including the False Claims Act, impose criminal and civil penalties, including through civil actions, against individuals or entities from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment or approval from Medicare, Medicaid or other third-party payors that are false or fraudulent, or knowingly making a false statement to improperly avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government. Similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of these statutes or specific intent to violate them in order to have committed a violation.
- The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (“HIPAA”) created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, regardless of the payor (e.g., public or private) and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing, or covering up by any trick or device a material fact or making any materially false statements in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services relating to healthcare matters.
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009 (“HITECH”) and their respective implementing regulations, impose requirements on certain covered healthcare providers, health plans, and healthcare clearinghouses as well as their respective business associates that perform services for them that involve the use, or disclosure of, individually identifiable health information, relating to the privacy, security, and transmission of individually identifiable health information without appropriate authorization.
- The federal Physician Payment Sunshine Act, created under the ACA, and its implementing regulations, require manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologicals, and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children’s Health Insurance Program to report annually to the HHS under the Open Payments Program, information related to payments or other transfers of value made to covered recipients, as defined by law, including physicians, certain non-physician providers, and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members.

- Federal consumer protection and unfair competition laws broadly regulate marketplace activities and activities that potentially harm consumers.

Analogous state and foreign laws and regulations, such as state and foreign anti-kickback, false claims, consumer protection, and unfair competition laws may apply to pharmaceutical business practices, including research, distribution, sales, and marketing arrangements, as well as submitting claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers.

- State laws require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government that otherwise restricts payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources.
- State laws also require drug manufacturers to file reports with states regarding pricing and marketing information, such as the tracking and reporting of gifts, compensations, and other remuneration, and items of value provided to healthcare professionals and entities.
- State and foreign laws also govern the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and may not have the same effect, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available, it is possible that some of our business activities could, despite our efforts to comply, be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. Efforts to ensure that our business arrangements will comply with applicable healthcare laws may involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental and enforcement authorities will conclude that our business practices may not comply with current or future statutes, regulations or case law interpreting applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws and regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, disgorgement, monetary fines, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid, and other federal healthcare programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations. In addition, the approval and commercialization of any of our product candidates outside the United States will also likely subject us to foreign equivalents of the healthcare laws mentioned above, among other foreign laws. Further, achieving and sustaining compliance with applicable federal and state privacy, security, and fraud laws may prove costly.

***If we or any clinical collaborators, CROs, contract manufacturers, or other contractors and suppliers that we engage fail to comply with environmental, health, and safety laws and regulations, we could become subject to fines or penalties or incur costs that could have a material adverse effect on our business.***

We and any clinical collaborators, CROs, contract manufacturers, or other contractors and suppliers that we engage are subject to numerous federal, state, and local environmental, health and safety laws, regulations, and permitting requirements, including:

- those governing laboratory procedures;
- the generation, handling, use, storage, treatment and disposal of hazardous and regulated materials and wastes;
- the emission and discharge of hazardous materials into the ground, air and water; and
- employee health and safety.

Our operations involve the use of hazardous and flammable materials, including chemicals and biological and radioactive materials. Our operations also produce hazardous waste. We generally contract with third parties for the disposal of these materials and wastes. We cannot eliminate the risk of contamination or injury from these materials. In the event of contamination or injury resulting from our use of hazardous materials, we could be held liable for any resulting damages, and any liability could exceed our resources. Under certain environmental laws, we could be held responsible for costs relating to any contamination at our current or past facilities and at third-party facilities. We also could incur significant costs associated with civil or criminal fines and penalties.

Compliance with applicable environmental laws and regulations may be expensive, and current or future environmental laws and regulations may impair our research, product development, and manufacturing efforts. In addition, we cannot entirely eliminate the risk of accidental injury or contamination from these materials or wastes. Although we maintain workers' compensation insurance

to cover us for costs and expenses, we may incur due to injuries to our employees resulting from the use of hazardous materials, this insurance may not provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. We do not carry specific biological or hazardous waste insurance coverage, and our property, casualty, and general liability insurance policies specifically exclude coverage for damages and fines arising from biological or hazardous waste exposure or contamination. Accordingly, in the event of contamination or injury, we could be held liable for damages or be penalized with fines in an amount exceeding our resources, and our clinical trials or regulatory approvals could be suspended, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

***Our business activities may be subject to the FCPA and similar anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws.***

Our business activities may be subject to the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (“FCPA”) and similar anti-bribery or anti-corruption laws, regulations, or rules of other countries in which we operate, including the U.K. Bribery Act. The FCPA generally prohibits offering, promising, giving, or authorizing others to give anything of value, either directly or indirectly, to a non-U.S. government official in order to influence official action, or otherwise obtain or retain business. The FCPA also requires public companies to make and keep books and records that accurately and fairly reflect the transactions of the corporation and to devise and maintain an adequate system of internal accounting controls. Our business is heavily regulated and therefore involves significant interaction with public officials, including officials of non-U.S. governments. Additionally, in many other countries, the researchers with whom we conduct clinical trials, and the healthcare providers who prescribe pharmaceuticals, are employed by their government, and the purchasers of pharmaceuticals are government entities. As a result, our dealings with these researchers, prescribers, and purchasers are subject to regulation under the FCPA. Recently the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) and Department of Justice have increased their FCPA enforcement activities with respect to biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies. There is no certainty that all of our employees, agents, contractors or collaborators, or those of our affiliates, will comply with all applicable laws and regulations, particularly given the high level of complexity of these laws. Violations of these laws and regulations could result in fines, criminal sanctions against us, our officers or our employees, the closing down of our facilities, requirements to obtain export licenses, cessation of business activities in sanctioned countries, implementation of compliance programs and prohibitions on the conduct of our business. Any such violations could include prohibitions on our ability to offer our products in one or more countries and could materially damage our reputation, our brand, our international expansion efforts, our ability to attract and retain employees, and our business, prospects, operating results and financial condition.

***Failure to comply with privacy and data protection laws, regulations, or contractual obligations could lead to government enforcement actions (which could include civil or criminal penalties), private disputes and litigation, and/or adverse publicity and could negatively affect our operating results and business.***

We receive, generate, and store significant and increasing volumes of sensitive information, such as employee, personal, patient and collaborator data. In addition, we actively seek access to medical information, including patient data, through research and development partnerships and collaborations or otherwise. We have legal and contractual obligations regarding the protection of confidentiality and appropriate use of personal data. We and our partners may be subject to federal, state, and foreign data protection laws and regulations (i.e., laws and regulations that address privacy and data security). These data protection laws and regulations continue to evolve and may result in ever-increasing public scrutiny and escalating levels of enforcement and sanctions and increased costs of compliance.

In the United States, numerous federal and state laws and regulations, including state data breach notification laws, state health information privacy laws, and federal and state consumer protection laws (e.g., Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act), that govern the collection, use, disclosure and protection of health-related and other personal information could apply to our operations or the operations of our partners, including during our clinical trials. In addition, we may obtain health information from third parties (including research institutions from which we obtain clinical trial data) that are subject to privacy and security requirements under HIPAA, as amended by HITECH, which establish privacy and security standards that limit the use and disclosure of individually identifiable health information and require the implementation of administrative, physical, and technological safeguards to protect the privacy of individually identifiable health information and ensure the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of electronic protected health information. Determining whether individually identifiable health information has been handled in compliance with applicable privacy standards and our contractual obligations can require complex factual and statistical analyses and may be subject to changing interpretation. Depending on the facts and circumstances, we could be subject to civil and criminal penalties if we knowingly obtain, use, or disclose individually identifiable health information maintained by a HIPAA-covered entity in a manner that is not authorized or permitted by HIPAA. Enforcement activity can result in financial liability and reputational harm, and responses to such enforcement activity can consume significant internal resources. We cannot be sure how these regulations will be interpreted, enforced, or applied to our operations. In addition to the risks associated with enforcement activities and potential contractual liabilities, our ongoing efforts to comply with evolving laws and regulations at the federal and state level may be costly and require ongoing modifications to our policies, procedures and systems. Failure to comply with any of these laws could result in enforcement action against us, including fines, imprisonment of company officials and public censure, claims for damages by customers and other

affected individuals, damage to our reputation, and loss of goodwill (both in relation to existing and prospective customers), any of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, or prospects.

Although we take measures to protect sensitive data from unauthorized access, use or disclosure, our information technology and infrastructure may be vulnerable to attacks by hackers or viruses or breached due to employee error, malfeasance, or other malicious or inadvertent disruptions. Any such attack, breach, or other security breach or incident, or any interruption, could compromise our networks and the information processed there could be accessed by unauthorized parties, manipulated, publicly disclosed, lost, stolen or otherwise processed without authorization. Any such access, loss, other unauthorized processing, or any other security breach or incident, could result in legal claims or proceedings, and liability under federal or state laws that protect the privacy of personal information, such as HIPAA and HITECH, and regulatory penalties. Notice of certain security breaches must be made to affected individuals, the Secretary of the HHS, and for extensive breaches, notice may need to be made to the media or State Attorneys General. Such a notice could harm our reputation and our ability to compete. The HHS has the discretion to impose penalties without attempting to resolve violations through informal means. In addition, state attorneys general are authorized to bring civil actions seeking either injunctions or damages in response to violations that threaten the privacy of state residents. Although we have implemented security measures designed to prevent unauthorized access to patient data, such data is currently accessible through multiple channels, and there is no guarantee we can protect our data from security breaches or incidents, loss, or other unauthorized processing. Unauthorized access, loss, dissemination or other processing could also damage our reputation or disrupt our operations, including our ability to conduct our analyses, deliver test results, process claims and appeals, provide customer assistance, conduct research and development activities, collect, process and prepare company financial information, provide information about our tests and other patient and physician education and outreach efforts through our website, and manage the administrative aspects of our business.

We may collect, process, use or transfer personal information from individuals located in the European Union in connection with our business, including in connection with conducting clinical trials in the European Union. Additionally, if any of our product candidates are approved, we may seek to commercialize those products in the European Union. The collection and use of personal health data in the European Union are governed by laws, regulations, and directives, including the General Data Protection Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (“GDPR”). This legislation imposes requirements relating to having legal bases for processing personal information relating to identifiable individuals and transferring such information outside of the European Economic Area (“EEA”), including to the United States, providing details to those individuals regarding the processing of their personal information, keeping personal information secure, having data processing agreements with third parties who process personal information, responding to individuals’ requests to exercise their rights in respect of their personal information, reporting security breaches involving personal data to the competent national data protection authority and affected individuals, appointing data protection officers, conducting data protection impact assessments and record-keeping. This legislation imposes significant responsibilities and liabilities in relation to personal data that we process, and we may be required to put in place additional mechanisms ensuring compliance. In particular, with respect to cross-border transfers of personal data, judicial and regulatory developments in the European Union have created uncertainty. In a decision issued by the Court of Justice of the European Union (“CJEU”) on July 16, 2020, the CJEU invalidated one mechanism for cross-border personal data transfer, the EU-U.S. Privacy Shield, and imposed additional obligations on companies, including us, relying on standard contractual clauses issued by the European Commission (“SCCs”) for cross-border personal data transfers. The European Commission released new SCCs designed to address the CJEU concerns on June 4, 2021, which are required to be implemented. Additionally, the United Kingdom’s Information Commissioner’s Office issued new standard contractual clauses (the “UK SCCs”) to support personal data transfers out of the United Kingdom on February 2, 2022, which also are required to be implemented. We have undertaken certain efforts to conform transfers of personal data from the EEA, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom to the United States to our understanding of current regulatory obligations and guidance of data protection authorities, but the CJEU’s decision, the revised SCCs and UK SCCs, regulatory guidance and opinions, and other developments relating to cross-border data transfer may require us to implement additional contractual and technical safeguards for any personal data transferred out of the EEA, Switzerland, and the United Kingdom which may increase compliance costs, lead to increased regulatory scrutiny or liability, may require additional contractual negotiations, and may adversely impact our business, financial condition and operating results. Any actual or alleged failure to comply with the requirements of the GDPR or other laws, regulations, and directives of the member states of the European Union, Switzerland, or the United Kingdom may result in substantial fines, other administrative penalties and civil claims being brought against us, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, U.S. states are adopting new laws or amending existing laws and regulations, requiring attention to frequently changing regulatory requirements applicable to data related to individuals. For example, California has enacted the California Consumer Privacy Act (“CCPA”). The CCPA gives California residents expanded rights to access and delete their personal information, opt out of certain personal information sharing and receive detailed information about how their personal information is used by requiring covered companies to provide new disclosures to California consumers (as that term is broadly defined and which can include any of our current or future employees who may be California residents or any other California residents whose data we collect or process) and provide such residents new ways to opt out of certain sales of personal information. The CCPA provides for

civil penalties for violations, as well as a private right of action for data breaches that is expected to increase data breach litigation. As we expand our operations and trials (both preclinical or clinical), the CCPA may increase our compliance costs and potential liability. Additionally, a new privacy law, the California Privacy Rights Act (“CPRA”), was approved by California voters in the election on November 3, 2020. The CPRA created obligations relating to consumer data beginning on January 1, 2022, with enforcement anticipated to commence July 1, 2023. The CPRA modifies the CCPA significantly, potentially resulting in further uncertainty and requiring us to incur additional costs and expenses in an effort to comply. Additionally, other U.S. states and the U.S. federal government continue to propose, and in the case of certain states adopt, privacy-focused legislation, such as laws enacted in Colorado, Virginia, Utah and Connecticut. Aspects of these state laws remain unclear, resulting in further uncertainty and potentially requiring us to modify our data practices and policies and to incur substantial additional costs and expenses in an effort to comply.

Failure to comply with U.S. and international data protection laws and regulations could result in government enforcement actions (which could include civil or criminal penalties), private litigation, and/or adverse publicity and could negatively affect our operating results and business. Moreover, patients about whom we or our partners obtain information, as well as the providers who share this information with us, may contractually limit our ability to use and disclose the information. Claims that we have violated individuals’ privacy rights, failed to comply with data protection laws or breached our contractual obligations, even if we are not found liable, could be expensive and time-consuming to defend and could result in adverse publicity that could harm our business.

If we or third parties fail to adequately safeguard confidential personal, employee, or patient data, or if such information or data are wrongfully used by us or third parties or disclosed to unauthorized persons or entities, our reputation could suffer and we could be subject to claims for damages or other liabilities, regulatory investigations and enforcement action, litigation, the imposition of fines or other penalties, and significant costs for remediation. Any of these risks could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, or prospects.

### **Risks Related to Employee Matters, Managing Growth and Other Risks Related to Our Business**

***Our success is highly dependent on the services of our President and Chief Executive Officer, Dr. Xiaodong Yang, and our other senior management, and our ability to attract and retain highly skilled executive officers and employees.***

To succeed, we must recruit, retain, manage, and motivate qualified clinical, scientific, technical, and management personnel, and we face significant competition for experienced personnel, especially in the biotechnology industry in the San Francisco Bay Area of California. We are highly dependent on the principal members of our management and scientific and medical staff, particularly our President and Chief Executive Officer, Dr. Xiaodong Yang. If we do not succeed in attracting and retaining qualified personnel, particularly at the management level, it could adversely affect our ability to execute our business plan and harm our operating results. In particular, the loss of one or more of our executive officers, including Dr. Yang, could be detrimental to us if we cannot recruit suitable replacements in a timely manner. The competition for qualified personnel in the biotechnology field is intense and as a result, we may be unable to continue to attract and retain qualified personnel necessary for the future success of our business. In addition to competition for personnel, the San Francisco Bay Area in particular is characterized by a high cost of living. We could in the future have difficulty attracting experienced personnel to our company and may be required to expend significant financial resources in our employee recruitment and retention efforts.

Many of the other biotechnology companies that we compete against for qualified personnel have greater financial and other resources, different risk profiles and a longer history in the industry than we do. They also may provide more diverse opportunities and better prospects for career advancement. Some of these characteristics may be more appealing to high-quality candidates than what we have to offer. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high-quality personnel, the rate and success at which we can discover, develop, and commercialize our product candidates will be limited and the potential for successfully growing our business will be harmed.

***In order to successfully implement our plans and strategies, we will need to grow the size of our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth.***

As of September 30, 2022, Apexigen had 22 full-time employees. In order to successfully implement our development and commercialization plans and strategies, and as we transition into operating as a public company after the Business Combination, we expect to need additional managerial, operational, sales, marketing, financial, and other personnel. Future growth would impose significant added responsibilities on members of management, including:

- identifying, recruiting, integrating, maintaining, and motivating additional employees;



- managing our internal development efforts effectively, including the clinical and FDA and EMA review process for our current and any future product candidates, while complying with any contractual obligations to contractors and other third parties we may have; and
- improving our operational, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures.

Our future financial performance and our ability to successfully develop and, if approved, commercialize our current and any future product candidates will depend, in part, on our ability to effectively manage any future growth, and our management may also have to divert a disproportionate amount of its attention away from day-to-day activities in order to devote a substantial amount of time to managing these growth activities.

We currently rely, and for the foreseeable future will continue to rely, in substantial part on certain independent organizations, advisors and consultants to provide certain services, including substantially all aspects of clinical management and manufacturing. We cannot assure you that the services of independent organizations, advisors and consultants will continue to be available to us on a timely basis when needed, or that we can find qualified replacements. In addition, if we are unable to effectively manage our outsourced activities or if the quality or accuracy of the services provided by third party service providers is compromised for any reason, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed or terminated, and we may not obtain marketing approval of our current and any future product candidates or otherwise advance our business. We cannot assure you that we will manage our existing third-party service providers or find other competent outside contractors and consultants on economically reasonable terms, or at all.

If we are not able to effectively expand our organization by hiring new employees and/or engaging additional third-party service providers, we may not successfully implement the tasks necessary to further develop and commercialize our current and any future product candidates and, accordingly, may not achieve our research, development, and commercialization goals.

***If we are unable to establish sales or marketing capabilities or enter into agreements with third parties to sell or market our product candidates after any approvals, we may not successfully sell or market our product candidates that obtain regulatory approval.***

We currently do not have and have never had a marketing or sales team for the marketing, sales and distribution of any of our product candidates that may obtain regulatory approval in the future. In order to commercialize any product candidates, we must build marketing, sales, distribution, managerial, and other non-technical capabilities or make arrangements with third parties to perform these services for each of the territories in which we may have approval to sell or market our product candidates. We may not be successful in accomplishing these required tasks.

Establishing an internal sales or marketing team with technical expertise and supporting distribution capabilities to commercialize our product candidates will be expensive and time-consuming, and will require significant attention of our executive officers to manage. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing, and distribution capabilities could adversely impact the commercialization of any of our product candidates that we obtain approval to market, if we do not have arrangements in place with third parties to provide such services on our behalf. Alternatively, if we choose to collaborate, either globally or on a territory-by-territory basis, with third parties that have direct sales forces and established distribution systems, either to augment our own sales force and distribution systems or in lieu of our own sales force and distribution systems, we will be required to negotiate and enter into arrangements with such third parties relating to the proposed collaboration. If we are unable to enter into such arrangements when needed on acceptable terms, or at all, we may not successfully commercialize any of our product candidates that receive regulatory approval or any such commercialization may experience delays or limitations. If we are unable to successfully commercialize our approved product candidates, either on our own or through collaborations with one or more third parties, our future product revenue will suffer and we may incur significant additional losses.

***Our anticipated international operations may expose us to business, tax, regulatory, political, operational, financial, pricing, and reimbursement risks associated with doing business outside of the United States.***

Our business strategy incorporates potential international expansion as we seek to obtain regulatory approval for, and commercialize, our current and any future product candidates in patient populations outside the United States. If our product

candidates are approved, we may hire sales representatives and conduct physician and patient association outreach activities outside of the United States. Doing business internationally involves a number of risks, including:

- multiple, conflicting, and changing laws and regulations such as privacy regulations, tax laws, export and import restrictions, employment laws, regulatory requirements, and other governmental approvals, permits and licenses;
- taxation of future foreign earnings may increase our effective tax rate, which could adversely affect our cash flows, and overall financial condition;
- failure by us to obtain and maintain regulatory approvals for the use of our products in various countries;
- rejection or qualification of foreign clinical trial data by the competent authorities of other countries;
- additional potentially relevant third-party patent rights;
- complexities and difficulties in obtaining protection and enforcing our intellectual property;
- difficulties in staffing and managing foreign operations;
- complexities associated with managing multiple payor reimbursement regimes, government payors, or patient self-pay systems;
- limits in our ability to penetrate international markets;
- financial risks, such as longer payment cycles, difficulty collecting accounts receivable, the impact of local and regional financial crises on demand and payment for our products, and exposure to foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations;
- natural disasters, political and economic instability, including wars, terrorism, and political unrest, outbreak of disease, boycotts, curtailment of trade, and other business restrictions;
- certain expenses including, among others, expenses for travel, translation, and insurance; and
- regulatory and compliance risks that relate to anti-corruption compliance and record-keeping that may fall within the purview of the FCPA, its accounting provisions or its anti-bribery provisions, or provisions of anti-corruption or anti-bribery laws in other countries.

Any of these factors could significantly harm our future international expansion and operations and, consequently, our results of operations.

### **Risks Related to Intellectual Property**

***If we are unable to obtain, maintain or protect intellectual property rights in any products we develop, or if the scope of the intellectual property protection obtained is not sufficiently broad, third parties could develop and commercialize products and technology similar or identical to ours, and we may not compete effectively in our market.***

Our success depends in significant part on our and our current or future licensors' ability to obtain, maintain and protect patents and other intellectual property rights and operate without infringing, misappropriating, or otherwise violating the intellectual property rights of others. We have filed numerous patent applications both in the United States and in foreign jurisdictions to obtain patent rights to inventions we have developed that are important to our business, including related to our product candidates. We have also licensed from third parties rights to patents and other intellectual property, including from Epitomics, Inc., an Abcam Company ("Epitomics"), with respect to rabbit monoclonal antibodies generated using Epitomics' technology in the field of pharmaceutical products for human or veterinary use. If we or our licensors are unable to obtain or maintain patent protection with respect to such inventions and technology, our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects could be materially harmed.

The patent prosecution process is expensive, time-consuming, and complex, and we and our current or future licensors may not prepare, file, prosecute, maintain, and enforce all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner. Patents may be invalidated and patent applications may not be granted for a number of reasons, including known and unknown prior art, deficiencies in the patent applications or the lack of novelty of the underlying inventions or technology. It is also possible that we

or our current and future licensors will fail to identify patentable aspects of inventions made in the course of research, development and commercialization activities in time to obtain patent protection. Although we enter into non-disclosure and confidentiality agreements with parties who have access to confidential or patentable aspects of our research, development, and commercialization activities, such as our employees, collaborators, CROs, consultants, advisors and other third parties, any of these parties may breach the agreements and disclose such activities before a patent application is filed, thereby jeopardizing our ability to seek patent protection. In addition, publications of discoveries in the scientific literature often lag behind actual discoveries, and patent applications in the United States and other jurisdictions are typically not published until 18 months after filing, or in some cases not at all. Therefore, we cannot be certain that we or our current or future licensors were the first to make the inventions claimed in our owned or any licensed patents or patent applications, or that we or our current or future licensors were the first to file for patent protection of such inventions.

Moreover, in some circumstances, we may not have the right to control the preparation, filing, prosecution, maintenance, enforcement, and defense of patents and patent applications covering products or technology that we license from third parties and are reliant on our current and future licensors. For example, pursuant to our license agreement with Epitomics, Inc., Epitomics is responsible for the filing, prosecution and maintenance of the patents and patent applications licensed to us. Therefore, these patents and applications may not be prepared, filed, prosecuted, maintained, enforced and defended in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. If our current or future licensors fail to prosecute, maintain, enforce or defend such patents and other intellectual property rights, are not fully cooperative or disagree with us as to the prosecution, maintenance or enforcement of any patent rights, or lose rights to those patents or patent applications, the rights we have licensed may be reduced or eliminated, and our right to develop and commercialize any of our product candidates that are the subject of such licensed rights could be adversely affected.

The patent position of biotechnology companies generally is highly uncertain, involves complex legal and factual questions and has in recent years been the subject of much litigation. As a result, the issuance, scope, validity, enforceability and commercial value of our and our current or future licensors' patent rights are highly uncertain. Our and our current or future licensors' pending and future patent applications may not result in patents being issued which protect our technology or products, in whole or in part, or which effectively prevent others from commercializing competitive technologies and products. Moreover, the patent examination process may require us or our current and future licensors to narrow the scope of the claims of our or our current and future licensors' pending and future patent applications, which may limit the scope of patent protection that may be obtained. Additionally, the scope of patent protection can be reinterpreted after issuance. Even if our or our current or future licensors' pending and future patent applications issue as patents, they may not issue in a form that will provide us with any meaningful protection, prevent competitors or other third parties from competing with us, or otherwise provide us with any competitive advantage. Any patents that we hold or in-license may be challenged, narrowed, circumvented, or invalidated by third parties in court or in patent offices in the United States and abroad. Our and our current or future licensors' patent applications cannot be enforced against third parties practicing the technology claimed in such applications unless and until a patent issues from such applications, and then only to the extent the issued claims cover the technology. Our competitors or other third parties may also circumvent our patents by developing similar or alternative technologies or products in a non-infringing manner.

We cannot assure you that we have found all of the potentially relevant prior art relating to our patents and patent applications. If such prior art exists, it can invalidate a patent or prevent a patent from issuing from a pending patent application. For example, there are a number of third-party patents and patent applications relating to the engineering of antibodies, including with respect to the CD40 binding and fragment crystallizable ("Fc") domains, that may have earlier priority or publication dates and may be asserted as prior art against our patents and patent applications. Even if our patents do issue and even if such patents cover our product candidates, third parties may initiate oppositions, interferences, re-examinations, post-grant reviews, inter partes reviews, nullification or derivation actions in court or before patent offices, or similar proceedings challenging the inventorship, validity, enforceability or scope of such patents, which may result in the patent claims being narrowed or invalidated. An adverse determination in any such proceeding or litigation could reduce the scope of, or invalidate, the patent rights we own or license, allow third parties to commercialize our technology or products and compete directly with us, without payment to us.

Moreover, we, or our current or future licensors, may have to participate in interference proceedings declared by the United States Patent and Trademark Office ("USPTO") to determine priority of invention or in post-grant challenge proceedings, such as oppositions in a foreign patent office, that challenge priority of invention or other features of patentability. Such challenges may result in loss of patent rights, loss of exclusivity, or in patent claims being narrowed, invalidated, or held unenforceable, which could limit our ability to stop others from using or commercializing similar or identical technology and products, or limit the duration of the patent protection of our technology and product candidates, including sotigalimab. Such proceedings also may result in substantial cost and require significant time from our scientists and management, even if the eventual outcome is favorable to us. Consequently, we do not know whether any of our technology or product candidates will be protectable or remain protected by valid and enforceable patents.

Because patent applications in the United States and most other countries are confidential for a period of time after filing, and some remain so until issued, we cannot be certain that we or our current and future licensors were the first to file any patent application related to a product candidate. Furthermore, if third parties have filed such patent applications on or before March 15, 2013, an interference proceeding in the United States can be initiated by such third parties to determine who was the first to invent any of the subject matter covered by the patent claims of our applications. If third parties have filed such applications after March 15, 2013, a derivation proceeding in the United States can be initiated by such third parties to determine whether our invention was derived from theirs. Even where we have a valid and enforceable patent, we may not exclude others from practicing our invention where the other party can show that they used the invention in commerce before our filing date or the other party benefits from a compulsory license.

***We may not protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world.***

Filing, prosecuting, enforcing, and defending patents on product candidates in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our or our current and future licensors' intellectual property rights may not exist in some countries outside the United States or may be less extensive in some countries than in the United States. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as federal and state laws in the United States. Consequently, we and our current and future licensors may not prevent third parties from practicing our and our current or future licensors' inventions in all countries outside the United States, or from selling or importing products made using our and our current or future licensors' inventions in and into the United States or other jurisdictions. Competitors may use our and our current or future licensors' technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we and our current and future licensors have patent protection, but enforcement is not as strong as that in the United States. These products may compete with our product candidates, and our and our current or future licensors' patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing.

Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents, trade secrets, and other intellectual property protection, particularly those relating to biotechnology, which could make it difficult for us and our current and future licensors to stop the infringement of our and our current or future licensors' patents or marketing of competing products in violation of our and our current or future licensors' intellectual property and proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our and our current or future licensors' intellectual property and proprietary rights in foreign jurisdictions could result in substantial costs and divert our and our current or future licensors' efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our and our current or future licensors' patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly, could put our and our current or future licensors' patent applications at risk of not issuing, and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us or our current and future licensors. We or our current and future licensors may not prevail in any lawsuits that we or our current and future licensors initiate, and the damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Some jurisdictions may refuse to honor intellectual property rights due to legislation or geopolitical reasons, such as Russia recently stating that it will not honor patent rights of companies from countries that have imposed sanctions on Russia in response to the war in Ukraine. Accordingly, our and our current and future licensors' efforts to enforce intellectual property and proprietary rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we develop or license.

Many countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled to grant licenses to third parties. In addition, many countries limit the enforceability of patents against government agencies or government contractors. In these countries, the patent owner may have limited remedies, which could materially diminish the value of such patent. If we or our current and future licensors are forced to grant a license to third parties with respect to any patents relevant to our business, our competitive position may be impaired, and our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects may be adversely affected.

***Changes in patent law could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our product candidates.***

Obtaining and enforcing patents in the biopharmaceutical industry involves both technological and legal complexity and is therefore costly, time-consuming, and inherently uncertain. Changes in either the patent laws or interpretation of the patent laws in the United States could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of patent applications and the enforcement or defense of issued patents. Recent patent reform legislation in the United States and other countries, including the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act ("Leahy-Smith Act"), could increase those uncertainties and costs. The Leahy-Smith Act includes provisions that affect the way patent applications are prosecuted, redefine prior art, and provide more efficient and cost-effective avenues for competitors to challenge the validity of patents, and may also affect patent litigation. These include allowing third-party submission of prior art to the USPTO during patent prosecution and additional procedures to attack the validity of a patent by USPTO administered post-grant proceedings, including post-grant review, inter partes review, and derivation proceedings. In addition, assuming that other requirements for patentability are met, prior to March 15, 2013, in the United States, the first to invent the claimed invention was

entitled to the patent, while outside the United States, the first to file a patent application was entitled to the patent. After March 15, 2013, under the Leahy-Smith Act, the United States transitioned to a first inventor to file system in which, assuming that the other statutory requirements are met, the first inventor to file a patent application will be entitled to the patent on an invention regardless of whether a third party was the first to invent the claimed invention. However, the Leahy-Smith Act and its implementation could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our issued patents, all of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

In addition, the U.S. Supreme Court has ruled on several patent cases in recent years, either narrowing the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakening the rights of patent owners in certain situations. This combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the validity and enforceability of patents, once obtained. Depending on future actions by the U.S. Congress, the U.S. courts, the USPTO and the relevant law-making bodies in other countries, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that would weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce our existing patents and patents that we might obtain in the future.

***Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment, and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.***

Periodic maintenance fees, renewal fees, annuity fees, and various other government fees on any issued patent or patent application are due to be paid to the USPTO and various government patent agencies outside of the United States in several stages over the lifetime of our owned or licensed patents and applications. The USPTO and various non-U.S. governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment, and other similar provisions during the patent application process. While an inadvertent lapse can, in some cases, be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with the applicable rules, there are situations in which non-compliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in a partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. Non-compliance events that could result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application include failure to respond to official actions within prescribed time limits, non-payment of fees, and failure to properly legalize and submit formal documents. If we or our current and future licensors fail to maintain the patents and patent applications covering our product candidates, our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated and our competitors might be better able to enter the market with competing products or technology, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operation, and prospects.

***If we fail to comply with our obligations in the agreements under which we license intellectual property rights from third parties or otherwise experience disruptions to our business relationships with our licensors, we could lose the ability to continue the development and commercialization of our product candidates.***

We are a party to a number of intellectual property and technology licenses that are important to our business. For example, Apexigen obtained an exclusive license from Epitomics under certain intellectual property related to rabbit monoclonal antibodies generated using Epitomics' technology in the field of pharmaceutical products for human or veterinary use that has certain ongoing payment and other obligations even though the license agreement has now expired. In addition, if we fail to comply with our obligations under these technology agreements, including payment and diligence terms, or other specified events occur such as our insolvency, our current and future licensors may have the right to terminate these agreements, in which event we may not develop, manufacture, market or sell any product that is covered by these agreements or may face other penalties under the agreements. Such an occurrence could adversely affect the value of the technology or product candidate being developed or licensed under any such agreement. Termination of these agreements or reduction or elimination of our rights under these agreements may result in our having to negotiate new or reinstated agreements, which may not be available to us on equally favorable terms, or at all, or cause us to lose our rights under these agreements, including our rights to intellectual property or technology important to our development programs.

Disputes may arise regarding intellectual property subject to a licensing agreement, including:

- the scope of rights granted under the license agreement and other interpretation-related issues;
- the extent to which our technology and processes infringe on intellectual property of the licensor that is not subject to the licensing agreement;
- the sublicensing of patent and other rights under our existing collaborative development relationships and any collaboration relationships we might enter into in the future;

- our diligence obligations under the license agreement and what activities satisfy those diligence obligations;
- the inventorship and ownership of inventions and know-how resulting from the joint creation or use of intellectual property by our current and future licensors and us; and
- the priority of invention of patented technology.

In addition, the agreements under which Apexigen licenses intellectual property or technology from third parties are generally complex, and certain provisions in such agreements may be susceptible to multiple interpretations. The resolution of any contract interpretation disagreement that may arise could narrow what we believe to be the scope of our rights to the relevant intellectual property or technology, or increase what we believe to be our financial or other obligations under the relevant agreement, either of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, result of operations, and prospects. Moreover, if disputes over intellectual property that we have licensed prevent or impair our ability to maintain our current licensing arrangements on commercially acceptable terms, we may be unable to successfully develop and commercialize the affected product candidates, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial conditions, results of operations, and prospects.

***We may not succeed in obtaining necessary rights to any product candidates we may develop through acquisitions and in-licenses.***

A third party may hold intellectual property, including patent rights, that are important or necessary to the development of our current or future product candidates. In order to avoid infringing these third-party patents, we may find it necessary or prudent to obtain licenses from such third-party intellectual property holders. Moreover, we may need to obtain additional licenses from our existing licensors and others to advance our research or allow commercialization of product candidates we may develop. In addition, with respect to any patents we co-own with third parties, we may require licenses to such co-owners' interest to such patents. However, we may be unable to secure such licenses or otherwise acquire or in-license any compositions, methods of use, processes, or other intellectual property rights from third parties that we identify as necessary for product candidates we develop. The licensing or acquisition of third-party intellectual property rights is a competitive area, and several more established companies may pursue strategies to license or acquire third-party intellectual property rights that we may consider attractive or necessary. These established companies may have a competitive advantage over us due to their size, capital resources and greater clinical development or commercialization capabilities. In addition, companies that perceive us to be a competitor may be unwilling to assign or license rights to us. As a result, we may be unable to obtain any such licenses at a reasonable cost or on reasonable terms, if at all. In that event, we may be required to expend significant time and resources to redesign our technology, product candidates, or the methods for manufacturing them, or to develop or license replacement technology, all of which may not be feasible on a technical or commercial basis. If we are unable to do so, we may be unable to develop or commercialize the affected product candidates, which could harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects significantly. In addition, even if we obtain a license, it may be non-exclusive, thereby giving our competitors access to the same technologies licensed to us, and it could require us to make substantial licensing and royalty payments, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

Moreover, some of our owned and in-licensed patents and patent applications are, and may in the future be, co-owned with third parties. If we are unable to obtain an exclusive license to any such third-party co-owners' interest in such patents or patent applications, such co-owners may license their rights to other third parties, including our competitors, and such third parties could market competing products and technology. In addition, we may need the cooperation of any such co-owners of our patents in order to enforce such patents against third parties, and such cooperation may not be provided to us. Any of the foregoing could have a material adverse effect on our competitive position, business, financial conditions, results of operations, and prospects.

***Third parties may initiate legal proceedings against us alleging that we infringe, misappropriate, or otherwise violate their intellectual property rights, or we may initiate legal proceedings against third parties to challenge the validity or scope of intellectual property rights controlled by third parties, the outcome of which would be uncertain and could have an adverse effect on the success of our business.***

Our commercial success depends upon our ability to develop, manufacture, market and sell our product candidates and use our and our current or future licensors' proprietary technologies without infringing, misappropriating, or otherwise violating the intellectual property rights of third parties. The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are characterized by extensive litigation regarding patents and other intellectual property rights. Third parties may initiate legal proceedings against us or our current and future licensors alleging that we or our current and future licensors infringe, misappropriate, or otherwise violate their intellectual property rights. In addition, we or our current and future licensors may initiate legal proceedings against third parties to challenge the validity or scope of intellectual property rights controlled by third parties, including in oppositions, interferences, reexaminations, inter partes reviews, or derivation proceedings in the United States or other jurisdictions. These proceedings can be expensive and

time-consuming, and many of our or our current and future licensors' adversaries in these proceedings may have the ability to dedicate substantially greater resources to prosecuting these legal actions than we or our current and future licensors.

There are third-party patents and, if issued as patents, patent applications relating to the engineering of antibodies, including with respect to CD40 and Fc domains, that may be construed to cover our product candidates, including sotigalimab. The third parties that control these patents may allege that our product candidates, including sotigalimab, infringe these patents. Parties making infringement, misappropriation, or other intellectual property claims against us may obtain injunctive or other equitable relief, which could effectively block our ability to further develop and commercialize one or more of our product candidates. Defense of these claims, regardless of their merit, would involve substantial litigation expense and would be a substantial diversion of management and employee resources from our business. In addition, even if we believe any third-party intellectual property claims are without merit, there is no assurance that a court would find in our favor on questions of validity, enforceability, priority, or non-infringement. A court of competent jurisdiction could hold that such third-party patents are valid, enforceable, and infringed, which could materially and adversely affect our ability to commercialize any of our products or technologies covered by the asserted third-party patents. In order to successfully challenge the validity of any such third-party U.S. patents in federal court, we would need to overcome a presumption of validity. As this burden is a high one requiring us to present clear and convincing evidence as to the invalidity of any such U.S. patent claim, there is no assurance that a court of competent jurisdiction would invalidate the claims of any such U.S. patent. An unfavorable outcome could require us or our current and future licensors to cease using the related technology or developing or commercializing our product candidates, or to attempt to license rights to it from the prevailing party. Our business could be harmed if the prevailing party does not offer us or our current and future licensors a license on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we or our current and future licensors obtain a license, it may be non-exclusive, thereby giving our competitors access to the same technologies licensed to us or our current and future licensors, and it could require us to make substantial licensing and royalty payments. In addition, we could be found liable for monetary damages, including treble damages and attorneys' fees, if we are found to have willfully infringed a patent. A finding of infringement, misappropriation, or other violation of third-party intellectual property could prevent us from commercializing our product candidates or force us to cease some of our business operations, which could harm our business. Claims that we have misappropriated the confidential information or trade secrets of third parties could have a similar material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

***We may be subject to claims by third parties asserting that we or our employees, consultants, or advisors have misappropriated their intellectual property, or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.***

Many of our employees, consultants, and advisors, including our senior management, were previously employed at other biopharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. Some of these employees executed proprietary rights, non-disclosure, and/or non-competition agreements in connection with such previous employment. Although we try to ensure that our employees, consultants, and advisors do not use the proprietary information or know-how of others in their work for us, we may be subject to claims that we or these individuals have used or disclosed confidential information or intellectual property, including trade secrets or other proprietary information, of any such individual's current or former employer. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. If we fail in prosecuting or defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel. Such intellectual property rights could be awarded to a third party, and we could be required to obtain a license from such third party to commercialize our technology or products. Such a license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms, or at all. Even if we successfully prosecute or defend against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and distract management.

In addition, while it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the conception or development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who, in fact, conceives or develops intellectual property that we regard as our own. The assignment of intellectual property rights may not be self-executing, or the assignment agreements may be breached, and we may be forced to bring claims against third parties, or defend claims that they may bring against us, to determine the ownership of what we regard as our intellectual property. Such claims could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

***Our inability to protect our confidential information and trade secrets would harm our business and competitive position.***

In addition to seeking patents for some of our technology and products, we also rely on trade secrets, including unpatented know-how, technology and other proprietary information to maintain our competitive position. Trade secrets can be difficult to protect. We seek to protect these trade secrets, in part, by entering into non-disclosure and confidentiality agreements with parties who have access to them, such as our employees, corporate collaborators, outside scientific collaborators, CROs, contract manufacturers, consultants, advisors, and other third parties. We also enter into confidentiality agreements with our employees and consultants. We cannot guarantee that we have entered into such agreements with each party that may have or have had access to our trade secrets or proprietary technology and processes. Despite these efforts, any of these parties may breach the agreements and disclose our

proprietary information, including our trade secrets, and we may not obtain adequate remedies for such breaches. Misappropriation or unauthorized disclosure of our trade secrets could significantly affect our competitive position and may have a material adverse effect on our business. Enforcing a claim that a party illegally disclosed or misappropriated a trade secret is difficult, expensive and time-consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. Some courts both within and outside the United States may be less willing or unwilling to protect trade secrets. Furthermore, trade secret protection does not prevent competitors from independently developing substantially equivalent information and techniques and we cannot guarantee that our competitors will not independently develop substantially equivalent information and techniques. If a competitor lawfully obtained or independently developed any of our trade secrets, we would have no right to prevent such competitor from using that technology or information to compete with us. Failure on our part to adequately protect our trade secrets and our confidential information would harm our business and our competitive position.

***Issued patents covering one or more of our product candidates or technologies could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged in court.***

To protect our competitive position, we may from time to time need to resort to litigation in order to enforce or defend any patents or other intellectual property rights owned by or licensed to us, or to determine or challenge the scope or validity of patents or other intellectual property rights of third parties. Enforcement of intellectual property rights is difficult, unpredictable, and expensive, and many of our or our licensors' or collaboration partners' adversaries in these proceedings may have the ability to dedicate substantially greater resources to prosecuting these legal actions than we or our licensors or collaboration partners can. Accordingly, despite our or our licensors' or collaboration partners' efforts, we or our licensors or collaboration partners may not prevent third parties from infringing upon or misappropriating intellectual property rights we own or control, particularly in countries where the laws may not protect those rights as fully as in the European Union and the United States. We may fail in enforcing our rights—in which case our competitors may be permitted to use our technology without being required to pay us any license fees. In addition, however, litigation involving our patents carries the risk that one or more of our patents will be held invalid (in whole or in part, on a claim-by-claim basis) or held unenforceable. Such an adverse court ruling could allow third parties to commercialize our products or use our technologies, including our APXiMAB platform, and then compete directly with us, without payment to us.

If we or one of our licensors were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering one of our products, the defendant could counterclaim that such patent is invalid or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States or in Europe, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity or unenforceability are commonplace. A claim for a validity challenge may be based on failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, for example, lack of novelty, obviousness, or non-enablement. A claim for unenforceability could involve an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld relevant information from the European Patent Office or the USPTO or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. Third parties may also raise similar claims before the USPTO or an equivalent foreign body, even outside the context of litigation. Potential proceedings include re-examination, post-grant review, inter partes review, interference proceedings, derivation proceedings, and equivalent proceedings in foreign jurisdictions (e.g., opposition proceedings). Such proceedings could result in the revocation of, cancellation of, or amendment to our patents in such a way that they no longer cover our technology or any product candidates that we may develop. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability during patent litigation is unpredictable. With respect to the validity question, for example, we cannot be certain that there is no invalidating prior art, of which we or our licensing partners and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity or unenforceability, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on one or more of our product candidates or certain aspects of our APXiMAB platform technologies. Such a loss of patent protection could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects. Further, litigation could result in substantial costs and diversion of management resources, regardless of the outcome, and this could harm our business and financial results. Patents and other intellectual property rights also will not protect our technology if competitors design around our protected technology without infringing our patents or other intellectual property rights.

***We may become involved in disputes or lawsuits to protect or enforce our patents or other intellectual property, which could be expensive, time-consuming, unsuccessful, and lead to challenges to our intellectual property ownership.***

Competitors and other third parties may infringe, misappropriate, or otherwise violate our issued patents or other intellectual property or the patents or other intellectual property of our licensors, or we or our licensors may be required to defend against claims of infringement, misappropriation, or other violation. In addition, our patents or the patents of our licensors may become involved in inventorship or priority disputes. Other disputes may arise related to intellectual property rights that we believe are derived from, or related to, our patents or technology, including with respect to sotigalimab. For example, Apexigen is aware of certain patent applications filed by a former collaborator covering biomarkers and patient selection discoveries related to our sotiga program. Apexigen believes that we own the intellectual property covered by these provisional patent applications. We are in discussions with the former collaborator to assign their rights in this intellectual property to us, but there is no guarantee that we will come to a satisfactory resolution of this matter.



To counter infringement, misappropriation, or other unauthorized use, we or our licensors may be required to negotiate a solution to such dispute or file infringement claims, either of which can be expensive and time-consuming. Any claims we or our licensors assert against perceived infringers could provoke these parties to assert counterclaims against us or our licensors alleging that we or our licensors infringe their patents or that our or our licensors' patents are invalid or unenforceable. In a patent infringement proceeding, a court may decide that a patent of ours or one of our licensors' is invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, construe the patent's claims narrowly or refuse to stop the other party from using the technology at issue on the grounds that our or our licensors' patents do not cover the technology. An adverse result in any litigation proceeding could put one or more of our owned or licensed patents at risk of being invalidated, held unenforceable, or interpreted narrowly.

We may find it impractical or undesirable to enforce our intellectual property against some third parties. Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation.

Interference proceedings provoked by third parties or brought by us or declared by the USPTO may be necessary to determine the priority of inventions with respect to our or our licensors' patents or patent applications. If we or our licensors are unsuccessful in any interference proceedings to which we or they are subject, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights through the loss of one or more patents owned or licensed or our owned or licensed patent claims may be narrowed, invalidated, or held unenforceable. If we or our licensors are unsuccessful in any interference proceeding or other priority or inventorship dispute, we may be required to obtain and maintain licenses from third parties, including parties involved in any such interference proceedings or other priority of inventorship disputes. Such licenses may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all, or may be non-exclusive. If we are unable to obtain and maintain such licenses, we may need to cease the development, manufacture, and commercialization of one or more of the product candidates we may develop. The loss of exclusivity or narrowing of our owned or licensed patent claims could limit our ability to stop others from using or commercializing similar or identical technology and products.

Any of the foregoing intellectual property disputes or litigation could result in a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, or prospects.

***Intellectual property litigation or proceedings could cause us to spend substantial resources and distract our personnel.***

Even if resolved in our favor, litigation or other legal proceedings relating to intellectual property claims could result in substantial costs and diversion of management resources, which could harm our business. In addition, the uncertainties associated with litigation could compromise our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our clinical trials, continue our internal research programs or in-license needed technology or other product candidates. There could also be public announcements of the results of the hearing, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive those results to be negative, it could cause the price of shares of our common stock to decline. Such litigation or proceedings could substantially increase our operating losses and reduce the resources available for development activities or any future sales, marketing, or distribution activities. We may not have sufficient financial or other resources to conduct such litigation or proceedings adequately. Most of our competitors are larger than we are and have substantially greater resources. They are, therefore, likely to sustain the costs of complex patent litigation or proceedings more effectively than we can because of their greater financial resources and more mature and developed intellectual property portfolios. Accordingly, despite our efforts, we may not prevent third parties from infringing upon, misappropriating, or otherwise violating our intellectual property. Any of the foregoing events could harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

***If we do not obtain patent term extension or data exclusivity for any product candidates we may develop, our business may be materially harmed.***

Patents have a limited lifespan. Due to the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our owned and licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with sufficient rights to exclude others from commercializing products similar or identical to ours. In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. filing date. Various extensions may be available, but the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Even if patents covering our product candidates are obtained, once the patent life has expired for a product, we may be open to competition from competitive medications, including biosimilar or generic medications. For example, certain of our owned patents that cover sotigalimab will begin to expire in 2032, absent extensions, in the United States and similar patent applications are pending in foreign jurisdictions. At the time of the expiration of the relevant patents, the underlying technology covered by such patents can be used by any third party, including competitors. Although the patent term extensions under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Action of 1984 ("Hatch-Waxman Act") in the United States may be available to extend the patent term, we cannot provide any assurances that any such patent term extension will be obtained and, if so, for how long.

Depending upon the timing, duration and specifics of any FDA marketing approval of any product candidates we may develop, one or more of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term extension under the Hatch-Waxman Act. The Hatch-Waxman Act permits a patent term extension of up to five years as compensation for patent term lost during the FDA regulatory review process. A patent term extension cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval, only one patent may be extended, and only those claims covering the approved drug, a method for using it, or a method for manufacturing it may be extended. However, we may not be granted an extension because of, for example, failing to exercise due diligence during the testing phase or regulatory review process, failing to apply within applicable deadlines, failing to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents, or otherwise failing to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the applicable time period or the scope of patent protection afforded could be less than we request. If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or term of any such extension is less than we request, our competitors may obtain approval of competing products following our patent expiration, and our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects could be materially harmed.

***If our trademark and tradenames are not adequately protected, then we may not build name recognition in our markets and our business may be adversely affected.***

We cannot assure you that competitors will not infringe our trademarks or that we will have adequate resources to enforce our trademarks. We cannot assure you that any future trademark applications that we will file will be approved. During trademark registration proceedings, we may receive rejections and although we are given an opportunity to respond to those rejections, we may be unable to overcome such rejections. In addition, in proceedings before the USPTO and in proceedings before comparable agencies in many foreign jurisdictions, third parties are given an opportunity to oppose pending trademark applications and to seek to cancel registered trademarks. An opposition or cancellation proceeding may be filed against our trademarks and our trademarks may not survive such proceedings, which may force us to rebrand our name.

***Intellectual property rights do not necessarily address all potential threats.***

The degree of future protection afforded by our intellectual property rights is uncertain because intellectual property rights have limitations and may not adequately protect our business or permit us to maintain our competitive advantage. For example:

- others may make products that are similar to any product candidates we may develop or utilize similar technology but that are not covered by the claims of the patents that we license or may own in the future;
- others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies or duplicate any of our technologies without infringing our owned or licensed intellectual property rights;
- our competitors might conduct research and development activities in countries where we do not have patent rights and then use the information learned from such activities to develop competitive products for sale in our major commercial markets;
- we may not develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable; and
- we may choose not to file a patent in order to maintain certain trade secrets or know-how, and a third party may subsequently file a patent covering such intellectual property.

Should any of these events occur, they could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and prospects.

## **Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties**

***We rely on third parties to conduct our clinical trials and those third parties may not perform satisfactorily, including failing to meet deadlines for the completion of such trials, research and studies.***

We do not have the ability to independently conduct our clinical trials. We currently rely on third parties to conduct clinical trials of its product candidates, including ISTs sponsored by third parties; these third parties also include CROs, clinical data management organizations, medical institutions and clinical investigators. We expect to continue to rely upon third parties to conduct additional clinical trials of our product candidates. Third parties have a significant role in the conduct of our clinical trials and the subsequent collection and analysis of data. These third parties are not our employees, and except for remedies available to us under our agreements, we have limited ability to control the amount or timing of resources that any such third party will devote to our clinical trials. In some cases, these third parties may not provide us with information about the ongoing clinical trials on a timely basis. The third parties may also violate the terms of the agreements governing such clinical trials in various ways, including asserting

intellectual property rights that contractually belong to us. Some of these third parties may terminate their engagements with us at any time. If we need to enter into alternative arrangements, it would delay our drug development activities.

Our reliance on these third parties for research and development activities will reduce our control over these activities but will not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. For example, we will remain responsible for ensuring that each of our clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the general investigational plan and protocols for the trial. Moreover, the FDA requires us to comply with GCP standards, regulations for conducting, recording and reporting the results of clinical trials to assure that data and reported results are credible and accurate and that the rights, integrity, and confidentiality of trial participants are protected. The EMA also requires us to comply with similar standards. Regulatory authorities enforce these GCP requirements through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators, and trial sites. If we or any of our CROs fail to comply with applicable GCP requirements, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. We cannot assure you that upon inspection by a given regulatory authority, such regulatory authority will determine that any of our clinical trials comply with GCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under current GMP regulations. Our failure or the failure of the third parties we engage to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the marketing approval process. We also are required to register certain ongoing clinical trials and post the results of certain completed clinical trials on a government-sponsored database, ClinicalTrials.gov, within certain timeframes. Failure to do so can result in fines, adverse publicity, and civil and criminal sanctions.

The third parties we rely on for these services may also have relationships with other entities, some of which may be our competitors. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties, meet expected deadlines, or conduct our clinical trials in accordance with regulatory requirements or our stated protocols, we will not obtain, or may be delayed in obtaining, marketing approvals for our product candidates and will not be able to, or may be delayed in our efforts to, successfully commercialize our product candidates.

***We contract with third parties for the production of sotigalimab and our other product candidates for preclinical studies and our ongoing clinical trials, and expect to continue to do so for additional clinical trials and ultimately for commercialization and for additional product candidates. This reliance on third parties increases the risk that we will not have sufficient quantities of our product candidates or drugs or such quantities at an acceptable cost, which could delay, prevent, or impair our development or commercialization efforts.***

We do not currently have the infrastructure or internal capability to manufacture our product candidates for use in clinical development and commercialization. We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third-party manufacturers for the production of our product candidates in compliance with GMP requirements for clinical trials under the guidance of members of our organization. We currently rely on a single third-party manufacturer, WuXi Biologics (Hong Kong) Limited (“WuXi”), for the manufacture of our product candidates sotiga and APX601. We expect the quantity and stability of our current supply of sotiga from that prior manufacturer will be sufficient to supply our currently ongoing clinical trials through mid-2023. We plan to undertake our first drug substance manufacturing run at WuXi in mid-2022. If WuXi successfully manufactures sotiga and the FDA and other relevant regulatory authorities approve our comparability protocol, we expect to have sotiga drug product ready for clinical use by mid-2023. If WuXi experiences delays in manufacturing or does not successfully manufacture sotiga or the FDA or other relevant regulatory authorities do not accept our comparability protocol, we may run out of sotiga drug product to supply the clinical development of sotiga by mid-2023..

The manufacture of biologic therapeutics is complex. It is anticipated that during development from early clinical trials to commercialization that changes to the manufacturing cell line, manufacturing process or analytical methods will occur. These changes carry the risk that the intended goals of such changes are not achievable and that further development work may be needed to reach these goals, which may delay our ability to meet clinical or commercial supply needs. Our change in the manufacturing site, cell line, process and analytical methods for sotiga represent a specific elevated risk for the sotiga program. However, Apexigen currently has no alternative manufacturer in place for sotiga and APX601 drug substance and drug product. For the APX601 product candidate, we have successfully completed drug substance runs at WuXi and expect to have APX601 clinical material ready for use in the second half of 2022.

If we were to experience an unexpected loss of supply of our product candidates for any reason, whether as a result of manufacturing, supply, or storage issues or otherwise, we could experience delays, disruptions, suspensions or terminations of, or be required to restart or repeat, any pending or ongoing clinical trials, such as occurred with the prior switchover by Apexigen to a new contract manufacturer. Replacement of our sole manufacturer would likely result in substantial delay and could interrupt our clinical trials if we had not previously obtained enough supply of our product candidates.

We expect to continue to rely on third-party manufacturers for the commercial supply of any of our product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. We may be unable to maintain or establish required agreements with third-party manufacturers or to do so on acceptable terms. Even if we are able to establish agreements with third-party manufacturers, reliance on third-party manufacturers entails additional risks, including:

- the possible failure of the third party to manufacture our product candidates according to our specifications;
- the possible failure of the third party to manufacture our product candidate according to our schedule, or at all, including if our third-party contractors give greater priority to the supply of other products over our product candidates or otherwise do not satisfactorily perform according to the terms of the agreements between us and them;
- the possible failure of our third-party manufacturer to procure raw materials from third-party suppliers and potential exposure to supply chain issues impacting delivery dates, quality, quantity and pricing of raw materials, including due to the COVID-19 pandemic, which may result in additional costs and delays in production of clinical trial materials, commercial product and regulatory approvals;
- the possible termination or nonrenewal of agreements by our third-party contractors at a time that is costly or inconvenient for us;
- the possible breach by the third-party contractors of our agreements with them;
- the failure of third-party contractors to comply with applicable regulatory requirements;
- the possible mislabeling of clinical supplies, potentially resulting in the wrong dose amounts being supplied or active drug or placebo not being properly identified;
- the possibility of clinical supplies not being delivered to clinical sites on time, leading to clinical trial interruptions, or, following approval by regulatory authorities, of drug supplies not being distributed to commercial vendors in a timely manner, resulting in lost sales; and
- the possible misappropriation of our proprietary information, including our trade secrets and know-how.

We do not have control over many aspects of the manufacturing process of, and are dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners, including WuXi, for compliance with GMP regulations for manufacturing both active drug substances and finished drug products. Third-party manufacturers may not be able to comply with U.S. export control regulations, GMP regulations or similar regulatory requirements outside of the United States. If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA, EMA, or others, they will not secure and/or maintain marketing approval for their manufacturing facilities. In addition, we do not have control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance, and qualified personnel. If the FDA, EMA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our product candidates or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain marketing approval for, or market our product candidates, if approved. Our failure, or the failure of our third-party manufacturers, to comply with applicable regulations could result in sanctions being imposed on us, including fines, injunctions, civil penalties, delays, suspension or withdrawal of approvals, license revocation, seizures or recalls of product candidates or drugs, operating restrictions, and criminal prosecutions, any of which could significantly and adversely affect supplies of our drugs and harm our business and results of operations.

Our current and anticipated future dependence upon others for the manufacture of our product candidates or drugs may adversely affect our future profit margins and our ability to commercialize any drugs that receive marketing approval on a timely and competitive basis.

***We may not gain the efficiencies we expect from further scale-up of manufacturing of our product candidates, and our third-party manufacturers may be unable to successfully scale up manufacturing in sufficient quality and quantity for our product candidates, which could delay or prevent the conducting of our clinical trials or the development or commercialization of our other product candidates.***

We expect that our third-party manufacturer, WuXi, will manufacture our product candidates at a scale and on a timeline that is sufficient for us to complete our planned clinical trials and, if we receive marketing approval, to commercialize our product

candidates, including sotigalimab, for the indications we are currently targeting. However, we may consider increasing the batch scale to gain cost efficiencies. If our current manufacturer or any other manufacturer we use is unable to scale-up the manufacture of our product candidates at such time, we may not gain such cost efficiencies and may not realize the benefits that would typically be expected from further scale-up of manufacturing. In addition, quality or other technical issues may arise during scale-up activities. If our third-party manufacturers are unable to successfully scale up the manufacture of our product candidates in sufficient quality and quantity, the development, testing and clinical trials of that product candidate may be delayed or become infeasible, and marketing approval or commercial launch of any resulting product may be delayed or not obtained, which could significantly harm our business.

***Changes in methods of product candidate manufacturing or formulation may result in additional costs or delay.***

As product candidates progress through preclinical and late-stage clinical trials to marketing approval and commercialization, it is common that various aspects of the development program, such as manufacturing methods and formulation, are altered along the way in an effort to optimize yield, manufacturing batch size, minimize costs and achieve consistent quality and results. Such changes carry the risk that they will not achieve these intended objectives. Any of these changes could cause our product candidates to perform differently and affect the results of planned clinical trials or other future clinical trials conducted with the altered materials. The FDA may not approve our third-party manufacturers' processes or facilities. This could delay completion of clinical trials, require the conduct of bridging clinical trials or the repetition of one or more clinical trials, increase clinical trial costs, delay approval of our product candidates, and jeopardize our ability to commercialize our product candidates and generate revenue.

***We have and may in the future enter into additional agreements with third parties under which those parties have or will be granted a license to develop product candidates discovered using our APXiMAB platform. If any such programs are not successful or if disputes arise related to such programs, we may not realize the full commercial benefits from such programs.***

Our APXiMAB platform has enabled the discovery of several product candidates with potential utility in multiple therapeutic areas and has resulted in five programs that have been licensed to third parties, including larger global biopharmaceutical companies and mid-sized regional or China-focused companies. Our likely counterparties for future licensing and collaboration arrangements include large and mid-size pharmaceutical companies, regional and national pharmaceutical companies, and biotechnology companies. Such arrangements generally allow the licensing parties to control the amount and timing of resources that they dedicate to the development or potential commercialization of any product candidates they develop from the technology we have licensed to them, subject to any territorial or field of use restrictions in the license. In addition, Apexigen partnered with ESBATech AG, which was acquired by Alcon and later Novartis to provide rabbit monoclonal antibodies in order to develop product candidates for certain diseases.

We typically negotiate milestone payments and royalty fees from our licensees that will require various levels of success with their product candidate development program in order for us to generate revenue from them. Our ability to generate revenue from these licensing arrangements will depend on our counterparties' abilities to successfully develop and commercialize the product candidates they are developing. We cannot predict the success of any licensing program that we enter into or whether such program will lead to any meaningful milestone or royalty revenue to us.

Licensing programs involving third-party development of product candidates derived from our licensed technology pose the following risks to us:

- counterparties generally have significant discretion, if not total control, in determining the efforts and resources that they will apply to these development efforts;
- counterparties may not properly or adequately obtain, maintain, enforce, or defend intellectual property or proprietary rights relating to our intellectual property or may use our proprietary information in such a way as to expose us to potential litigation or other intellectual property-related proceedings, including proceedings challenging the scope, ownership, validity, and enforceability of our intellectual property;
- counterparties may own or co-own with us intellectual property covering their product candidates, and, in such cases, we typically will not have the exclusive right to commercialize such intellectual property or their product candidates based on the terms of the licensing agreement;
- we may need the cooperation of these counterparties to enforce or defend any intellectual property we contribute to the program;

- counterparties typically will control the interactions with regulatory authorities related to their product candidates, which may impact our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approval of our own product candidates;
- disputes may arise between the counterparties and us that result in the delay or termination of the research, development, or commercialization of our product candidates or research programs or that result in costly litigation or arbitration that diverts management attention and resources;
- counterparties may decide to not pursue development and commercialization of any product candidates that are derived from our licensed technology, or may elect not to continue or renew development or commercialization programs based on clinical trial results, changes in the counterparties' strategic focus or available funding or external factors such as an acquisition that diverts resources or creates competing priorities, or counterparties may elect to fund or commercialize a competing product;
- counterparties could independently develop, or develop with third parties, products that compete directly or indirectly with our product candidates or research programs if the collaborators believe that competitive products are more likely to be successfully developed or can be commercialized under terms that are more economically attractive than ours;
- counterparties may not commit sufficient resources to the marketing and distribution of their product candidates, resulting in lower royalties to us;
- counterparties may grant sublicenses to our technology or undergo a change of control, and the sublicensees or new owners may decide to pursue a strategy with respect to the program which is not in our best interest;
- counterparties may become bankrupt, which may significantly delay our research or development programs, or may cause us to lose access to valuable technology, know-how, or intellectual property of the counterparty relating to our technology in relation to the terms of the licensing agreement;
- if these counterparties do not satisfy their obligations under our agreements with them, or if they terminate our licensing agreements with them, we may be adversely impacted; and
- licensing agreements may not lead to development or commercialization of product candidates in the most efficient manner or at all.

Beovu® is a drug product developed by Novartis covered under the ESBATech Agreement with Apexigen. Novartis obtained approval for Beovu for use in neovascular (wet) age-related macular degeneration ("AMD") and as a treatment of visual impairment due to diabetic macular edema, Novartis continues to develop Beovu for other indications. Under the terms of the ESBATech agreement, Novartis is obligated to pay Apexigen a very low single-digit royalty on worldwide net sales of Beovu. However, Novartis has disputed its obligation to pay royalties to Apexigen under the agreement and continues to pay such royalties under protest. As a result, Apexigen has determined that any sales-based royalties received from Novartis for Beovu are currently fully constrained, and Apexigen has recorded the royalty proceeds as deferred revenue on its consolidated balance sheet, with the amounts totaling \$3.6 million and \$4.6 million as of December 31, 2021 and June 30, 2022, respectively. If the dispute with Novartis regarding their royalty obligations is not settled favorably through negotiation or if the parties escalate the dispute through arbitration or litigation, there is no guarantee that we will recognize such historic and future royalty revenue in part or at all, we may be required to return the cash received to date for the constrained royalty payments, we may not receive future payments, and we may incur substantial costs and distraction of management related to such dispute. While this dispute continues, the Beovu royalty rights will be impaired which will limit our ability to exercise ownership over or monetize this royalty stream, all of which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

Many of the risks relating to product development, intellectual property, regulatory approval, and commercialization described in this "Risk Factors" section also apply to the activities of our licensees and any negative impact on these counterparties and their product development programs may adversely affect us.

***If we seek to establish additional collaborations, but are unable to do so, we may have to alter our development and commercialization plans.***

Our drug development programs and the potential commercialization of our product candidates will require substantial additional cash to fund expenses. We are currently seeking to engage a global collaboration partner to advance the development of

sotigalimab and may seek to selectively form other collaborations to expand our capabilities, potentially accelerate research and development activities, and provide for commercialization activities by third parties.

We face significant competition in seeking appropriate collaborators. Whether we reach a definitive agreement for a collaboration will depend, among other things, upon our assessment of the collaborator's resources and expertise, the terms and conditions of the proposed collaboration, and the proposed collaborator's evaluation of a number of factors. Those factors may include the design or results of clinical trials, the likelihood of approval by the FDA, EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities, the potential market for the subject product candidate, the costs and complexities of manufacturing and delivering such product candidate to patients, the potential of competing drugs, the existence of uncertainty with respect to our ownership of intellectual property and industry and market conditions generally. The potential collaborator may also consider alternative product candidates or technologies for similar indications that may be available to collaborate on and whether such a collaboration could be more attractive than the one with us for our product candidate.

Collaborations are complex and time-consuming to negotiate and document. In addition, there have been a significant number of recent business combinations among large pharmaceutical companies that have resulted in a reduced number of potential future collaborators. Even if we successfully enter into a collaboration, the terms and conditions of that collaboration may restrict us from entering into future agreements on certain terms with potential collaborators.

If and when we seek to enter into collaborations, we may not negotiate collaborations on a timely basis, on acceptable terms, or at all. If we are unable to do so, we may have to curtail the development of a product candidate, reduce or delay its development program or one or more of our other development programs, delay its potential commercialization, or reduce the scope of any sales or marketing activities, or increase our expenditures and undertake development or commercialization activities at our own expense.

***If we engage in acquisitions or strategic partnerships or collaborations, this may increase our capital requirements, dilute our stockholders, cause us to incur debt or assume contingent liabilities, and subject us to other risks.***

We may evaluate various acquisition opportunities and strategic partnerships or collaborations, including licensing or acquiring complementary products, intellectual property rights, technologies or businesses. Any potential acquisition or strategic partnership may entail numerous risks, including:

- exposure to unknown liabilities;
- increased operating expenses and cash requirements;
- the assumption of additional indebtedness or contingent liabilities;
- the issuance of our equity securities;
- assimilation of operations, intellectual property, and products of an acquired company, including costs and difficulties associated with integrating new personnel;
- the diversion of our management's attention from our existing product programs and initiatives in pursuing such a strategic merger or acquisition;
- retention of key employees, the loss of key personnel, and uncertainties in our ability to maintain key business relationships;
- impairment of relationships with key collaborators and other counterparties of any acquired businesses due to changes in management and ownership;
- risks and uncertainties associated with the other party to such a transaction, including the prospects of that party and their existing products or product candidates and marketing approvals; and
- our inability to generate revenue from acquired technology and/or products sufficient to meet our objectives in undertaking the acquisition or even to offset the associated acquisition and maintenance costs.

In addition, if we undertake acquisitions, we may issue dilutive securities, assume or incur debt obligations, incur large one-time expenses, and acquire intangible assets that could result in significant future amortization expense. Moreover, we may not locate

suitable acquisition opportunities, and this inability could impair our ability to grow or obtain access to technology or products that may be important to the development of our business.

## **Other General Risks**

### ***The COVID-19 pandemic could adversely impact our business including our ongoing and planned clinical trials and preclinical research.***

- Over two years after the World Health Organization declared the novel coronavirus disease (“COVID-19”) a pandemic, the COVID-19 pandemic continues to impact worldwide economic activity and financial markets, including a continued rapid increase in inflation rates. Variants of COVID-19 have caused and may continue to cause waves of increased infections. As a result of measures imposed by the governments in affected regions, many commercial activities, businesses and schools have been affected by quarantines and other measures intended to contain the pandemic and subsequent variants of the COVID-19 virus. The extent to which the COVID-19 pandemic ultimately impacts our business will depend on future developments, which are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted, such as the duration of the outbreak, including current and subsequent variants of COVID-19, travel restrictions and social distancing in the United States and other countries, business closures or business disruptions, and the effectiveness of actions taken in the United States and other countries to contain and treat the disease and to address its impact, including on financial markets or otherwise. As the COVID-19 pandemic continues, we may experience disruptions that could severely impact our business, current and planned clinical trials and preclinical research, including:
- delays or difficulties in enrolling and retaining subjects, including elderly subjects, who are at a higher risk of severe illness or death from COVID-19, in our ongoing clinical trials and our future clinical trials;
- delays or difficulties in clinical site initiation, including due to difficulties in staffing and recruiting at clinical sites;
- difficulties interpreting data from our clinical trials due to the possible effects of COVID-19 on subjects;
- diversion of healthcare resources away from the conduct of clinical trials, including the diversion of hospitals serving as our clinical trial sites and hospital staff supporting the conduct of clinical trials;
- interruption of key clinical trial activities, such as clinical trial site monitoring, due to limitations on travel imposed or recommended by federal or state governments, employers and others;
- limitations in resources, including our employees, that would otherwise be focused on the conduct of our business or our current or planned clinical trials or preclinical research, including because of sickness, the desire to avoid contact with large groups of people, or restrictions on movement or access to our facility as a result of government-imposed “shelter in place” or similar working restrictions;
- interruptions, difficulties or delays arising in our existing operations and company culture as a result of some or all of our employees working remotely, including those hired during the COVID-19 pandemic;
- delays in receiving approval from regulatory authorities to initiate our clinical trials;
- interruptions in preclinical studies due to restricted or limited operations at the CROs conducting such studies;
- interruptions or delays in the operations of the FDA or other domestic or foreign regulatory authorities, which may impact review and approval timelines;
- delays in receiving the supplies, materials and services needed to conduct clinical trials and preclinical research;
- changes in regulations as part of a response to the COVID-19 pandemic which may require us to change the ways in which our clinical trials are conducted, which may result in unexpected costs or require us to discontinue the clinical trial altogether;
- interruptions or delays to our development pipeline;



- delays in necessary interactions with regulators, ethics committees and other important agencies and contractors due to limitations in employee resources or forced furlough of government or contractor personnel; and
- refusal of the FDA to accept data from clinical trials in affected geographies outside of the United States.

The COVID-19 pandemic continues to pose a threat on our ability to effectively conduct our business operations as planned and there can be no assurance that we will avoid a material impact on our business from the spread of COVID-19 or its consequences, including disruption to our business and downturns in business sentiment generally or in our industry or due to shutdowns that may be requested or mandated by federal, state and local governmental authorities.

Additionally, certain third parties with whom we engage or may engage, including collaborators, contract organizations, third-party manufacturers, suppliers, clinical trial sites, regulators and other third parties are similarly adjusting their operations and assessing their capacity in light of the COVID-19 pandemic. If these third parties experience shutdowns or continued business disruptions, our ability to conduct our business in the manner and on the timelines presently planned could be materially and negatively impacted. For example, as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic, there could be delays in the procurement of materials or manufacturing supply chains for one or more of our product candidates, which could delay or otherwise impact our preclinical studies and our planned clinical trials. Additionally, all of our preclinical studies are conducted by CROs, which could be discontinued or delayed as a result of the pandemic. It is also likely that the disproportionate impact of COVID-19 on hospitals and clinical sites will have an impact on recruitment and retention for our planned clinical trials. CROs have also made certain adjustments to the operation of such trials in an effort to ensure the monitoring and safety of patients and minimize risks to trial integrity during the pandemic in accordance with the guidance issued by the FDA and may need to make further adjustments in the future that could impact the timing or enrollment of our clinical trials. Many of these adjustments are new and untested, may not be effective, may increase costs and may have unforeseen effects on the enrollment, progress and completion of these trials and the findings from these trials. While we are currently continuing our clinical trials and preclinical studies, we may experience delays in the completion of our clinical trials, preclinical activities and subject enrollment, may need to suspend our clinical trials and may encounter other negative impacts to such trials due to the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic.

Further, as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic, the extent and length of which is uncertain, we may be required to develop and implement additional clinical trial policies and procedures designed to help protect subjects from the COVID-19 virus, which may include using telemedicine visits, remote monitoring of subjects and clinical sites and measures to ensure that data from clinical trials that may be disrupted as a result of the pandemic are collected pursuant to the study protocol and consistent with GCPs. Subjects who may miss scheduled appointments, any interruption in study drug supply, or other consequences that may result in incomplete data being generated during a clinical trial as a result of the pandemic must be adequately documented and justified. For example, in March 2020, the FDA issued a guidance, which the FDA subsequently updated, on conducting clinical trials during the pandemic, which describes a number of considerations for sponsors of clinical trials impacted by the pandemic, including the requirement to include in the clinical trial report contingency measures implemented to manage the trial, and any disruption of the trial as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic; a list of all subjects affected by the COVID-19-pandemic related study disruption by unique subject identifier and by investigational site and a description of how the individual's participation was altered; and analyses and corresponding discussions that address the impact of implemented contingency measures (e.g., participant discontinuation from investigational product and/or study, alternative procedures used to collect critical safety and/or efficacy data) on the safety and efficacy results reported for the clinical trial. In June 2020, the FDA also issued a guidance on good manufacturing practice considerations for responding to COVID-19 infection in employees in drug product manufacturing, including recommendations for manufacturing controls to prevent contamination of drugs.

The COVID-19 pandemic continues to evolve. While the extent of the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our business and financial results is uncertain, a continued and prolonged public health crisis such as the COVID-19 pandemic could have a material negative impact on our business, financial condition and operating results.

To the extent the COVID-19 pandemic adversely affects our business and financial results, it may also have the effect of heightening many of the other risks described in this section and in this “*Risk Factors*” section.

***Our internal computer systems, and those used by our third-party research institution collaborators, other contractors, and consultants, may fail or suffer other breakdowns, cyberattacks or information security breaches and incidents that could compromise the confidentiality, integrity and availability of such systems and data, result in material disruptions of our development programs and business operations, risk disclosure of confidential, financial or proprietary information, and affect our reputation.***

Despite the implementation of security measures, our internal computer systems, and those used by our third-party research institution collaborators and other contractors or consultants, may be vulnerable to damage, compromise, disruption and unauthorized

access owing to a variety of causes, including system malfunction, natural disasters, terrorism, war and telecommunication and electrical failure, cyber-attacks by malicious third parties, and inadvertent or intentional actions by our employees, our third-party research institution collaborators, other contractors and consultants, and/or other third parties. As the cyber-threat landscape evolves, attacks are growing in frequency, sophistication, and intensity, and are becoming increasingly difficult to detect. These risks are increased given several of our personnel and those of our collaborators, contractors and consultants working remotely, and threats of cyberattacks by Russia and affiliated actors in response to the war in Ukraine. Such attacks could include the use of key loggers or other harmful and virulent malware, including ransomware or other denials of service, and can be deployed through malicious websites, the use of social engineering, and/or other means. If a breakdown, cyberattack, or other information security breach or incident were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations or any loss, corruption, or unavailability of data, or if any of the foregoing were perceived to have occurred, it could result in loss or misappropriation of confidential information, including trade secrets, other intellectual property, or financial information, and a material disruption of our development programs and our business operations, any of which could lead to significant delays or setbacks in our research and other further development and commercialization of our product candidates. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed, ongoing, or future clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data.

Likewise, we rely on our third-party research institution collaborators for research and development of our product candidates and other third parties for the manufacture of our product candidates and to conduct clinical trials, and similar events relating to their computer systems could also have a material adverse effect on our business. Any disruption or security breach or incident that we or our collaborators and other contractors and consultants suffer or are perceived to suffer, including any such disruption, breach or incident resulting in a loss of, or damage to, data or systems, or inappropriate disclosure, access, loss, or other processing of confidential, financial, proprietary or personal information, including data related to our personnel, could result in loss, disclosure or other unauthorized processing of confidential, financial, proprietary, and personal information, could delay further development and commercialization of our product candidates, could harm our reputation directly, compel us to comply with federal and/or state breach notification laws and foreign law equivalents, subject us to mandatory corrective action, and otherwise subject us to liability under laws and regulations that protect the privacy and security of personal information, which could result in significant legal and financial exposure and reputational damages that could potentially have an adverse effect on our business. There can be no assurance that we or our collaborators, other contractors and consultants, or other business counterparties will be successful in efforts to detect, prevent, or otherwise respond to security breaches or incidents, or fully recover systems or data from all breakdowns, service interruptions, attacks, or other security breaches or incidents.

Further, notification and follow-up actions related to a security incident could impact our reputation and cause us to incur significant costs, including legal expenses and remediation costs. We expect to incur significant costs in an effort to detect and prevent security breaches and incidents, and we may face increased costs and requirements to expend substantial resources in the event of an actual or perceived disruption or security breach or other security incident.

Our insurance coverage may not be adequate to compensate us for the potential losses arising from any such disruption in or, failure or security breach or incident of or impacting, our systems or third-party systems where information important to our business operations or commercial development is stored or processed. In addition, such insurance may not be available to us in the future on economically reasonable terms, or at all. Further, our insurance may not cover all claims made against us and could have high deductibles in any event, and defending a suit, regardless of its merit, could be costly and divert attention of management and technical personnel.

***Our operations are subject to the effects of a rising rate of inflation.***

The United States has recently experienced historically high levels of inflation. According to the U.S. Department of Labor, the annual inflation rate for the United States was approximately 8.5% for the 12 months ended July 31, 2022. If the inflation rate continues to increase, for example due to increases in the costs of labor and supplies, it will affect our expenses, such as employee compensation and research and development charges. Research and development expenses account for a significant portion of our operating expenses. Such increased charges may not be readily recoverable during the period of time that we are bringing the product candidates to market. Additionally, the United States is experiencing an acute workforce shortage, which in turn, has created a very competitive wage environment that may increase our operating costs. To the extent inflation results in rising interest rates and has other adverse effects on the market, it may adversely affect our consolidated financial condition and results of operations.

***Business disruptions could seriously harm our future revenue and financial condition and increase our costs and expenses.***

Our operations, and those of our third-party research institution and pharmaceutical company collaborators, manufacturers, and other contractors and consultants, could be subject to earthquakes, power shortages, telecommunications failures, water shortages, floods, hurricanes, typhoons, fires, extreme weather conditions, medical or public health crises, such as the COVID-19 pandemic, and other natural or man-made disasters or business interruptions, including terrorism and war. In addition, for some of our clinical trials,

we rely on third-party research institution collaborators for conducting research and development of our product candidates, and they may be affected by government shutdowns or withdrawn funding. The occurrence of any of these business disruptions could seriously harm our operations and financial condition and increase our costs and expenses. We rely on third-party manufacturers to produce and process our product candidates. Our ability to obtain clinical supplies of our product candidates could be disrupted if the operations of these suppliers are affected by a man-made or natural disaster or other business interruption.

The majority of our operations, including our corporate headquarters, are located in the San Francisco Bay Area of California. Damage or extended periods of interruption to our corporate, development or research facilities due to fire, natural disaster, power loss, communications failure, unauthorized entry or other events could cause us to cease or delay development of some or all of our product candidates. Although we maintain customary insurance coverage, our insurance might not cover all losses under such circumstances and our business may be seriously harmed by such delays and interruption.

In February 2022, Russia commenced a war against Ukraine. The sanctions announced by the U.S. and other countries against Russia as a result include restrictions on selling or importing goods, services, or technology in or from affected regions and travel bans and asset freezes impacting connected individuals and political, military, business, and financial organizations in Russia. The United States and other countries could impose wider sanctions and take other actions should the conflict further escalate. It is not possible to predict the broader consequences of this conflict, which could include further sanctions, embargoes, regional instability, threats of cyberattacks, prolonged periods of higher inflation, geopolitical shifts, and adverse effects on macroeconomic conditions, currency exchange rates, and financial markets, all of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

***We are subject to governmental export and import controls that could impair our ability to compete in international markets or subject us to liability if we violate these controls.***

Our products may be subject to U.S. export control laws and regulations including the Export Administration Regulations (“EAR”) and trade and economic sanctions maintained by the Office of Foreign Assets Control (“OFAC”). As such, an export license may be required to export, reexport, or transfer our products to certain countries, end-users, and end-uses. If we were to fail to comply with such U.S. export controls laws and regulations, U.S. economic sanctions, or other similar laws, we could be subject to both civil and criminal penalties, including substantial fines, possible incarceration for employees and managers for willful violations, and the possible loss of our export or import privileges. Obtaining the necessary export license for a particular sale or offering may not be possible and may be time-consuming and may result in the delay or loss of sales opportunities. Furthermore, U.S. export control laws and economic sanctions prohibit the export of products to certain U.S. embargoed or sanctioned countries, governments, and persons, as well as for prohibited end-uses. Even though we take precautions to ensure that we and our partners comply with all relevant export control laws and regulations, any failure by us or our partners, including third party manufacturers, to comply with such laws and regulations could have negative consequences for us, including reputational harm, government investigations and penalties.

Changes in our products or changes in export and import regulations in such countries may create delays in the introduction of our products into international markets, prevent our end-customers with international operations from deploying our products globally or, in some cases, prevent or delay the export or import of our products to certain countries, governments or persons altogether. Any change in export or import laws or regulations, economic sanctions or related legislation, shift in the enforcement or scope of existing export, import or sanctions laws or regulations, or change in the countries, governments, persons, or technologies targeted by such export, import or sanctions laws or regulations, could result in decreased use of our products by, or in our decreased ability to export or sell our products to, existing or potential end-customers with international operations. Any decreased use of our products or limitation on our ability to export to or sell our products in international markets could adversely affect our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

***Any legal proceedings or claims against us could be costly and time-consuming to defend and could harm our reputation regardless of the outcome.***

We may in the future become subject to legal proceedings and claims that arise in the ordinary course of business, including intellectual property, collaboration, licensing agreement, product liability, employment, class action, whistleblower and other litigation claims, and governmental and other regulatory investigations and proceedings. Such matters can be time-consuming, divert management’s attention and resources, cause us to incur significant expenses or liability, or require us to change our business practices. In addition, the expense of litigation and the timing of this expense from period to period are difficult to estimate, subject to change, and could adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations. Because of the potential risks, expenses, and uncertainties of litigation, we may, from time to time, settle disputes, even where we have meritorious claims or defenses, by agreeing to settlement agreements. Any of the foregoing could adversely affect our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

***Our ability to use our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes may be limited.***

As of December 31, 2021, Apexigen had federal net operating loss (“NOL”) carryforwards totaling \$129.6 million. Of the \$129.6 million, \$101.4 million are carried forward indefinitely, but are subject to an 80% of taxable income limitation, and \$28.3 million which will begin to expire in 2033, if not utilized. As of December 31, 2021, Apexigen had California NOL carryforwards of \$64.5 million, which will begin to expire in 2035, if not utilized. Under Sections 382 and 383 of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, if a corporation undergoes an “ownership change” (generally defined as a greater than 50-percentage-point cumulative change (by value) in the equity ownership of certain stockholders over a rolling three-year period), the corporation’s ability to use its pre-change NOL carryforwards and other pre-change tax attributes to offset its post-change taxable income or taxes may be limited. As a result of previous financing transactions and/ or in connection with this Business Combination, Apexigen may have experienced, or we may experience, such an ownership change. We may also experience ownership changes in the future as a result of subsequent shifts in our stock ownership, some of which are outside our control. As a result, our ability to use our pre-change NOL carryforwards and other pre-change tax attributes to offset post-change taxable income or taxes may be subject to limitation.

***Changes in tax law could materially impact our business, results of operations and financial condition.***

Changes to U.S. federal, state, and local, and foreign tax laws that may be enacted in the future could impact the tax treatment of our business operations. For example, the United States recently enacted the Inflation Reduction Act of 2022, which implements, among other changes, a 1% excise tax on certain stock buybacks. In addition, the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development has proposed a number of tax provisions that could impact our business if we expand internationally. Further, on January 1, 2022, a provision of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 went into effect that eliminates the option to deduct domestic research and development costs in the year incurred and instead requires taxpayers to amortize such costs over five years. Such changes, among others, may adversely affect our effective tax rate, results of operation and general business condition.

***Risks Related to Ownership of Our Common Stock***

***The price of shares of common stock may be volatile or may decline regardless of our operating performance. You may lose some or all of your investment.***

The trading price of shares of our common stock is volatile. The stock market recently has experienced extreme volatility. This volatility often has been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of particular companies. You may not be able to resell your shares at an attractive price due to a number of factors such as those listed in “*Risks Related to Our Business, Financial Condition, and Need for Additional Capital*” and the following:

- the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on our financial condition and the results of operations;
- our operating and financial performance and prospects;
- our quarterly or annual earnings or those of other companies in our industry compared to market expectations;
- conditions that impact demand for our products and/or services;
- future announcements concerning our business, our clients’ businesses or our competitors’ businesses;
- the public’s reaction to our press releases, other public announcements and filings with the SEC;
- the market’s reaction to our reduced disclosure and other requirements as a result of being an “emerging growth company” under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act (the “JOBS Act”);
- the size of our public float;
- coverage by or changes in financial estimates by securities analysts or failure to meet their expectations;
- market and industry perception of our success, or lack thereof, in pursuing our growth strategy;
- strategic actions by us or our competitors, such as acquisitions or restructurings;
- changes in laws or regulations which adversely affect our industry or us;

- privacy and data protection laws, privacy or data breaches, or the loss of data;
- changes in accounting standards, policies, guidance, interpretations or principles;
- changes in senior management or key personnel;
- issuances, exchanges or sales, or expected issuances, exchanges or sales of our capital stock;
- changes in our dividend policy;
- adverse resolution of new or pending litigation against us; and
- changes in general market, economic and political conditions in the United States and global economies or financial markets, including those resulting from the rising rate of inflation, natural disasters, terrorist attacks, acts of war and responses to such events.

These broad market and industry factors may materially reduce the market price of shares of our common stock, regardless of our operating performance. In addition, price volatility may be greater if the public float and trading volume of our common stock is low. As a result, you may suffer a loss on your investment.

In the past, following periods of market volatility, stockholders have instituted securities class action litigation. If we were involved in securities litigation, it could have a substantial cost and divert resources and the attention of executive management from our business regardless of the outcome of such litigation.

***There can be no assurance that we will be able to comply with the continued listing standards of Nasdaq.***

If Nasdaq delists our shares from trading on its exchange for failure to meet the listing standards, we and our stockholders could face significant material adverse consequences including:

- a limited availability of market quotations for our securities;
- reduced liquidity for our securities;
- a determination that our common stock is a “penny stock” which will require brokers trading in our common stock to adhere to more stringent rules, possibly resulting in a reduced level of trading activity in the secondary trading market for shares of our common stock;
- a limited amount of analyst coverage; and
- a decreased ability to issue additional securities or obtain additional financing in the future.

***Certain of our warrants are accounted for as a warrant liability and are recorded at fair value upon issuance with changes in fair value each period reported in earnings, which may have an adverse effect on the market price of our common stock.***

As of the Closing Date, we had 123,500 private placement warrants outstanding. These warrants will become exercisable 30 days after the Closing Date provided that we have an effective registration statement under the Securities Act covering the shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise and a current prospectus relating to them is available and such shares are registered, qualified or exempt from registration under the securities, or blue sky, laws of the state of residence of the holder (or we permit holders to exercise their warrants on a cashless basis under certain circumstances). Once the private placement warrants become exercisable, we may redeem outstanding warrants in certain circumstances. Under GAAP, we are required to evaluate contingent exercise provisions of these warrants and then their settlement provisions to determine whether they should be accounted for as a warrant liability or as equity. Any settlement amount not equal to the difference between the fair value of a fixed number of our equity shares and a fixed monetary amount precludes these warrants from being considered indexed to its own stock, and therefore, from being accounted for as equity. As a result of the provision that the private placement warrants, when held by someone other than the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees, will be redeemable by us, the requirements for accounting for these warrants as equity are not satisfied. Therefore, we are required to account for these private placement warrants as a warrant liability and record (a) that liability at fair value, and (b) any subsequent changes in fair value as of the end of each period for which earnings are reported. The impact of changes in fair value on earnings may have an adverse effect on the market price of our common stock.

***Effective internal controls are necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and prevent fraud.***

If we identify any material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting, any such identified material weakness could limit our ability to prevent or detect a misstatement of our accounts or disclosures that could result in a material misstatement of our annual or interim consolidated financial statements. In such case, we may be unable to maintain compliance with securities law requirements regarding timely filing of periodic reports in addition to applicable stock exchange listing requirements, investors may lose confidence in our financial reporting and our stock price may decline as a result. We cannot assure you that the measures we have taken to date, or any measures we may take in the future, will be sufficient to avoid potential future material weaknesses.

***We do not intend to pay dividends on shares of our common stock for the foreseeable future.***

We currently intend to retain all available funds and any future earnings to fund the development and growth of our business. As a result, we do not anticipate declaring or paying any cash dividends on shares of our common stock in the foreseeable future. Any decision to declare and pay dividends in the future will be made at the discretion of our Board and will depend on, among other things, our business prospects, results of operations, financial condition, cash requirements and availability, certain restrictions related to our indebtedness, industry trends and other factors that our Board may deem relevant. Any such decision will also be subject to compliance with contractual restrictions and covenants in the agreements governing our current and future indebtedness. In addition, we may incur additional indebtedness, the terms of which may further restrict or prevent us from paying dividends on our common stock. As a result, you may have to sell some or all of your shares of our common stock after price appreciation in order to generate cash flow from your investment, which you may not be able to do. Our inability or decision not to pay dividends, particularly when others in our industry have elected to do so, could also adversely affect the market price of shares of our common stock.

***If securities analysts do not publish research or reports about us, or if they issue unfavorable commentary about us or our industry or downgrade our common stock, the price of shares of our common stock could decline.***

The trading market for shares of our common stock will depend in part on the research and reports that third-party securities analysts publish about us and the industries in which we operate. We may be unable or slow to attract research coverage and if one or more analysts cease coverage of us, the price and trading volume of our securities would likely be negatively impacted. If any of the analysts that may cover us change their recommendation regarding our securities adversely, or provide more favorable relative recommendations about our competitors, the price of our securities would likely decline. If any analyst that may cover us ceases covering us or fails to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause the price or trading volume of our securities to decline. Moreover, if one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrades our common stock, or if our reporting results do not meet their expectations, the market price of shares of our common stock could decline.

***Our issuance of additional shares of common stock could make it difficult for another company to acquire us, may dilute your ownership of us and could adversely affect our stock price.***

We filed a registration statement with the SEC on Form S-8 providing for the registration of shares of our common stock issued or reserved for issuance under our 2020 Plan, 2022 Plan and 2022 ESPP. Subject to the satisfaction of vesting conditions and the expiration of any applicable lockup agreements, shares registered under the registration statement on Form S-8 are available for resale immediately in the public market without restriction. In addition, under the purchase agreement dated March 17, 2022 that we entered into with Lincoln Park (the “Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement”), we have the right to direct Lincoln Park to purchase an aggregate of up to \$50,000,000 of our common stock from time to time, subject to certain limitations contained in the Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement. Pursuant to the Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement, we issued to Lincoln Park 150,000 shares of our common stock on the Closing Date, 500,000 shares of our common stock 90 calendar days after the Closing Date and 616,684 shares of common stock pursuant to purchases we directed under the Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement.

From time to time in the future, we may also issue additional shares of common stock or securities convertible into common stock pursuant to a variety of transactions, including acquisitions. The issuance by us of additional shares of common stock or securities convertible into common stock would dilute your ownership of us and the sale of a significant amount of such shares in the public market could adversely affect prevailing market prices of shares of our common stock.

In the future, we expect to obtain financing or to further increase our capital resources by issuing additional shares of our capital stock or offering debt or other equity securities, including senior or subordinated notes, debt securities convertible into equity, or shares of preferred stock. Issuing additional shares of our capital stock, other equity securities, or securities convertible into equity may dilute the economic and voting rights of our existing stockholders, reduce the market price of shares of our common stock, or both. Debt securities convertible into equity could be subject to adjustments in the conversion ratio pursuant to which certain events may increase the number of equity securities issuable upon conversion. Preferred stock, if issued, could have a preference with respect to liquidating distributions or a preference with respect to dividend payments that could limit our ability to pay dividends to the

holders of our common stock. Our decision to issue securities in any future offering will depend on market conditions and other factors beyond our control, which may adversely affect the amount, timing or nature of our future offerings. As a result, holders of our common stock bear the risk that our future offerings may reduce the market price of shares of our common stock and dilute their percentage ownership. See “*Description of Securities.*”

***Sales of our common stock, or the perception of such sales, by us or our existing stockholders in the public market could cause the market price for our common stock to decline and certain Selling Securityholders still may receive significant proceeds.***

The sale of substantial amounts of shares of our common stock in the public market, or the perception that such sales could occur, could harm the prevailing market price of shares of our common stock. These sales, or the possibility that these sales may occur, also might make it more difficult for us to sell equity securities in the future at a time and at a price that we deem appropriate. Resales of our common stock may cause the trading price of our securities to drop significantly.

Subject to the expiration of any applicable lock-up agreements, all shares issued as merger consideration in the Business Combination are freely tradable without registration under the Securities Act and without restriction by persons other than our “affiliates” (as defined under Rule 144), including our directors, executive officers and other affiliates, and certain other former Apexigen stockholders.

Shares held by certain of our stockholders will be eligible for resale, subject to, in the case of certain stockholders, volume, manner of sale and other limitations under Rule 144. In addition, pursuant to the Registration Rights and Lock-Up Agreement that we entered into with certain stockholders in connection with the Business Combination, certain of our stockholders have the right, subject to certain conditions, to require us to register the sale of their shares of common stock under the Securities Act, and pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement that we entered into with Lincoln Park, we have an obligation to register the shares of our common stock issued to Lincoln Park pursuant to the Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement under the Securities Act. By exercising their registration rights and selling a large number of shares, these stockholders could cause the prevailing market price of shares of our common stock to decline.

As restrictions on resale end or if these stockholders exercise their registration rights, the market price of shares of our common stock could drop significantly if the holders of these shares sell them or are perceived by the market as intending to sell them. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to raise additional funds through future offerings of shares of our common stock or other securities.

In addition, the shares of our common stock reserved for future issuance under the 2022 Plan and 2022 ESPP will become eligible for sale in the public market as those shares are issued, subject to provisions relating to various vesting agreements, lock-up agreements and, in some cases, limitations on volume and manner of sale applicable to affiliates under Rule 144, as applicable.

***Our management team has limited experience in operating a public company.***

Our executive officers have limited experience in the management of a publicly traded company. Our management team may not successfully or effectively manage its transition to a public company that will be subject to significant regulatory oversight and reporting obligations under federal securities laws. For example, we failed to timely file our Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2022. Their limited experience in dealing with the increasingly complex laws pertaining to public companies could be a significant disadvantage in that it is likely that an increasing amount of their time may be devoted to these activities which will result in less time being devoted to the management and growth of the company. We may not have adequate personnel with the appropriate level of knowledge, experience, and training in the accounting policies, practices or internal controls over financial reporting required of public companies in the United States. The development and implementation of the standards and controls necessary for us to achieve the level of accounting standards required of a public company in the United States may require costs greater than expected. It is possible that we will be required to expand our employee base and hire additional employees to support our operations as a public company which will increase our operating costs in future periods.

***As a public reporting company, we are subject to rules and regulations established from time to time by the SEC regarding our internal control over financial reporting.***

We are a public reporting company subject to the rules and regulations established from time to time by the SEC and Nasdaq. These rules and regulations require, among other things that we establish and periodically evaluate procedures with respect to our internal control over financial reporting. Reporting obligations as a public company are likely to place a considerable strain on our financial and management systems, processes and controls, as well as on our personnel.

In addition, as a public company, we are required to document and test our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act so that our management can certify as to the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. If we are not able to implement the requirements of Section 404, including any additional requirements once we are no longer an emerging growth company, in a timely manner or with adequate compliance, we may not be able to assess whether our internal control over financial reporting are effective, which may subject us to adverse regulatory consequences and could harm investor confidence and the market price of our common stock.

Additionally, once we are no longer an emerging growth company, we will be required to comply with the independent registered public accounting firm attestation requirement on our internal control over financial reporting. We will be an “emerging growth company” until the earlier of (1) the last day of the fiscal year (a) following February 2, 2026, the fifth anniversary of the BCAC IPO, (b) in which we have total annual gross revenue of at least \$1.07 billion or (c) in which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer, which means the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the last business day of our prior second fiscal quarter, and (2) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt during the prior three-year period. Until we cease being an emerging growth company stockholders will not have the benefit of an independent assessment of the effectiveness of our internal control environment.

***As an “emerging growth company,” we cannot be certain if the reduced disclosure requirements applicable to “emerging growth companies” will make our common stock less attractive to investors.***

As an “emerging growth company,” we may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not “emerging growth companies,” including not being required to obtain an assessment of the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting from our independent registered public accounting firm pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a non-binding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. In addition, the JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards, which we have elected to do.

We cannot predict if investors will find our common stock less attractive because we will rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active market for our common stock, our share price may be more volatile and the price at which our securities trade could be less than if we did not use these exemptions.

***Anti-takeover provisions in our governing documents and under Delaware law could make an acquisition of us more difficult, limit attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management and limit the market price of our common stock.***

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and bylaws and Delaware law contain provisions that could have the effect of rendering more difficult, delaying, or preventing an acquisition deemed undesirable by our Board. Among other things, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and/or bylaws include the following provisions:

- a staggered board, which means that our Board is classified into three classes of directors with staggered three-year terms and directors are only able to be removed from office for cause;
- limitations on convening special stockholder meetings, which could make it difficult for our stockholders to adopt desired governance changes;
- a prohibition on stockholder action by written consent, which means that our stockholders are only be able to take action at a meeting of stockholders and are not able to take action by written consent for any matter;
- a forum selection clause, which means certain litigation against us can only be brought in Delaware;
- the authorization of undesignated preferred stock, the terms of which may be established and shares of which may be issued without further action by our stockholders; and
- advance notice procedures, which apply for stockholders to nominate candidates for election as directors or to bring matters before an annual meeting of stockholders.

These provisions, alone or together, could delay or prevent hostile takeovers and changes in control or changes in our management. As a Delaware corporation, we are also subject to provisions of Delaware law, including Section 203 of the DGCL,



which prevents interested stockholders, such as certain stockholders holding more than 15% of our outstanding common stock, from engaging in certain business combinations unless (i) prior to the time such stockholder became an interested stockholder, the Board approved the transaction that resulted in such stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, (ii) upon consummation of the transaction that resulted in such stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of the common stock, or (iii) following Board approval, such business combination receives the approval of the holders of at least two-thirds of our outstanding common stock not held by such interested stockholder.

Any provision of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and/or bylaws or Delaware law that has the effect of delaying, preventing or deterring a change in control could limit the opportunity for our stockholders to receive a premium for their shares of our common stock and could also affect the price that some investors are willing to pay for our common stock.

***Our bylaws provide that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware is the sole and exclusive forum for substantially all disputes between us and our stockholders, which could limit our stockholders' ability to obtain a favorable judicial forum for disputes with us or our directors, officers, or employees.***

Our amended and restated bylaws provide that, unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the (i) Court of Chancery (the "Chancery Court") of the State of Delaware (or, in the event that the Chancery Court does not have jurisdiction, the federal district court for the District of Delaware or other state courts of the State of Delaware) shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be the sole and exclusive forum for: (A) any derivative action, suit or proceeding brought on our behalf; (B) any action, suit or proceeding asserting a claim of breach of fiduciary duty owed by any of our directors, officers, or stockholders to us or to our stockholders; (C) any action, suit or proceeding asserting a claim arising pursuant to the DGCL, the our amended and restated charter or our amended and restated bylaws; or (D) any action, suit or proceeding asserting a claim governed by the internal affairs doctrine; and (ii) subject to the foregoing, the federal district courts of the United States of America shall be the exclusive forum for the resolution of any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, such forum selection provisions shall not apply to suits brought to enforce any liability or duty created by the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts of the United States have exclusive jurisdiction. The choice of forum provision may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers, or other employees, which may discourage such lawsuits against us and our directors, officers, and other employees. Alternatively, if a court were to find the choice of forum provision contained in our bylaws to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such action in other jurisdictions, which could harm our business, results of operations, and financial condition.

Additionally, Section 22 of the Securities Act creates concurrent jurisdiction for federal and state courts over all suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Securities Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. As noted above, our amended and restated bylaws provide that the federal district courts of the United States of America shall have jurisdiction over any action arising under the Securities Act. Accordingly, there is uncertainty as to whether a court would enforce such provision. Our stockholders will not be deemed to have waived our compliance with the federal securities laws and the rules and regulations thereunder.

**Item 2. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds.**

On March 17, 2022, we entered into subscription agreements with certain investors for a private investment in public equity (“PIPE”) transaction for \$14.5 million. On July 29, 2022, we consummated the PIPE transaction. The PIPE investors received an aggregate of 1,452,000 units (“PIPE Units”) at a purchase price of \$10.00 per unit. Each PIPE Unit consists of one share of common stock and one-half of one warrant. Each whole warrant entitles the PIPE Investor to purchase one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share during the period commencing 30 days after July 29, 2022 and terminating on the five-year anniversary of July 29, 2022.

We also entered into a committed purchase agreement with Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC on March 17, 2022. On July 29, 2022, we issued 150,000 shares of common stock to Lincoln Park as an initial fee for its commitment to purchase shares of our common stock under the committed investment agreement. During the three-month period ended September 30, 2022, we directed Lincoln Park to purchase 616,684 shares of common stock under the committed purchase agreement, which resulted in proceeds of \$2.5 million to us.

In August 2022, we received approximately \$17,000 from the exercise of options to purchase 3,628 shares of common stock.

Each of the foregoing issuances was made in a transaction not involving a public offering pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act in reliance upon Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act, or Regulation D or Regulation S promulgated under the Securities Act.

The proceeds from the aforementioned transactions were primarily used to pay the transaction expenses relating to the Business Combination. The remaining proceeds have been or will be used for general corporate purposes.

**Item 3. Defaults Upon Senior Securities.**

None.

**Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures.**

Not applicable.

**Item 5. Other Information.**

None.

**Item 6. Exhibits.**

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Description</b>
10.1	Apexigen, Inc. 2022 Equity Incentive Plan and forms of agreement thereunder (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to the Current Report on Form 8-K filed by the Registrant on August 4, 2022).
10.2	Apexigen, Inc. 2022 Employee Stock Purchase Plan and forms of agreement thereunder (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6 to the Current Report on Form 8-K filed by the Registrant on August 4, 2022).
31.1*	Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Rules 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
31.2*	Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to Rules 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
32.1*	Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
32.2*	Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
101.INS	Inline XBRL Instance Document – the instance document does not appear in the Interactive Data File because XBRL tags are embedded within the Inline XBRL document.
101.SCH	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document
101.CAL	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document
101.DEF	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document
101.LAB	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document
101.PRE	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document
104	Cover Page Interactive Data File (embedded within the Inline XBRL document)

---

\* Filed herewith.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

### **Apexigen, Inc.**

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ Xiaodong Yang

\_\_\_\_\_  
Xiaodong Yang, M.D., Ph.D.  
President and Chief Executive Officer

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ William Duke, Jr.

\_\_\_\_\_  
William Duke, Jr.  
Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO RULES 13a-14(a) AND 15d-14(a)  
UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 302 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

I, Xiaodong Yang, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2022 of Apexigen, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officers and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the registrant and have:
  - a. Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b. [Paragraph omitted pursuant to SEC Release Nos. 33-8238/34-47986 and 33-8392/34-49313];
  - c. Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d. Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officers and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a. All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b. Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal controls over financial reporting.

**Apexigen, Inc.**

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ Xiaodong Yang

Xiaodong Yang, M.D., Ph.D.  
President and Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO RULES 13a-14(a) AND 15d-14(a)  
UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 302 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

I, William Duke, Jr., certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2022 of Apexigen, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officers and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the registrant and have:
  - a. Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b. [Paragraph omitted pursuant to SEC Release Nos. 33-8238/34-47986 and 33-8392/34-49313];
  - c. Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d. Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officers and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a. All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b. Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal controls over financial reporting.

**Apexigen, Inc.**

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ William Duke, Jr.

William Duke, Jr.  
Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Quarterly Report of Apexigen, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2022, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, Xiaodong Yang, President, Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) the Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ Xiaodong Yang

\_\_\_\_\_  
Xiaodong Yang, M.D., Ph.D.  
President and Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer)

---

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Quarterly Report of Apexigen, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2022, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, William Duke, Jr., Chief Financial Officer, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) the Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: November 14, 2022

By: /s/ William Duke, Jr.

\_\_\_\_\_  
William Duke, Jr.  
Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)



**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 8-K**

**CURRENT REPORT**  
**Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d)**  
**of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

**Date of Report (Date of earliest event reported): January 23, 2023**

**Apexigen, Inc.**  
**(Exact name of Registrant as Specified in Its Charter)**

**Delaware**  
**(State or Other Jurisdiction**  
**of Incorporation)**

**001-39488**  
**(Commission**  
**File Number)**

**85-1260244**  
**(IRS Employer**  
**Identification No.)**

**75 Shoreway Road**  
**Suite C**  
**San Carlos, California**  
**(Address of Principal Executive Offices)**

**94070**  
**(Zip Code)**

**Registrant's Telephone Number, Including Area Code: (650) 931-6236**  
**(Former Name or Former Address, if Changed Since Last Report)**

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K filing is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions:

- ☐ Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)
- ☐ Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)
- ☐ Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b))
- ☐ Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c))

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, \$0.0001 par value per share	APGN	The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC
Warrants, each whole warrant exercisable for one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share	APGNW	The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (§ 230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (§ 240.12b-2 of this chapter).

Emerging growth company ☒

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐

### **Item 1.01. Entry into a Material Definitive Agreement.**

On January 23, 2023, Apexigen, Inc. (the “Company”) entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”) with certain institutional and accredited investors (the “Investors”), pursuant to which the Company has agreed to issue and sell to the Investors in a private placement (the “Private Placement”), an aggregate of 1,995,708 shares of the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“Common Stock”) and accompanying warrants (the “Warrants”) to purchase an aggregate of up to 1,995,708 additional shares of common stock at a price of \$1.40 per share and accompanying Warrant. The exercise price of the Warrants is \$1.40 per share. The Warrants are exercisable at any time on or after the date that is six months following the date of the issuance of the Warrants and will expire five and one-half years from the date of issuance. None of the Investors elected to receive the pre-funded warrants available under the Purchase Agreement in lieu of shares of Common Stock. Brookline Capital Markets, a division of Arcadia Securities, LLC, has acted as the Company’s placement agent for the Private Placement (the “Placement Agent”).

The Warrants to be issued in the Private Placement will provide that a holder of Warrants will not have the right to exercise any portion of its Warrants if such holder, together with its affiliates, would beneficially own in excess of 4.99% of the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to such exercise (the “Beneficial Ownership Limitation”); provided, however, that each holder may increase or decrease the Beneficial Ownership Limitation by giving notice to the Company; but not to any percentage in excess of 9.99%.

Subject to customary closing conditions, the Company expects the Private Placement to close on or about January 30, 2023. The Company expects to receive aggregate gross proceeds of approximately \$2.8 million before deducting placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by the Company. The Company expects the net proceeds from the Private Placement to be used for working capital purposes.

The Purchase Agreement is incorporated herein by reference, but only to provide information regarding the terms of the Purchase Agreement and not to provide any other factual information regarding the Company or its business, and it should be read in conjunction with the disclosures in the Company’s periodic reports and other filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”).

The Company also entered into a letter agreement (the “Engagement Agreement”) with the Placement Agent, pursuant to which the Placement Agent agreed to serve as the exclusive placement agent for the Company in connection with the Private Placement. The Company agreed to pay the Placement Agent a cash fee equal to 7% of the gross proceeds from the sale of the shares and accompanying Warrants in the Private Placement. The Placement Agent will also receive warrants to purchase up to 139,699 shares of Common Stock (the “Placement Agent Warrants”) on substantially the same terms as the Warrants except that the Placement Agent Warrants have an exercise price equal to 125% of the price paid by Investors in the Private Placement, or \$1.75 per share of Common Stock.

On or prior to the closing of the Private Placement, the Company will also enter into a registration rights agreement (the “Registration Rights Agreement”) with the Investors, pursuant to which, among other things, the Company will agree to prepare and file with the SEC a registration statement to register for resale the shares of Common Stock sold in the Private Placement and the shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants described above. The foregoing descriptions of the material terms of the Purchase Agreement, the Warrants, the Placement Agent Warrants, and the Registration Rights Agreement are qualified in their entirety by reference to the full text of the Purchase Agreement, the Form of Warrant, the Form of Placement Agent Warrant, and the Registration Rights Agreement, which are filed as Exhibits 10.1, 4.1, 4.2, and 10.2, respectively, to this Current Report on Form 8-K and incorporated herein by reference.

### **Item 3.02. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities.**

Pursuant to the Private Placement described in Item 1.01 of this Current Report on Form 8-K, which description is incorporated by reference into this Item 3.02 in its entirety, the Company will sell the securities to “accredited investors,” as that term is defined in the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), in reliance on the exemption from registration afforded by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and Rule 506 of Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act and corresponding provisions of state securities or “blue sky” laws. The Investors represented that they are acquiring the securities for investment only and not with a view towards, or for resale in connection with, the public sale or distribution thereof. Accordingly, the securities have not been registered under the Securities Act and such securities may not be offered or sold in the United States absent registration or an exemption from registration under the Securities Act and any applicable state securities laws.

Neither this Current Report on Form 8-K nor any exhibit attached hereto is an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy shares of Common Stock or other securities of the Company.

---

**Item 8.01 Other Event.**

On January 24, 2023, the Company issued a press release announcing the Private Placement. A copy of the press release is attached to this Current Report on Form 8-K as Exhibit 99.1 and is incorporated by reference herein.

**Item 9.01 Financial Statements and Exhibits.**

(d) Exhibit.

Exhibit No.	Description
4.1	Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant.
4.2	Form of Placement Agent Warrant.
10.1	Form of Securities Purchase Agreement.
10.2	Form of Registration Rights Agreement.
99.1	Press Release dated January 24, 2023.
104	Cover Page Interactive Data File.

---

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

**Apexigen, Inc.**

By: /s/ Xiaodong Yang

Xiaodong Yang, M.D., Ph.D.  
President & Chief Executive Officer

Date: January 25, 2023

---

NEITHER THIS SECURITY NOR THE SECURITIES FOR WHICH THIS SECURITY IS EXERCISABLE HAVE BEEN REGISTERED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION OR THE SECURITIES COMMISSION OF ANY STATE IN RELIANCE UPON AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “SECURITIES ACT”), AND, ACCORDINGLY, MAY NOT BE OFFERED OR SOLD EXCEPT PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR PURSUANT TO AN AVAILABLE EXEMPTION FROM, OR IN A TRANSACTION NOT SUBJECT TO, THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THIS SECURITY AND THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON EXERCISE OF THIS SECURITY MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT OR OTHER LOAN SECURED BY SUCH SECURITIES.

## COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT

APEXIGEN, INC.

Warrant Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

Issue Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 2023

THIS COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT (the “Warrant”) certifies that, for value received, \_\_\_\_\_ or its assigns (the “Holder”) is entitled, upon the terms and subject to the limitations on exercise and the conditions hereinafter set forth, at any time on or after the date that is six months following the date hereof (the “Initial Exercise Date”) and on or prior to 5:00 p.m. (New York City time) on \_\_\_\_\_, 2028<sup>1</sup> (the “Termination Date”) but not thereafter, to subscribe for and purchase from Apexigen, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), up to \_\_\_\_\_ shares (as subject to adjustment hereunder, the “Warrant Shares”) of Common Stock. The purchase price of one share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be equal to the Exercise Price, as defined in Section 2(b).

This Warrant is one of a series of similar warrants issued pursuant to the Purchase Agreement. All such Warrants are referred to herein, collectively, as the “Warrants.”

**Section 1. Definitions.** Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in that certain Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”), dated January 23, 2023, among the Company and the purchasers signatory thereto.

### Section 2. Exercise.

a) **Exercise of Warrant.** Exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant may be made, in whole or in part, at any time or times on or after the Initial Exercise Date and on or before the Termination Date by delivery to the Company of a duly executed facsimile copy or PDF copy submitted by e-mail (or e-mail attachment) of the Notice of Exercise in the form annexed hereto (the “Notice of Exercise”). Within the earlier of (i) two (2) Trading Days and (ii) the number of Trading Days comprising the Standard Settlement Period (as defined in Section 2(d)(i) herein) following the date of exercise as aforesaid, the Holder shall deliver the aggregate Exercise Price for the Warrant Shares specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise by wire transfer or cashier’s check drawn on a United States bank unless the cashless exercise procedure specified in Section 2(c) below is specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise. No ink-original Notice of Exercise shall be required, nor shall any medallion guarantee (or other type of guarantee or notarization) of any Notice of Exercise be required. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company until the Holder has purchased all of the Warrant Shares available hereunder and the Warrant has been exercised in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company for cancellation within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the final Notice of Exercise is delivered to the Company. Partial exercises of this Warrant resulting in purchases of a portion of the total number of Warrant Shares available hereunder shall have the effect of lowering the outstanding number of Warrant Shares purchasable hereunder in an amount equal to the applicable number of Warrant Shares purchased. The Holder and the Company shall maintain records showing the number of Warrant Shares purchased and the date of such purchases. The Company shall deliver any objection to any Notice of Exercise within one (1) Trading Day of receipt of such notice. **The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Warrant, acknowledge and agree that, by reason of the provisions of this paragraph, following the purchase of a portion of the Warrant Shares hereunder, the number of Warrant Shares available for purchase hereunder at any given time may be less than the amount stated on the face hereof.**

<sup>1</sup> Insert the date that is the five and one-half year anniversary of the date of issuance of the warrant, provided that, if such date is not a Trading Day, insert the immediately following Trading Day.

b) Exercise Price. The exercise price per share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be **\$1.40** subject to adjustment hereunder (the “Exercise Price”).

c) Cashless Exercise. If at the time of exercise hereof there is no effective registration statement registering, or the prospectus contained therein is not available for the resale of the Warrant Shares by the Holder, then this Warrant may also be exercised, in whole or in part, at such time by means of a “cashless exercise” in which the Holder shall be entitled to receive a number of Warrant Shares equal to the quotient obtained by dividing [(A-B) (X)] by (A), where:

(A) = as applicable: (i) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is (1) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a day that is not a Trading Day or (2) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a Trading Day prior to the opening of “regular trading hours” (as defined in Rule 600(b) of Regulation NMS promulgated under the federal securities laws) on such Trading Day, (ii) at the option of the Holder, either (y) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise or (z) the Bid Price of the Common Stock on the principal Trading Market as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (“Bloomberg”) as of the time of the Holder’s execution of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is executed during “regular trading hours” on a Trading Day and is delivered within two (2) hours thereafter (including until two (2) hours after the close of “regular trading hours” on a Trading Day) pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof or (iii) the VWAP on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if the date of such Notice of Exercise is a Trading Day and such Notice of Exercise is both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof after the close of “regular trading hours” on such Trading Day;

(B) = the Exercise Price of this Warrant, as adjusted hereunder; and

(X) = the number of Warrant Shares that would be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant in accordance with the terms of this Warrant if such exercise were by means of a cash exercise rather than a cashless exercise.

If Warrant Shares are issued in such a cashless exercise, the parties acknowledge and agree that in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act, the Warrant Shares shall take on the characteristics of the Warrants being exercised, and the holding period of the Warrant Shares being issued may be tacked on to the holding period of this Warrant. The Company agrees not to take any position contrary to this Section 2(c).

“Bid Price” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the bid price of the Common Stock for the time in question (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported on The Pink Open Market (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

“VWAP” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the daily volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported on The Pink Open Market (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Holders of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

d) Mechanics of Exercise.

i. Delivery of Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. The Company shall cause the Warrant Shares purchased hereunder to be transmitted by the Transfer Agent to the Holder by crediting the account of the Holder’s or its designee’s balance account with The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit or Withdrawal at Custodian system (“DWAC”) if the Company is then a participant in such system and either (A) there is an effective registration statement permitting the issuance of the Warrant Shares to or resale of the Warrant Shares by the Holder or (B) the Warrant Shares are eligible for resale by the Holder without volume or manner-of-sale limitations pursuant to Rule 144 (assuming cashless exercise of the Warrants), and otherwise by physical delivery

of a certificate, registered in the Company's share register in the name of the Holder or its designee, for the number of Warrant Shares to which the Holder is entitled pursuant to such exercise to the address specified by the Holder in the Notice of Exercise by the date that is three (3) Trading Days after the delivery to the Company of the Notice of Exercise and the aggregate Exercise Price (such date, the "Warrant Share Delivery Date"). Upon delivery of the Notice of Exercise, the Holder shall be deemed for all corporate purposes to have become the holder of record of the Warrant Shares with respect to which this Warrant has been exercised, irrespective of the date of delivery of the Warrant Shares, provided that payment of the aggregate Exercise Price (other than in the case of a cashless exercise) is received within the earlier of (i) two (2) Trading Days and (ii) the number of Trading Days comprising the Standard Settlement Period following delivery of the Notice of Exercise. If the Company fails for any reason to deliver to the Holder the Warrant Shares subject to a Notice of Exercise by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, the Company shall pay to the Holder, in cash, as liquidated damages and not as a penalty, for each \$1,000 of Warrant Shares subject to such exercise (based on the VWAP of the Common Stock on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise), \$5 per Trading Day (increasing to \$10 per Trading Day on the fifth Trading Day after such liquidated damages begin to accrue) for each Trading Day after such Warrant Share Delivery Date until such Warrant Shares are delivered or Holder rescinds such exercise. The Company agrees to maintain a transfer agent that is a participant in the FAST program so long as this Warrant remains outstanding and exercisable. As used herein, "Standard Settlement Period" means the standard settlement period, expressed in a number of Trading Days, on the Company's primary Trading Market with respect to the Common Stock as in effect on the date of delivery of the Notice of Exercise.

ii. Delivery of New Warrants Upon Exercise. If this Warrant shall have been exercised in part, the Company shall, at the request of a Holder and upon surrender of this Warrant certificate, at the time of delivery of the Warrant Shares, deliver to the Holder a new Warrant evidencing the rights of the Holder to purchase the unpurchased Warrant Shares called for by this Warrant, which new Warrant shall in all other respects be identical with this Warrant.

iii. Rescission Rights. If the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares pursuant to Section 2(d)(i) by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, then the Holder will have the right to rescind such exercise.

iv. Compensation for Buy-In on Failure to Timely Deliver Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. In addition to any other rights available to the Holder, if the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares in accordance with the provisions of Section 2(d)(i) above pursuant to an exercise on or before the Warrant Share Delivery Date, and if after such date the Holder is required by its broker to purchase (in an open market transaction or otherwise) or the Holder's brokerage firm otherwise purchases, shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of the Warrant Shares which the Holder anticipated receiving upon such exercise (a "Buy-In"), then the Company shall (A) pay in cash to the Holder the amount, if any, by which (x) the Holder's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased exceeds (y) the amount obtained by multiplying (1) the number of Warrant Shares that the Company was required to deliver to the Holder in connection with the exercise at issue times (2) the price at which the sell order giving rise to such purchase obligation was executed, and (B) at the option of the Holder, either reinstate the portion of the Warrant and equivalent number of Warrant Shares for which such exercise was not honored (in which case such exercise shall be deemed rescinded) or deliver to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock that would have been issued had the Company timely complied with its exercise and delivery obligations hereunder. For example, if the Holder purchases Common Stock having a total purchase price of \$11,000 to cover a Buy-In with respect to an attempted exercise of shares of Common Stock with an aggregate sale price giving rise to such purchase obligation of \$10,000, under clause (A) of the immediately preceding sentence the Company shall be required to pay the Holder \$1,000. The Holder shall provide the Company written notice indicating the amounts payable to the Holder in respect of the Buy-In and, upon request of the Company, evidence of the amount of such loss. Nothing herein shall limit a Holder's right to pursue any other remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company's failure to timely deliver shares of Common Stock upon exercise of the Warrant as required pursuant to the terms hereof.

v. No Fractional Shares or Scrip. No fractional shares or scrip representing fractional shares shall be issued upon the exercise of this Warrant. As to any fraction of a share which the Holder would otherwise be entitled to purchase upon such exercise, the Company shall, at its election, either pay a cash adjustment in respect of such final fraction in an amount equal to such fraction multiplied by the Exercise Price or round up to the next whole share.

vi. Charges, Taxes and Expenses. Issuance of Warrant Shares shall be made without charge to the Holder for any issue or transfer tax or other incidental expense in respect of the issuance of such Warrant Shares, all of which

taxes and expenses shall be paid by the Company, and such Warrant Shares shall be issued in the name of the Holder or in such name or names as may be directed by the Holder; provided, however, that, in the event that Warrant Shares are to be issued in a name other than the name of the Holder, this Warrant when surrendered for exercise shall be accompanied by the Assignment Form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder and the Company may require, as a condition thereto, the payment of a sum sufficient to reimburse it for any transfer tax incidental thereto. The Company shall pay all Transfer Agent fees required for same-day processing of any Notice of Exercise and all fees to the Depository Trust Company (or another established clearing corporation performing similar functions) required for same-day electronic delivery of the Warrant Shares.

vii. Closing of Books. The Company will not close its stockholder books or records in any manner which prevents the timely exercise of this Warrant, pursuant to the terms hereof.

e) Holder's Exercise Limitations. The Company shall not effect any exercise of this Warrant, and a Holder shall not have the right to exercise any portion of this Warrant, pursuant to Section 2 or otherwise, to the extent that after giving effect to such issuance after exercise as set forth on the applicable Notice of Exercise, the Holder (together with the Holder's Affiliates, and any other Persons acting as a group together with the Holder or any of the Holder's Affiliates (such Persons, "Attribution Parties")), would beneficially own in excess of the Beneficial Ownership Limitation (as defined below). For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its Affiliates and Attribution Parties shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which such determination is being made, but shall exclude the number of shares of Common Stock which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, nonexercised portion of this Warrant beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or nonconverted portion of any other securities of the Company (including, without limitation, any other Common Stock Equivalents) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 2(e), beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, it being acknowledged by the Holder that the Company is not representing to the Holder that such calculation is in compliance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the Holder is solely responsible for any schedules required to be filed in accordance therewith. To the extent that the limitation contained in this Section 2(e) applies, the Company and the Holder shall each cooperate in good faith in the determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable. The submission of a Notice of Exercise by the Holder to the Company shall be deemed to be the Holder's determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable, in each case subject to the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, and the Company shall have no obligation to verify or confirm the accuracy of such determination. In addition, a determination as to any group status as contemplated above shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. For purposes of this Section 2(e), in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (A) the Company's most recent periodic or annual report filed with the Commission, as the case may be, (B) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (C) a more recent written notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. Upon the written or oral request of a Holder, the Company shall within two Trading Days confirm orally or in writing to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Holder or its Affiliates or Attribution Parties since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. The "Beneficial Ownership Limitation" shall be 4.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant. The Holder, upon notice to the Company, may increase or decrease the Beneficial Ownership Limitation provisions of this Section 2(e), provided that the Beneficial Ownership Limitation in no event exceeds 9.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant held by the Holder and the provisions of this Section 2(e) shall continue to apply. Any increase in the Beneficial Ownership Limitation will not be effective until the 61<sup>st</sup> day after such notice is delivered to the Company. The provisions of this paragraph shall be construed and implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this Section 2(e) to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Beneficial Ownership Limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor holder of this Warrant.

### Section 3. Certain Adjustments.



a) Stock Dividends and Splits. If the Company, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding: (i) pays a stock dividend or otherwise makes a distribution or distributions on shares of its Common Stock or any other equity or equity equivalent securities payable in shares of Common Stock (which, for avoidance of doubt, shall not include any shares of Common Stock issued by the Company upon exercise of this Warrant), (ii) subdivides outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares, (iii) combines (including by way of reverse stock split) outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, or (iv) issues by reclassification of shares of the Common Stock any shares of capital stock of the Company, then in each case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event, and the number of shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be proportionately adjusted such that the aggregate Exercise Price of this Warrant shall remain unchanged. Any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 3(a) shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution and shall become effective immediately after the effective date in the case of a subdivision, combination or re-classification.

b) Subsequent Rights Offerings. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 3(a) above, if at any time the Company grants, issues or sells any Common Stock Equivalents or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property pro rata to the record holders of any class of shares of Common Stock (the “Purchase Rights”), then the Holder will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which the Holder could have acquired if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights (provided, however, that, to the extent that the Holder’s right to participate in any such Purchase Right would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Purchase Right to such extent (or beneficial ownership of such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Purchase Right to such extent) and such Purchase Right to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

c) Pro Rata Distributions. During such time as this Warrant is outstanding, if the Company shall declare or make any dividend or other distribution of its assets (or rights to acquire its assets) to holders of shares of Common Stock, by way of return of capital or otherwise (including, without limitation, any distribution of cash, stock or other securities, property or options by way of a dividend, spin off, reclassification, corporate rearrangement, scheme of arrangement or other similar transaction) (a “Distribution”), at any time after the issuance of this Warrant, then, in each such case, the Holder shall be entitled to participate in such Distribution to the same extent that the Holder would have participated therein if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date of which a record is taken for such Distribution, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the participation in such Distribution (provided, however, that, to the extent that the Holder’s right to participate in any such Distribution would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Distribution to such extent (or in the beneficial ownership of any shares of Common Stock as a result of such Distribution to such extent) and the portion of such Distribution shall be held in abeyance for the benefit of the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

d) Fundamental Transaction. If, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, (i) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another Person (excluding a merger effected solely to change the Company’s name), (ii) the Company (and all of its Subsidiaries, taken as a whole), directly or indirectly, effects any sale, lease, license, assignment, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of its assets in one or a series of related transactions, (iii) any, direct or indirect, purchase offer, tender offer or exchange offer (whether by the Company or another Person) is completed pursuant to which holders of Common Stock are permitted to sell, tender or exchange their shares for other securities, cash or property and has been accepted by the holders of 50% or more of the outstanding Common Stock, (iv) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any reclassification, reorganization or recapitalization of the Common Stock or any compulsory share exchange pursuant to which the Common Stock is effectively converted into or exchanged for other securities, cash or property, or (v) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions consummates a stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination (including, without limitation, a reorganization, recapitalization, spin-off, merger or scheme of arrangement) with another Person or group of Persons whereby such other Person or group acquires more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (not including any shares of Common Stock held by the other Person or other Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the other Persons making or party to, such stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination) (each a “Fundamental Transaction”), then, upon any subsequent exercise of this Warrant, the Holder shall have the right to receive, for each Warrant Share that would have been issuable upon such exercise immediately prior to the occurrence

of such Fundamental Transaction, at the option of the Holder (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant), the number of shares of Common Stock of the successor or acquiring corporation or of the Company, if it is the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration (the “Alternate Consideration”) receivable as a result of such Fundamental Transaction by a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock for which this Warrant is exercisable immediately prior to such Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant). For purposes of any such exercise, the determination of the Exercise Price shall be appropriately adjusted to apply to such Alternate Consideration based on the amount of Alternate Consideration issuable in respect of one share of Common Stock in such Fundamental Transaction, and the Company shall apportion the Exercise Price among the Alternate Consideration in a reasonable manner reflecting the relative value of any different components of the Alternate Consideration. If holders of Common Stock are given any choice as to the securities, cash or property to be received in a Fundamental Transaction, then the Holder shall be given the same choice as to the Alternate Consideration it receives upon any exercise of this Warrant following such Fundamental Transaction. The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to cause any successor entity in a Fundamental Transaction in which the Company is not the survivor (the “Successor Entity”) to assume in writing all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents in accordance with the provisions of this Section 3(d) and, at the option of the Holder, deliver to the Holder in exchange for this Warrant a security of the Successor Entity evidenced by a written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to this Warrant which is exercisable for a corresponding number of shares of capital stock of such Successor Entity (or its parent entity) equivalent to the shares of Common Stock acquirable and receivable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant), and with an exercise price which applies the exercise price hereunder to such shares of capital stock (but taking into account the relative value of the shares of Common Stock pursuant to such Fundamental Transaction and the value of such shares of capital stock, such number of shares of capital stock and such exercise price being for the purpose of protecting the economic value of this Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction). Upon the occurrence of any such Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of such Fundamental Transaction, the provisions of this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents referring to the “Company” shall refer instead to the Successor Entity), and may exercise every right and power of the Company and shall assume all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents with the same effect as if such Successor Entity had been named as the Company herein.

e) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 3 shall be made to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100th of a share, as the case may be. For purposes of this Section 3, the number of shares of Common Stock deemed to be issued and outstanding as of a given date shall be the sum of the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) issued and outstanding.

f) Notice to Holder.

i. Adjustment to Exercise Price. Whenever the Exercise Price is adjusted pursuant to any provision of this Section 3, the Company shall promptly deliver to the Holder by facsimile or email a notice setting forth the Exercise Price after such adjustment and any resulting adjustment to the number of Warrant Shares and setting forth a brief statement of the facts requiring such adjustment.

ii. Notice to Allow Exercise by Holder. If (A) the Company shall declare a dividend (or any other distribution in whatever form) on the Common Stock, (B) the Company shall declare a special nonrecurring cash dividend on or a redemption of the Common Stock, (C) the Company shall authorize the granting to all holders of the Common Stock rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase any shares of capital stock of any class or of any rights, (D) the approval of any stockholders of the Company shall be required in connection with any reclassification of the Common Stock, any consolidation or merger to which the Company (or any of its Subsidiaries) is a party, any sale or transfer of all or substantially all of its assets, or any compulsory share exchange whereby the Common Stock is converted into other securities, cash or property, or (E) the Company shall authorize the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the affairs of the Company, then, in each case, the Company shall cause to be delivered by facsimile or email to the Holder at its last facsimile number or email address as it shall appear upon the Warrant Register of the Company, at least 10 calendar days prior to the applicable record or effective date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the date on which a record is to be taken for the purpose of such dividend, distribution, redemption, rights or warrants, or if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of the Common Stock of record to be entitled to such dividend, distributions, redemption, rights or warrants are to be determined or (y) the date on which such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange is expected to become effective or close, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of the Common Stock of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of the Common Stock for securities, cash or other property deliverable upon such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange; provided that the failure to deliver such notice or any defect therein or in the delivery thereof shall not affect the validity of the corporate action required to be specified in such notice. The Holder agrees to maintain any information disclosed pursuant to this Section 3(f) in confidence until such information is publicly

available and shall comply with applicable law with respect to trading in the Company's securities following receipt of any such information.

#### Section 4. Transfer of Warrant.

a) Transferability. Subject to compliance with any applicable securities laws and the conditions set forth in Section 4(d) hereof and to the provisions of Section 4.1 of the Purchase Agreement, this Warrant and all rights hereunder (including, without limitation, any registration rights) are transferable, in whole or in part, upon surrender of this Warrant at the principal office of the Company or its designated agent, together with a written assignment of this Warrant substantially in the form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder or its agent or attorney and funds sufficient to pay any transfer taxes payable upon the making of such transfer. Upon such surrender and, if required, such payment, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in the name of the assignee or assignees, as applicable, and in the denomination or denominations specified in such instrument of assignment, and shall issue to the assignor a new Warrant evidencing the portion of this Warrant not so assigned, and this Warrant shall promptly be cancelled. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company unless the Holder has assigned this Warrant in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the Holder delivers an assignment form to the Company assigning this Warrant in full. The Warrant, if properly assigned in accordance herewith, may be exercised by a new holder for the purchase of Warrant Shares without having a new Warrant issued.

b) New Warrants. This Warrant may be divided or combined with other Warrants upon presentation hereof at the aforesaid office of the Company, together with a written notice specifying the names and denominations in which new Warrants are to be issued, signed by the Holder or its agent or attorney. Subject to compliance with Section 4(a), as to any transfer which may be involved in such division or combination, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in exchange for the Warrant or Warrants to be divided or combined in accordance with such notice. All Warrants issued on transfers or exchanges shall be dated the original Issue Date and shall be identical with this Warrant except as to the number of Warrant Shares issuable pursuant thereto.

c) Warrant Register. The Company shall register this Warrant, upon records to be maintained by the Company for that purpose (the "Warrant Register"), in the name of the record Holder hereof from time to time. The Company may deem and treat the registered Holder of this Warrant as the absolute owner hereof for the purpose of any exercise hereof or any distribution to the Holder, and for all other purposes, absent actual notice to the contrary.

d) Transfer Restrictions. If, at the time of the surrender of this Warrant in connection with any transfer of this Warrant, the transfer of this Warrant shall not be either (i) registered pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act and under applicable state securities or blue sky laws or (ii) eligible for resale without volume or manner-of-sale restrictions or current public information requirements pursuant to Rule 144, the Company may require, as a condition of allowing such transfer, that the Holder or transferee of this Warrant, as the case may be, comply with the provisions of Section 5.7 of the Purchase Agreement.

e) Representation by the Holder. The Holder, by the acceptance hereof, represents and warrants that it is acquiring this Warrant and, upon any exercise hereof, will acquire the Warrant Shares issuable upon such exercise, for its own account and not with a view to or for distributing or reselling such Warrant Shares or any part thereof in violation of the Securities Act or any applicable state securities law, except pursuant to sales registered or exempted under the Securities Act.

#### Section 5. Miscellaneous.

a) No Rights as Stockholder Until Exercise; No Settlement in Cash. This Warrant does not entitle the Holder to any voting rights, dividends or other rights as a stockholder of the Company prior to the exercise hereof as set forth in Section 2(d)(i), except as expressly set forth in Section 3. Without limiting any rights of a Holder to receive Warrant Shares on a "cashless exercise" pursuant to Section 2(c) or to receive cash payments pursuant to Section 2(d)(i) and Section 2(d)(iv) herein, in no event shall the Company be required to net cash settle an exercise of this Warrant.

b) Loss, Theft, Destruction or Mutilation of Warrant. The Company covenants that upon receipt by the Company of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant or any stock certificate relating to the Warrant Shares, and in case of loss, theft or destruction, of indemnity or security reasonably satisfactory to it (which, in the case of the Warrant, shall not include the posting of any bond), and upon surrender and cancellation of such Warrant or stock certificate, if mutilated, the Company will make and deliver a new Warrant or stock certificate of like tenor and dated as of such cancellation, in lieu of such Warrant or stock certificate.

c) Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, etc. If the last or appointed day for the taking of any action or the expiration of any right required or granted herein shall not be a Trading Day, then such action may be taken or such right may be exercised on the next succeeding Trading Day.

d) Authorized Shares.

The Company covenants that, during the period the Warrant is outstanding, it will reserve from its authorized and unissued Common Stock a sufficient number of shares to provide for the issuance of the Warrant Shares upon the exercise of any purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company further covenants that its issuance of this Warrant shall constitute full authority to its officers who are charged with the duty of issuing the necessary Warrant Shares upon the exercise of the purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company will take all such reasonable action as may be necessary to assure that such Warrant Shares may be issued as provided herein without violation of any applicable law or regulation, or of any requirements of the Trading Market upon which the Common Stock may be listed. The Company covenants that all Warrant Shares which may be issued upon the exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant will, upon exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant and payment for such Warrant Shares in accordance herewith, be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable and free from all taxes, liens and charges created by the Company in respect of the issue thereof (other than taxes in respect of any transfer occurring contemporaneously with such issue).

Except and to the extent as waived or consented to by the Holder, the Company shall not by any action, including, without limitation, amending its certificate of incorporation or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, dissolution, issue or sale of securities or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, but will at all times in good faith assist in the carrying out of all such terms and in the taking of all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate to protect the rights of Holder as set forth in this Warrant against impairment. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company will (i) not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares above the amount payable therefor upon such exercise immediately prior to such increase in par value, (ii) take all such action as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and nonassessable Warrant Shares upon the exercise of this Warrant and (iii) use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain all such authorizations, exemptions or consents from any public regulatory body having jurisdiction thereof, as may be, necessary to enable the Company to perform its obligations under this Warrant.

Before taking any action which would result in an adjustment in the number of Warrant Shares for which this Warrant is exercisable or in the Exercise Price, the Company shall obtain all such authorizations or exemptions thereof, or consents thereto, as may be necessary from any public regulatory body or bodies having jurisdiction thereof.

e) Jurisdiction. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of this Warrant shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

f) Restrictions. The Holder acknowledges that the Warrant Shares acquired upon the exercise of this Warrant, if not registered, and the Holder does not utilize cashless exercise, will have restrictions upon resale imposed by state and federal securities laws.

g) Nonwaiver and Expenses. No course of dealing or any delay or failure to exercise any right hereunder on the part of Holder shall operate as a waiver of such right or otherwise prejudice the Holder's rights, powers or remedies. Without limiting any other provision of this Warrant or the Purchase Agreement, if the Company willfully and knowingly fails to comply with any provision of this Warrant, which results in any material damages to the Holder, the Company shall pay to the Holder such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover any costs and expenses including, but not limited to, reasonable attorneys' fees, including those of appellate proceedings, incurred by the Holder in collecting any amounts due pursuant hereto or in otherwise enforcing any of its rights, powers or remedies hereunder.

h) Notices. Any notice, request or other document required or permitted to be given or delivered to the Holder by the Company shall be delivered in accordance with the notice provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

i) Limitation of Liability. No provision hereof, in the absence of any affirmative action by the Holder to exercise this Warrant to purchase Warrant Shares, and no enumeration herein of the rights or privileges of the Holder, shall give rise to any liability of the Holder for the purchase price of any Common Stock or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liability is asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.

j) Remedies. The Holder, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law, including recovery of damages, will be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Warrant. The Company agrees that monetary damages would not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of a breach by it of the provisions of this Warrant and hereby agrees to waive and not to assert the defense in any action for specific performance that a remedy at law would be adequate.

k) Successors and Assigns. Subject to applicable securities laws, this Warrant and the rights and obligations evidenced hereby shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the successors and permitted assigns of the Company and the successors and permitted assigns of Holder. The provisions of this Warrant are intended to be for the benefit of any Holder from time to time of this Warrant and shall be enforceable by the Holder or holder of Warrant Shares.

l) Amendment. This Warrant may be modified or amended or the provisions hereof waived with the written consent of the Company and the holders of Warrants that are exercisable for at least 50.1% of the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock of the Company issuable upon exercise of all of the issued and outstanding Warrants or, in the case of a waiver, by the party against whom enforcement of any such waived provision is sought, provided that if any amendment, modification or waiver disproportionately and adversely impacts a holder of such Warrants (or group of holders), the consent of the holders of at least 50.1% of the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock of the Company issuable upon exercise of all of the issued and outstanding Warrants held by such disproportionately impacted holder (or group of holders) shall also be required.

m) Severability. Wherever possible, each provision of this Warrant shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Warrant shall be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of such provisions or the remaining provisions of this Warrant.

n) Headings. The headings used in this Warrant are for the convenience of reference only and shall not, for any purpose, be deemed a part of this Warrant.

\*\*\*\*\*

*(Signature Page Follows)*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed by its officer thereunto duly authorized as of the date first above indicated.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

**NOTICE OF EXERCISE**

TO: APEXIGEN, INC.

(1) The undersigned hereby elects to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares of the Company pursuant to the terms of the attached Warrant (only if exercised in full), and tenders herewith payment of the exercise price in full, together with all applicable transfer taxes, if any.

(2) Payment shall take the form of (check applicable box):

☐ in lawful money of the United States; or

☐ if permitted the cancellation of such number of Warrant Shares as is necessary, in accordance with the formula set forth in subsection 2(c), to exercise this Warrant with respect to the maximum number of Warrant Shares purchasable pursuant to the cashless exercise procedure set forth in subsection 2(c).

(3) Please issue said Warrant Shares in the name of the undersigned or in such other name as is specified below:

\_\_\_\_\_

The Warrant Shares shall be delivered to the following DWAC Account Number:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

(4) Accredited Investor. The undersigned is an “accredited investor” as defined in Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

[SIGNATURE OF HOLDER]

Name of Investing Entity: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Investing Entity:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

ASSIGNMENT FORM

*(To assign the foregoing Warrant, execute this form and supply required information. Do not use this form to purchase shares.)*

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the foregoing Warrant and all rights evidenced thereby are hereby assigned to

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Please Print)

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Please Print)

Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Holder’s Signature:

Holder’s Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

NEITHER THIS SECURITY NOR THE SECURITIES FOR WHICH THIS SECURITY IS EXERCISABLE HAVE BEEN REGISTERED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION OR THE SECURITIES COMMISSION OF ANY STATE IN RELIANCE UPON AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), AND, ACCORDINGLY, MAY NOT BE OFFERED OR SOLD EXCEPT PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR PURSUANT TO AN AVAILABLE EXEMPTION FROM, OR IN A TRANSACTION NOT SUBJECT TO, THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THIS SECURITY AND THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON EXERCISE OF THIS SECURITY MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT OR OTHER LOAN SECURED BY SUCH SECURITIES.

## PLACEMENT AGENT COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT

### APEXIGEN, INC.

Warrant Shares: \_\_\_\_\_ Issue Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 2023

THIS PLACEMENT AGENT COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT (the "Warrant") certifies that, for value received, \_\_\_\_\_ or its assigns (the "Holder") is entitled, upon the terms and subject to the limitations on exercise and the conditions hereinafter set forth, at any time on or after the date that is six months following the date hereof (the "Initial Exercise Date") and on or prior to 5:00 p.m. (New York City time) on \_\_\_\_\_, 2028<sup>1</sup> (the "Termination Date") but not thereafter, to subscribe for and purchase from Apexigen, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), up to \_\_\_\_\_ shares (as subject to adjustment hereunder, the "Warrant Shares") of Common Stock. The purchase price of one share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be equal to the Exercise Price, as defined in Section 2(b).

This Warrant and the warrants issued pursuant to the Purchase Agreement are referred to herein, collectively, as the "Warrants."

**Section 1. Definitions.** Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in that certain Securities Purchase Agreement (the "Purchase Agreement"), dated January 23, 2023, among the Company and the purchasers signatory thereto.

#### **Section 2. Exercise.**

a) **Exercise of Warrant.** Exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant may be made, in whole or in part, at any time or times on or after the Initial Exercise Date and on or before the Termination Date by delivery to the Company of a duly executed facsimile copy or PDF copy submitted by e-mail (or e-mail attachment) of the Notice of Exercise in the form annexed hereto (the "Notice of Exercise"). Within the earlier of (i) two (2) Trading Days and (ii) the number of Trading Days comprising the Standard Settlement Period (as defined in Section 2(d)(i) herein) following the date of exercise as aforesaid, the Holder shall deliver the aggregate Exercise Price for the Warrant Shares specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise by wire transfer or cashier's check drawn on a United States bank unless the cashless exercise procedure specified in Section 2(c) below is specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise. No ink-original Notice of Exercise shall be required, nor shall any medallion guarantee (or other type of guarantee or notarization) of any Notice of Exercise be required. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company until the Holder has purchased all of the Warrant Shares available hereunder and the Warrant has been exercised in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company for cancellation within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the final Notice of Exercise is delivered to the Company. Partial exercises of this Warrant resulting in purchases of a portion of the total number of Warrant Shares available hereunder shall have the effect of lowering the outstanding number of Warrant Shares purchasable hereunder in an amount equal to the applicable number of Warrant Shares purchased. The Holder and the Company shall maintain records showing the number of Warrant Shares purchased and the date of such purchases. The Company shall deliver any objection to any Notice of Exercise within one (1) Trading Day of receipt of such notice. **The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Warrant, acknowledge and agree that, by reason of the provisions of this paragraph, following the purchase of a portion of the Warrant Shares hereunder, the number of Warrant Shares available for purchase hereunder at any given time may be less than the amount stated on the face hereof.**

<sup>1</sup> Insert the date that is the five and one-half year anniversary of the date of issuance of the warrant, provided that, if such date is not a Trading Day, insert the immediately following Trading Day.





b) Exercise Price. The exercise price per share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be **\$1.75** subject to adjustment hereunder (the “Exercise Price”).

c) Cashless Exercise. If at the time of exercise hereof there is no effective registration statement registering, or the prospectus contained therein is not available for the resale of the Warrant Shares by the Holder, then this Warrant may also be exercised, in whole or in part, at such time by means of a “cashless exercise” in which the Holder shall be entitled to receive a number of Warrant Shares equal to the quotient obtained by dividing [(A-B) (X)] by (A), where:

(A) = as applicable: (i) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is (1) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a day that is not a Trading Day or (2) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a Trading Day prior to the opening of “regular trading hours” (as defined in Rule 600(b) of Regulation NMS promulgated under the federal securities laws) on such Trading Day, (ii) at the option of the Holder, either (y) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise or (z) the Bid Price of the Common Stock on the principal Trading Market as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (“Bloomberg”) as of the time of the Holder’s execution of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is executed during “regular trading hours” on a Trading Day and is delivered within two (2) hours thereafter (including until two (2) hours after the close of “regular trading hours” on a Trading Day) pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof or (iii) the VWAP on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if the date of such Notice of Exercise is a Trading Day and such Notice of Exercise is both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof after the close of “regular trading hours” on such Trading Day;

(B) = the Exercise Price of this Warrant, as adjusted hereunder; and

(X) = the number of Warrant Shares that would be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant in accordance with the terms of this Warrant if such exercise were by means of a cash exercise rather than a cashless exercise.

If Warrant Shares are issued in such a cashless exercise, the parties acknowledge and agree that in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act, the Warrant Shares shall take on the characteristics of the Warrants being exercised, and the holding period of the Warrant Shares being issued may be tacked on to the holding period of this Warrant. The Company agrees not to take any position contrary to this Section 2(c).

“Bid Price” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the bid price of the Common Stock for the time in question (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported on The Pink Open Market (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

“VWAP” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the daily volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported on The Pink Open Market (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Holders of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

d) Mechanics of Exercise.

i. Delivery of Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. The Company shall cause the Warrant Shares purchased hereunder to be transmitted by the Transfer Agent to the Holder by crediting the account of the Holder’s or its designee’s balance account with The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit or Withdrawal at Custodian system (“DWAC”) if the Company is then a participant in such system and either (A) there is an effective registration statement permitting the issuance of the Warrant Shares to or resale of the Warrant Shares by the Holder or (B) the Warrant Shares are eligible for resale by the Holder without volume or manner-of-sale

limitations pursuant to Rule 144 (assuming cashless exercise of the Warrants), and otherwise by physical delivery of a certificate, registered in the Company's share register in the name of the Holder or its designee, for the number of Warrant Shares to which the Holder is entitled pursuant to such exercise to the address specified by the Holder in the Notice of Exercise by the date that is three (3) Trading Days after the delivery to the Company of the Notice of Exercise and the aggregate Exercise Price (such date, the "Warrant Share Delivery Date"). Upon delivery of the Notice of Exercise, the Holder shall be deemed for all corporate purposes to have become the holder of record of the Warrant Shares with respect to which this Warrant has been exercised, irrespective of the date of delivery of the Warrant Shares, provided that payment of the aggregate Exercise Price (other than in the case of a cashless exercise) is received within the earlier of (i) two (2) Trading Days and (ii) the number of Trading Days comprising the Standard Settlement Period following delivery of the Notice of Exercise. If the Company fails for any reason to deliver to the Holder the Warrant Shares subject to a Notice of Exercise by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, the Company shall pay to the Holder, in cash, as liquidated damages and not as a penalty, for each \$1,000 of Warrant Shares subject to such exercise (based on the VWAP of the Common Stock on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise), \$5 per Trading Day (increasing to \$10 per Trading Day on the fifth Trading Day after such liquidated damages begin to accrue) for each Trading Day after such Warrant Share Delivery Date until such Warrant Shares are delivered or Holder rescinds such exercise. The Company agrees to maintain a transfer agent that is a participant in the FAST program so long as this Warrant remains outstanding and exercisable. As used herein, "Standard Settlement Period" means the standard settlement period, expressed in a number of Trading Days, on the Company's primary Trading Market with respect to the Common Stock as in effect on the date of delivery of the Notice of Exercise.

ii. Delivery of New Warrants Upon Exercise. If this Warrant shall have been exercised in part, the Company shall, at the request of a Holder and upon surrender of this Warrant certificate, at the time of delivery of the Warrant Shares, deliver to the Holder a new Warrant evidencing the rights of the Holder to purchase the unpurchased Warrant Shares called for by this Warrant, which new Warrant shall in all other respects be identical with this Warrant.

iii. Rescission Rights. If the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares pursuant to Section 2(d)(i) by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, then the Holder will have the right to rescind such exercise.

iv. Compensation for Buy-In on Failure to Timely Deliver Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. In addition to any other rights available to the Holder, if the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares in accordance with the provisions of Section 2(d)(i) above pursuant to an exercise on or before the Warrant Share Delivery Date, and if after such date the Holder is required by its broker to purchase (in an open market transaction or otherwise) or the Holder's brokerage firm otherwise purchases, shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of the Warrant Shares which the Holder anticipated receiving upon such exercise (a "Buy-In"), then the Company shall (A) pay in cash to the Holder the amount, if any, by which (x) the Holder's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased exceeds (y) the amount obtained by multiplying (1) the number of Warrant Shares that the Company was required to deliver to the Holder in connection with the exercise at issue times (2) the price at which the sell order giving rise to such purchase obligation was executed, and (B) at the option of the Holder, either reinstate the portion of the Warrant and equivalent number of Warrant Shares for which such exercise was not honored (in which case such exercise shall be deemed rescinded) or deliver to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock that would have been issued had the Company timely complied with its exercise and delivery obligations hereunder. For example, if the Holder purchases Common Stock having a total purchase price of \$11,000 to cover a Buy-In with respect to an attempted exercise of shares of Common Stock with an aggregate sale price giving rise to such purchase obligation of \$10,000, under clause (A) of the immediately preceding sentence the Company shall be required to pay the Holder \$1,000. The Holder shall provide the Company written notice indicating the amounts payable to the Holder in respect of the Buy-In and, upon request of the Company, evidence of the amount of such loss. Nothing herein shall limit a Holder's right to pursue any other remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company's failure to timely deliver shares of Common Stock upon exercise of the Warrant as required pursuant to the terms hereof.

v. No Fractional Shares or Scrip. No fractional shares or scrip representing fractional shares shall be issued upon the exercise of this Warrant. As to any fraction of a share which the Holder would otherwise be entitled to purchase upon such exercise, the Company shall, at its election, either pay a cash adjustment in respect of such final fraction in an amount equal to such fraction multiplied by the Exercise Price or round up to the next whole share.

vi. Charges, Taxes and Expenses. Issuance of Warrant Shares shall be made without charge to the Holder for any issue or transfer tax or other incidental expense in respect of the issuance of such Warrant Shares, all of which taxes and expenses shall be paid by the Company, and such Warrant Shares shall be issued in the name of the Holder or in such name or names as may be directed by the Holder; provided, however, that, in the event that Warrant Shares are to be issued in a name other than the name of the Holder, this Warrant when surrendered for exercise shall be accompanied by the Assignment Form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder and the Company may require, as a condition thereto, the payment of a sum sufficient to reimburse it for any transfer tax incidental thereto. The Company shall pay all Transfer Agent fees required for same-day processing of any Notice of Exercise and all fees to the Depository Trust Company (or another established clearing corporation performing similar functions) required for same-day electronic delivery of the Warrant Shares.

vii. Closing of Books. The Company will not close its stockholder books or records in any manner which prevents the timely exercise of this Warrant, pursuant to the terms hereof.

e) Holder's Exercise Limitations. The Company shall not effect any exercise of this Warrant, and a Holder shall not have the right to exercise any portion of this Warrant, pursuant to Section 2 or otherwise, to the extent that after giving effect to such issuance after exercise as set forth on the applicable Notice of Exercise, the Holder (together with the Holder's Affiliates, and any other Persons acting as a group together with the Holder or any of the Holder's Affiliates (such Persons, "Attribution Parties")), would beneficially own in excess of the Beneficial Ownership Limitation (as defined below). For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its Affiliates and Attribution Parties shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which such determination is being made, but shall exclude the number of shares of Common Stock which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, nonexercised portion of this Warrant beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or nonconverted portion of any other securities of the Company (including, without limitation, any other Common Stock Equivalents) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 2(e), beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, it being acknowledged by the Holder that the Company is not representing to the Holder that such calculation is in compliance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the Holder is solely responsible for any schedules required to be filed in accordance therewith. To the extent that the limitation contained in this Section 2(e) applies, the Company and the Holder shall each cooperate in good faith in the determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable. The submission of a Notice of Exercise by the Holder to the Company shall be deemed to be the Holder's determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable, in each case subject to the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, and the Company shall have no obligation to verify or confirm the accuracy of such determination. In addition, a determination as to any group status as contemplated above shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. For purposes of this Section 2(e), in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (A) the Company's most recent periodic or annual report filed with the Commission, as the case may be, (B) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (C) a more recent written notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. Upon the written or oral request of a Holder, the Company shall within two Trading Days confirm orally or in writing to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Holder or its Affiliates or Attribution Parties since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. The "Beneficial Ownership Limitation" shall be 4.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant. The Holder, upon notice to the Company, may increase or decrease the Beneficial Ownership Limitation provisions of this Section 2(e), provided that the Beneficial Ownership Limitation in no event exceeds 9.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant held by the Holder and the provisions of this Section 2(e) shall continue to apply. Any increase in the Beneficial Ownership Limitation will not be effective until the 61<sup>st</sup> day after such notice is delivered to the Company. The provisions of this paragraph shall be construed and implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this Section 2(e) to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Beneficial Ownership Limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor holder of this Warrant.

### Section 3. Certain Adjustments.

a) Stock Dividends and Splits. If the Company, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding: (i) pays a stock dividend or otherwise makes a distribution or distributions on shares of its Common Stock or any other equity or equity equivalent securities payable in shares of Common Stock (which, for avoidance of doubt, shall not include any shares of Common Stock issued by the Company upon exercise of this Warrant), (ii) subdivides outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares, (iii) combines (including by way of reverse stock split) outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, or (iv) issues by reclassification of shares of the Common Stock any shares of capital stock of the Company, then in each case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event, and the number of shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be proportionately adjusted such that the aggregate Exercise Price of this Warrant shall remain unchanged. Any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 3(a) shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution and shall become effective immediately after the effective date in the case of a subdivision, combination or re-classification.

b) Subsequent Rights Offerings. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 3(a) above, if at any time the Company grants, issues or sells any Common Stock Equivalents or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property pro rata to the record holders of any class of shares of Common Stock (the "Purchase Rights"), then the Holder will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which the Holder could have acquired if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights (provided, however, that, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such Purchase Right would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Purchase Right to such extent (or beneficial ownership of such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Purchase Right to such extent) and such Purchase Right to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

c) Pro Rata Distributions. During such time as this Warrant is outstanding, if the Company shall declare or make any dividend or other distribution of its assets (or rights to acquire its assets) to holders of shares of Common Stock, by way of return of capital or otherwise (including, without limitation, any distribution of cash, stock or other securities, property or options by way of a dividend, spin off, reclassification, corporate rearrangement, scheme of arrangement or other similar transaction) (a "Distribution"), at any time after the issuance of this Warrant, then, in each such case, the Holder shall be entitled to participate in such Distribution to the same extent that the Holder would have participated therein if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date of which a record is taken for such Distribution, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the participation in such Distribution (provided, however, that, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such Distribution would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Distribution to such extent (or in the beneficial ownership of any shares of Common Stock as a result of such Distribution to such extent) and the portion of such Distribution shall be held in abeyance for the benefit of the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

d) Fundamental Transaction. If, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, (i) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another Person (excluding a merger effected solely to change the Company's name), (ii) the Company (and all of its Subsidiaries, taken as a whole), directly or indirectly, effects any sale, lease, license, assignment, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of its assets in one or a series of related transactions, (iii) any, direct or indirect, purchase offer, tender offer or exchange offer (whether by the Company or another Person) is completed pursuant to which holders of Common Stock are permitted to sell, tender or exchange their shares for other securities, cash or property and has been accepted by the holders of 50% or more of the outstanding Common Stock, (iv) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any reclassification, reorganization or recapitalization of the Common Stock or any compulsory share exchange pursuant to which the Common Stock is effectively converted into or exchanged for other securities, cash or property, or (v) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions consummates a stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination (including, without limitation, a reorganization, recapitalization, spin-off, merger or scheme of arrangement) with another Person or group of Persons whereby such other Person or group acquires more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (not including any shares of Common Stock held by the other Person or other Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the other Persons making or party to, such stock or share purchase agreement or other business

combination) (each a “Fundamental Transaction”), then, upon any subsequent exercise of this Warrant, the Holder shall have the right to receive, for each Warrant Share that would have been issuable upon such exercise immediately prior to the occurrence of such Fundamental Transaction, at the option of the Holder (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant), the number of shares of Common Stock of the successor or acquiring corporation or of the Company, if it is the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration (the “Alternate Consideration”) receivable as a result of such Fundamental Transaction by a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock for which this Warrant is exercisable immediately prior to such Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant). For purposes of any such exercise, the determination of the Exercise Price shall be appropriately adjusted to apply to such Alternate Consideration based on the amount of Alternate Consideration issuable in respect of one share of Common Stock in such Fundamental Transaction, and the Company shall apportion the Exercise Price among the Alternate Consideration in a reasonable manner reflecting the relative value of any different components of the Alternate Consideration. If holders of Common Stock are given any choice as to the securities, cash or property to be received in a Fundamental Transaction, then the Holder shall be given the same choice as to the Alternate Consideration it receives upon any exercise of this Warrant following such Fundamental Transaction. The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to cause any successor entity in a Fundamental Transaction in which the Company is not the survivor (the “Successor Entity”) to assume in writing all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents in accordance with the provisions of this Section 3(d) and, at the option of the Holder, deliver to the Holder in exchange for this Warrant a security of the Successor Entity evidenced by a written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to this Warrant which is exercisable for a corresponding number of shares of capital stock of such Successor Entity (or its parent entity) equivalent to the shares of Common Stock acquirable and receivable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant), and with an exercise price which applies the exercise price hereunder to such shares of capital stock (but taking into account the relative value of the shares of Common Stock pursuant to such Fundamental Transaction and the value of such shares of capital stock, such number of shares of capital stock and such exercise price being for the purpose of protecting the economic value of this Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction). Upon the occurrence of any such Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of such Fundamental Transaction, the provisions of this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents referring to the “Company” shall refer instead to the Successor Entity), and may exercise every right and power of the Company and shall assume all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents with the same effect as if such Successor Entity had been named as the Company herein.

e) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 3 shall be made to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100th of a share, as the case may be. For purposes of this Section 3, the number of shares of Common Stock deemed to be issued and outstanding as of a given date shall be the sum of the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) issued and outstanding.

f) Notice to Holder.

i. Adjustment to Exercise Price. Whenever the Exercise Price is adjusted pursuant to any provision of this Section 3, the Company shall promptly deliver to the Holder by facsimile or email a notice setting forth the Exercise Price after such adjustment and any resulting adjustment to the number of Warrant Shares and setting forth a brief statement of the facts requiring such adjustment.

ii. Notice to Allow Exercise by Holder. If (A) the Company shall declare a dividend (or any other distribution in whatever form) on the Common Stock, (B) the Company shall declare a special nonrecurring cash dividend on or a redemption of the Common Stock, (C) the Company shall authorize the granting to all holders of the Common Stock rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase any shares of capital stock of any class or of any rights, (D) the approval of any stockholders of the Company shall be required in connection with any reclassification of the Common Stock, any consolidation or merger to which the Company (or any of its Subsidiaries) is a party, any sale or transfer of all or substantially all of its assets, or any compulsory share exchange whereby the Common Stock is converted into other securities, cash or property, or (E) the Company shall authorize the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the affairs of the Company, then, in each case, the Company shall cause to be delivered by facsimile or email to the Holder at its last facsimile number or email address as it shall appear upon the Warrant Register of the Company, at least 10 calendar days prior to the applicable record or effective date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the date on which a record is to be taken for the purpose of such dividend, distribution, redemption, rights or warrants, or if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of the Common Stock of record to be entitled to such dividend, distributions, redemption, rights or warrants are to be determined or (y) the date on which such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange is expected to become effective or close, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of the Common Stock of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of the Common Stock for securities, cash or other property deliverable upon such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange; provided that the failure to deliver such notice or any defect therein or in the

delivery thereof shall not affect the validity of the corporate action required to be specified in such notice. The Holder agrees to maintain any information disclosed pursuant to this Section 3(f) in confidence until such information is publicly available and shall comply with applicable law with respect to trading in the Company's securities following receipt of any such information.

#### Section 4. Transfer of Warrant.

a) Transferability. Subject to compliance with any applicable securities laws and the conditions set forth in Section 4(d) hereof and to the provisions of Section 4.1 of the Purchase Agreement, this Warrant and all rights hereunder (including, without limitation, any registration rights) are transferable, in whole or in part, upon surrender of this Warrant at the principal office of the Company or its designated agent, together with a written assignment of this Warrant substantially in the form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder or its agent or attorney and funds sufficient to pay any transfer taxes payable upon the making of such transfer. Upon such surrender and, if required, such payment, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in the name of the assignee or assignees, as applicable, and in the denomination or denominations specified in such instrument of assignment, and shall issue to the assignor a new Warrant evidencing the portion of this Warrant not so assigned, and this Warrant shall promptly be cancelled. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company unless the Holder has assigned this Warrant in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the Holder delivers an assignment form to the Company assigning this Warrant in full. The Warrant, if properly assigned in accordance herewith, may be exercised by a new holder for the purchase of Warrant Shares without having a new Warrant issued.

b) New Warrants. This Warrant may be divided or combined with other Warrants upon presentation hereof at the aforesaid office of the Company, together with a written notice specifying the names and denominations in which new Warrants are to be issued, signed by the Holder or its agent or attorney. Subject to compliance with Section 4(a), as to any transfer which may be involved in such division or combination, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in exchange for the Warrant or Warrants to be divided or combined in accordance with such notice. All Warrants issued on transfers or exchanges shall be dated the original Issue Date and shall be identical with this Warrant except as to the number of Warrant Shares issuable pursuant thereto.

c) Warrant Register. The Company shall register this Warrant, upon records to be maintained by the Company for that purpose (the "Warrant Register"), in the name of the record Holder hereof from time to time. The Company may deem and treat the registered Holder of this Warrant as the absolute owner hereof for the purpose of any exercise hereof or any distribution to the Holder, and for all other purposes, absent actual notice to the contrary.

d) Transfer Restrictions. If, at the time of the surrender of this Warrant in connection with any transfer of this Warrant, the transfer of this Warrant shall not be either (i) registered pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act and under applicable state securities or blue sky laws or (ii) eligible for resale without volume or manner-of-sale restrictions or current public information requirements pursuant to Rule 144, the Company may require, as a condition of allowing such transfer, that the Holder or transferee of this Warrant, as the case may be, comply with the provisions of Section 5.7 of the Purchase Agreement.

e) Representation by the Holder. The Holder, by the acceptance hereof, represents and warrants that it is acquiring this Warrant and, upon any exercise hereof, will acquire the Warrant Shares issuable upon such exercise, for its own account and not with a view to or for distributing or reselling such Warrant Shares or any part thereof in violation of the Securities Act or any applicable state securities law, except pursuant to sales registered or exempted under the Securities Act.

#### Section 5. Miscellaneous.

a) No Rights as Stockholder Until Exercise; No Settlement in Cash. This Warrant does not entitle the Holder to any voting rights, dividends or other rights as a stockholder of the Company prior to the exercise hereof as set forth in Section 2(d)(i), except as expressly set forth in Section 3. Without limiting any rights of a Holder to receive Warrant Shares on a "cashless exercise" pursuant to Section 2(c) or to receive cash payments pursuant to Section 2(d)(i) and Section 2(d)(iv) herein, in no event shall the Company be required to net cash settle an exercise of this Warrant.

b) Loss, Theft, Destruction or Mutilation of Warrant. The Company covenants that upon receipt by the Company of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant or any stock certificate relating to the Warrant Shares, and in case of loss, theft or destruction, of indemnity or security reasonably satisfactory to it (which, in the case of the Warrant, shall not include the posting of any bond), and upon surrender and cancellation of such Warrant or stock certificate, if mutilated, the Company will make and deliver a new Warrant or stock certificate of like tenor and dated as of such cancellation, in lieu of such Warrant or stock certificate.

c) Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, etc. If the last or appointed day for the taking of any action or the expiration of any right required or granted herein shall not be a Trading Day, then such action may be taken or such right may be exercised on the next succeeding Trading Day.

d) Authorized Shares.

The Company covenants that, during the period the Warrant is outstanding, it will reserve from its authorized and unissued Common Stock a sufficient number of shares to provide for the issuance of the Warrant Shares upon the exercise of any purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company further covenants that its issuance of this Warrant shall constitute full authority to its officers who are charged with the duty of issuing the necessary Warrant Shares upon the exercise of the purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company will take all such reasonable action as may be necessary to assure that such Warrant Shares may be issued as provided herein without violation of any applicable law or regulation, or of any requirements of the Trading Market upon which the Common Stock may be listed. The Company covenants that all Warrant Shares which may be issued upon the exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant will, upon exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant and payment for such Warrant Shares in accordance herewith, be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable and free from all taxes, liens and charges created by the Company in respect of the issue thereof (other than taxes in respect of any transfer occurring contemporaneously with such issue).

Except and to the extent as waived or consented to by the Holder, the Company shall not by any action, including, without limitation, amending its certificate of incorporation or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, dissolution, issue or sale of securities or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, but will at all times in good faith assist in the carrying out of all such terms and in the taking of all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate to protect the rights of Holder as set forth in this Warrant against impairment. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company will (i) not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares above the amount payable therefor upon such exercise immediately prior to such increase in par value, (ii) take all such action as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and nonassessable Warrant Shares upon the exercise of this Warrant and (iii) use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain all such authorizations, exemptions or consents from any public regulatory body having jurisdiction thereof, as may be, necessary to enable the Company to perform its obligations under this Warrant.

Before taking any action which would result in an adjustment in the number of Warrant Shares for which this Warrant is exercisable or in the Exercise Price, the Company shall obtain all such authorizations or exemptions thereof, or consents thereto, as may be necessary from any public regulatory body or bodies having jurisdiction thereof.

e) Jurisdiction. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of this Warrant shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

f) Restrictions. The Holder acknowledges that the Warrant Shares acquired upon the exercise of this Warrant, if not registered, and the Holder does not utilize cashless exercise, will have restrictions upon resale imposed by state and federal securities laws.

g) Nonwaiver and Expenses. No course of dealing or any delay or failure to exercise any right hereunder on the part of Holder shall operate as a waiver of such right or otherwise prejudice the Holder's rights, powers or remedies. Without limiting any other provision of this Warrant or the Purchase Agreement, if the Company willfully and knowingly fails to comply with any provision of this Warrant, which results in any material damages to the Holder, the Company shall pay to the Holder such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover any costs and expenses including, but not limited to, reasonable attorneys' fees, including those of appellate proceedings, incurred by the Holder in collecting any amounts due pursuant hereto or in otherwise enforcing any of its rights, powers or remedies hereunder.

h) Notices. Any notice, request or other document required or permitted to be given or delivered to the Holder by the Company shall be delivered in accordance with the notice provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

i) Limitation of Liability. No provision hereof, in the absence of any affirmative action by the Holder to exercise this Warrant to purchase Warrant Shares, and no enumeration herein of the rights or privileges of the Holder, shall give rise to any liability of the Holder for the purchase price of any Common Stock or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liability is asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.

j) Remedies. The Holder, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law, including recovery of damages, will be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Warrant. The Company agrees that monetary damages would not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of a breach by it of the provisions of this Warrant and hereby agrees to waive and not to assert the defense in any action for specific performance that a remedy at law would be adequate.



k) Successors and Assigns. Subject to applicable securities laws, this Warrant and the rights and obligations evidenced hereby shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the successors and permitted assigns of the Company and the successors and permitted assigns of Holder. The provisions of this Warrant are intended to be for the benefit of any Holder from time to time of this Warrant and shall be enforceable by the Holder or holder of Warrant Shares.

l) Amendment. This Warrant may be modified or amended or the provisions hereof waived with the written consent of the Company and the holders of Warrants that are exercisable for at least 50.1% of the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock of the Company issuable upon exercise of all of the issued and outstanding Warrants or, in the case of a waiver, by the party against whom enforcement of any such waived provision is sought, provided that if any amendment, modification or waiver disproportionately and adversely impacts a holder of such Warrants (or group of holders), the consent of the holders of at least 50.1% of the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock of the Company issuable upon exercise of all of the issued and outstanding Warrants held by such disproportionately impacted holder (or group of holders) shall also be required.

m) Severability. Wherever possible, each provision of this Warrant shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Warrant shall be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of such provisions or the remaining provisions of this Warrant.

n) Headings. The headings used in this Warrant are for the convenience of reference only and shall not, for any purpose, be deemed a part of this Warrant.

\*\*\*\*\*

*(Signature Page Follows)*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed by its officer thereunto duly authorized as of the date first above indicated.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

**NOTICE OF EXERCISE**

TO: APEXIGEN, INC.

(1) The undersigned hereby elects to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares of the Company pursuant to the terms of the attached Warrant (only if exercised in full), and tenders herewith payment of the exercise price in full, together with all applicable transfer taxes, if any.

(2) Payment shall take the form of (check applicable box):

☐ in lawful money of the United States; or

☐ if permitted the cancellation of such number of Warrant Shares as is necessary, in accordance with the formula set forth in subsection 2(c), to exercise this Warrant with respect to the maximum number of Warrant Shares purchasable pursuant to the cashless exercise procedure set forth in subsection 2(c).

(3) Please issue said Warrant Shares in the name of the undersigned or in such other name as is specified below:

The Warrant Shares shall be delivered to the following DWAC Account Number:

(4) Accredited Investor. The undersigned is an “accredited investor” as defined in Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

[SIGNATURE OF HOLDER]

Name of Investing Entity: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Investing Entity:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

ASSIGNMENT FORM

*(To assign the foregoing Warrant, execute this form and supply required information. Do not use this form to purchase shares.)*

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the foregoing Warrant and all rights evidenced thereby are hereby assigned to

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Please Print)

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Please Print)

Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Holder’s Signature:

Holder’s Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

## SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT

This Securities Purchase Agreement (this “Agreement”) is dated as of January 23, 2023, between Apexigen, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and each purchaser identified on the signature pages hereto (each, including its successors and assigns, a “Purchaser” and collectively, the “Purchasers”).

WHEREAS, subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and pursuant to Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act (as defined below), and Rule 506 promulgated thereunder, the Company desires to issue and sell to each Purchaser, and each Purchaser, severally and not jointly, desires to purchase from the Company, securities of the Company as more fully described in this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, IN CONSIDERATION of the mutual covenants contained in this Agreement, and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and adequacy of which are hereby acknowledged, the Company and each Purchaser agree as follows:

### ARTICLE I. DEFINITIONS

1.1 Definitions. In addition to the terms defined elsewhere in this Agreement, for all purposes of this Agreement, the following terms have the meanings set forth in this Section 1.1:

“Acquiring Person” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.5.

“Action” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(j).

“Affiliate” means any Person that, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls or is controlled by or is under common control with a Person, as such terms are used in and construed under Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

“Board of Directors” means the board of directors of the Company.

“Business Day” means any day other than Saturday, Sunday or other day on which commercial banks in The City of New York are authorized or required by law to remain closed; provided, however, for clarification, commercial banks shall not be deemed to be authorized or required by law to remain closed due to “stay at home”, “shelter-in-place”, “non-essential employee” or any other similar orders or restrictions or the closure of any physical branch locations at the direction of any governmental authority so long as the electronic funds transfer systems (including for wire transfers) of commercial banks in The City of New York generally are open for use by customers on such day.

“Closing” means the closing of the purchase and sale of the Securities pursuant to Section 2.1.

“Closing Date” means the Trading Day on which all of the Transaction Documents have been executed and delivered by the applicable parties thereto, and all conditions precedent to (i) the Purchasers’ obligations to pay the Subscription Amount and (ii) the Company’s obligations to deliver the Securities, in each case, have been satisfied or waived.

“Commission” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Common Stock” means the common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share, and any other class of securities into which such securities may hereafter be reclassified or changed.

“Common Stock Equivalents” means any securities of the Company or the Subsidiaries which would entitle the holder thereof to acquire at any time Common Stock, including, without limitation, any debt, preferred stock, right, option, warrant or other instrument that is at any time convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for, or otherwise entitles the holder thereof to receive, Common Stock.

“Common Warrant Shares” means the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Common Warrants.

“Common Warrants” means, collectively, the Common Stock purchase warrants delivered to the Purchasers at the Closing in accordance with Section 2.2(a) hereof, which Warrants shall be exercisable beginning six months after the date of such Warrant and have a term of exercise equal to five (5) years, in the form of Exhibit A attached hereto.

“Company Counsel” means Wilson Sonsini Goodrich & Rosati, P.C.

“Disclosure Schedules” means the Disclosure Schedules of the Company delivered concurrently herewith, if any.

“Disclosure Time” means, (i) if this Agreement is signed on a day that is not a Trading Day or after 9:00 a.m. (New York City time) and before midnight (New York City time) on any Trading Day, 9:01 a.m. (New York City time) on the Trading Day immediately following the date hereof, unless otherwise instructed as to an earlier time by the Placement Agent, and (ii) if this Agreement is signed between midnight (New York City time) and 9:00 a.m. (New York City time) on any Trading Day, no later than 9:01 a.m. (New York City time) on the date hereof, unless otherwise instructed as to an earlier time by the Placement Agent.

“Effective Date” means the earliest of the date that (a) the initial Registration Statement registering for resale all Shares and Warrant Shares has been declared effective by the Commission, (b) all of the Shares and Warrant Shares have been sold pursuant to Rule 144 or may be sold pursuant to Rule 144 without the requirement for the Company to be in compliance with the current public information required under Rule 144 and without volume or manner-of-sale restrictions, (c) following the one year anniversary of the Closing Date provided that a holder of Shares or Warrant Shares is not an Affiliate of the Company, or (d) all of the Shares and Warrant Shares may be sold pursuant to an exemption from registration under Section 4(a)(1) of the Securities Act without volume or manner-of-sale restrictions and Company Counsel has delivered to such holders a standing written unqualified opinion that resales may then be made by such holders of the Shares and Warrant Shares pursuant to such exemption which opinion shall be in form and substance reasonably acceptable to such holders.

“Escrow Agent” means FirstBank, with offices at 3500 Blue Lake Drive, Suite 400, Birmingham, AL 35243.

“Escrow Agreement” means the escrow agreement entered into prior to the date hereof, by and among the Company, the Escrow Agent and the Placement Agent pursuant to which the Purchasers shall deposit Subscription Amounts with the Escrow Agent to be applied to the transactions contemplated hereunder.

“Evaluation Date” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(s).

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

“Exempt Issuance” means the issuance of (a) shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents hereunder, (b) shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents to employees, officers or directors of the Company (including shares issued upon the exercise thereof) pursuant to any stock option or equity incentive or employee stock purchase plan duly adopted for such purpose, by a majority of the non-employee members of the Board of Directors or a majority of the members of a committee of non-employee directors established for such purpose for services rendered to the Company, (c) warrants to the Placement Agent in connection with the transactions pursuant to this Agreement and any securities upon exercise of warrants to the Placement Agent, (d) securities upon the exercise or exchange of or conversion of any Securities issued hereunder and/or other securities exercisable or exchangeable for or convertible into shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding on the date of this Agreement, provided that such securities have not been amended since the date of this Agreement to increase the number of such securities or to decrease the exercise price, exchange price or conversion price of such securities (other than in connection with stock splits or combinations) or to extend the term of such securities, and (e) securities issued pursuant to acquisitions or strategic transactions approved by a majority of the disinterested directors of the Company, provided that such securities are issued as “restricted securities” (as defined in Rule 144) and carry no registration rights that require or permit the filing of any registration statement in connection therewith during the prohibition period in Section 4.11(a) herein, and provided that any such issuance shall only be to a Person (or to the equityholders of a Person) which is, itself or through its subsidiaries, an operating company or an owner of an asset in a business synergistic with the business of the Company and shall provide to the Company additional benefits in addition to the investment of funds, but shall not include a transaction in which the Company is issuing securities primarily for the purpose of raising capital or to an entity whose primary business is investing in securities.

“FCPA” means the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended.

“GAAP” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(h).

“Indebtedness” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(bb).

“Intellectual Property Rights” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(p).

“Legend Removal Date” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.1(c).

“Liens” means a lien, charge pledge, security interest, encumbrance, right of first refusal, preemptive right or other restriction.

“Lock-Up Agreement” means the Lock-Up Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and among the Company and the Company’s directors and officers, in the form of Exhibit C attached hereto

“Material Adverse Effect” shall have the meaning assigned to such term in Section 3.1(b).

“Material Permits” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(n).

“Per Share Purchase Price” equals \$1.40, subject to adjustment for reverse and forward stock splits, stock dividends, stock combinations and other similar transactions of the Common Stock that occur after the date of this Agreement.

“Person” means an individual or corporation, partnership, trust, incorporated or unincorporated association, joint venture, limited liability company, joint stock company, government (or an agency or subdivision thereof) or other entity of any kind.

“Placement Agent” means Brookline Capital Markets, a division of Arcadia Securities, LLC.

“Pre-Funded Warrant Shares” means the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Pre-Funded Warrants.

“Pre-Funded Warrants” means, collectively, the Pre-Funded Common Stock purchase warrants delivered to the Purchasers at the Closing in accordance with Section 2.2(a) hereof, in the form of Exhibit B attached hereto.

“Proceeding” means an action, claim, suit, investigation or proceeding (including, without limitation, an informal investigation or partial proceeding, such as a deposition), whether commenced or threatened.

“Public Information Failure” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.2(b).

“Public Information Failure Payments” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.2(b).

“Purchaser Party” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.8.

“Registration Rights Agreement” means the Registration Rights Agreement, dated on or about the date hereof, among the Company and the Purchasers, in the form of Exhibit D attached hereto.

“Registration Statement” means a registration statement meeting the requirements set forth in the Registration Rights Agreement and covering the resale by the Purchasers of the Shares and the Warrant Shares.

“Required Approvals” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(e).

“Rule 144” means Rule 144 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Rule may be amended or interpreted from time to time, or any similar rule or regulation hereafter adopted by the Commission having substantially the same purpose and effect as such Rule.

“Rule 424” means Rule 424 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Rule may be amended or interpreted from time to time, or any similar rule or regulation hereafter adopted by the Commission having substantially the same purpose and effect as such Rule.

“SEC Reports” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(h).

“Securities” means the Shares, the Warrants and the Warrant Shares.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

“Shares” means the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable to each Purchaser pursuant to this Agreement.

“Short Sales” means all “short sales” as defined in Rule 200 of Regulation SHO under the Exchange Act (but shall not be deemed to include locating and/or borrowing shares of Common Stock).

“Subscription Amount” means, as to each Purchaser, the aggregate amount to be paid for Shares and Warrants purchased hereunder as specified below such Purchaser’s name on the signature page of this Agreement and next to the heading “Subscription Amount,” in United States dollars and in immediately available funds (minus, if applicable, a Purchaser’s aggregate exercise price of the Pre-Funded Warrants, which amounts shall be paid as and when such Pre-Funded Warrants are exercised for cash).

“Subsidiary” means any subsidiary of the Company as disclosed in the SEC Reports and shall, where applicable, also include any direct or indirect subsidiary of the Company formed or acquired after the date hereof.

“Trading Day” means a day on which the principal Trading Market is open for trading.

“Trading Market” means any of the following markets or exchanges on which the Common Stock is listed or quoted for trading on the date in question: the NYSE American, the Nasdaq Capital Market, the Nasdaq Global Market, the Nasdaq Global Select Market or the New York Stock Exchange (or any successors to any of the foregoing).

“Transaction Documents” means this Agreement, the Warrants, the Registration Rights Agreement, the Lock-Up Agreement, the Escrow Agreement, all exhibits and schedules thereto and hereto and any other documents or agreements executed in connection with the transactions contemplated hereunder.

“Transfer Agent” means Continental Stock Transfer & Trust, the current transfer agent of the Company, and any successor transfer agent of the Company.

“Variable Rate Transaction” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.11(b).

“VWAP” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the daily volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported on the Pink Open Market (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Purchasers of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

“Warrants” means, collectively, the Common Warrants and the Pre-Funded Warrants.

“Warrant Shares” means the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants.

## **ARTICLE II. PURCHASE AND SALE**

2.1 Closing. On the Closing Date, upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, substantially concurrent with the execution and delivery of this Agreement by the parties hereto, the Company agrees to sell, and the Purchasers, severally and not jointly, agree to purchase, up to an aggregate of \$2,793,991.20 of Shares and Warrants. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, to the extent that a Purchaser determines, in its sole discretion, that such Purchaser’s Subscription Amount (together with such Purchaser’s Affiliates and any Person acting as a group together with such Purchaser or any of such Purchaser’s Affiliates) would cause such Purchaser’s beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock to exceed the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, or as such Purchaser may otherwise choose, such Purchaser may elect to purchase Pre-Funded Warrants in lieu of the Shares as determined pursuant to Section 2.2(a). The “Beneficial Ownership Limitation” shall be 4.99% (or, at the election of the Purchaser at Closing, 9.99%) of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of the Securities on the Closing Date. In each case, the election to receive Pre-Funded Warrants is solely at the option of the Purchaser. Each Purchaser shall deliver to the Escrow Agent, via wire transfer or a certified check, immediately available funds equal to such Purchaser’s Subscription Amount as set forth on the signature page hereto executed by such Purchaser, and the Company shall deliver to each Purchaser its respective Shares and a Warrant, as determined pursuant to Section 2.2(a), and the Company and each Purchaser shall deliver the other items set forth in Section 2.2 deliverable at the Closing. Upon satisfaction of the covenants and conditions set forth in Sections 2.2 and 2.3, the Closing shall occur at the offices of Company Counsel or such other location as the parties shall mutually agree.

### 2.2 Deliveries.

(a) On or prior to the Closing Date, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to each Purchaser the following:

(i) this Agreement duly executed by the Company;

(ii) a legal opinion of Company Counsel in a form reasonably accepted to the Purchasers;

(iii) a copy of the irrevocable instructions to the Transfer Agent instructing the Transfer Agent to deliver, on an expedited basis, a certificate evidencing a number of Shares equal to such Purchaser’s Subscription Amount divided by the Per Share Purchase Price, registered in the name of such Purchaser, or, at the election of such Purchaser, evidence of the issuance of such Purchaser’s Shares hereunder as held in DRS book-entry form by the Transfer Agent and registered in the name of such Purchaser, which evidence shall be reasonably satisfactory to such Purchaser;

(iv) if applicable, a Pre-Funded Warrant registered in the name of such Purchaser to purchase up to a number of shares of Common Stock equal to the difference between (A) such Purchaser’s Subscription Amount divided by the Per Share Purchase Price and (B) the number of Shares otherwise issuable to such Purchaser that would cause such Purchaser’s beneficial ownership of Common Stock to be more than the Beneficial Ownership Limitation with an exercise price equal to \$0.00001 per share of Common Stock, subject to adjustment therein;

(v) a Warrant registered in the name of such Purchaser to purchase up to a number of shares of Common Stock equal to 100% of the sum of such Purchaser's Shares and Pre-Funded Warrant Shares, with an exercise price equal to \$1.40, subject to adjustment therein;

(vi) the Company shall have provided each Purchaser with the Escrow Agent's wire instructions, on Company letterhead and executed by the Chief Executive Officer or Chief Financial Officer;

(vii) the Lock-Up Agreements; and

(viii) the Registration Rights Agreement duly executed by the Company.

(b) On or prior to the Closing Date, each Purchaser shall deliver or cause to be delivered to the Company or the Escrow Agent, as applicable, the following:

(i) this Agreement duly executed by such Purchaser;

(ii) to the Escrow Agent, such Purchaser's Subscription Amount by wire transfer to the account of the Escrow Agent specified in writing by the Company; and

(iii) the Registration Rights Agreement duly executed by such Purchaser.

### 2.3 Closing Conditions.

(a) The obligations of the Company hereunder in connection with the Closing are subject to the following conditions being met:

(i) the accuracy in all material respects (or, to the extent representations or warranties are qualified by materiality or Material Adverse Effect, in all respects) on the Closing Date of the representations and warranties of the Purchasers contained herein (unless as of a specific date therein in which case they shall be accurate as of such date);

(ii) all obligations, covenants and agreements of each Purchaser required to be performed at or prior to the Closing Date shall have been performed; and

(iii) the delivery by each Purchaser of the items set forth in Section 2.2(b) of this Agreement.

(b) The respective obligations of the Purchasers hereunder in connection with the Closing are subject to the following conditions being met:

(i) the accuracy in all material respects (or, to the extent representations or warranties are qualified by materiality or Material Adverse Effect, in all respects) when made and on the Closing Date of the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein (unless as of a specific date therein in which case they shall be accurate as of such date);

(ii) all obligations, covenants and agreements of the Company required to be performed at or prior to the Closing Date shall have been performed;

(iii) the delivery by the Company of the items set forth in Section 2.2(a) of this Agreement;

(iv) there shall have been no Material Adverse Effect with respect to the Company since the date hereof; and

(v) from the date hereof to the Closing Date, trading in the Common Stock shall not have been suspended by the Commission or the Company's principal Trading Market, and, at any time prior to the Closing Date, trading in securities generally as reported by Bloomberg L.P. shall not have been suspended or limited, or minimum prices shall not have been established on securities whose trades are reported by such service, or on any Trading Market, nor shall a banking moratorium have been declared either by the United States or New York State authorities nor shall there have occurred any material outbreak or escalation of hostilities or other national or international calamity of such magnitude in its effect on, or any material adverse change in, any financial market which, in each case, in the reasonable judgment of such Purchaser, makes it impracticable or inadvisable to purchase the Securities at the Closing.

## ARTICLE III. REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES

3.1 Representations and Warranties of the Company. Except (i) as set forth in the Disclosure Schedules, if any, which Disclosure Schedules shall be deemed a part hereof and shall qualify any representation or otherwise made herein to the extent of the disclosure contained in the corresponding section of the Disclosure Schedules, or (ii) as disclosed in the SEC Reports, the Company hereby makes the following representations and warranties to each Purchaser:

(a) Subsidiaries. All of the material direct and indirect subsidiaries of the Company are set forth in the SEC Reports. Except as set forth in the SEC Reports, the Company owns, directly or indirectly, all of the capital stock or other equity interests



of each Subsidiary free and clear of any Liens, and all of the issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of each Subsidiary are validly issued and are fully paid, non-assessable and free of preemptive and similar rights to subscribe for or purchase securities. If the Company has no subsidiaries, all other references to the Subsidiaries or any of them in the Transaction Documents shall be disregarded.

(b) Organization and Qualification. The Company and each of the Subsidiaries is an entity duly incorporated or otherwise organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation or organization, with the requisite power and authority to own and use its properties and assets and to carry on its business as currently conducted. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary is in violation nor default of any of the provisions of its respective certificate or articles of incorporation, bylaws or other organizational or charter documents. Each of the Company and the Subsidiaries is duly qualified to conduct business and is in good standing as a foreign corporation or other entity in each jurisdiction in which the nature of the business conducted or property owned by it makes such qualification necessary, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing, as the case may be, could not have or reasonably be expected to result in: (i) a material adverse effect on the legality, validity or enforceability of any Transaction Document, (ii) a material adverse effect on the results of operations, assets, business, prospects or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Company and the Subsidiaries, taken as a whole, or (iii) a material adverse effect on the Company's ability to perform in any material respect on a timely basis its obligations under any Transaction Document (any of (i), (ii) or (iii)), a "Material Adverse Effect") and no Proceeding has been instituted in any such jurisdiction revoking, limiting or curtailing or seeking to revoke, limit or curtail such power and authority or qualification.

(c) Authorization; Enforcement. The Company has the requisite corporate power and authority to enter into and to consummate the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents and otherwise to carry out its obligations hereunder and thereunder. The execution and delivery of this Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents by the Company and the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby have been duly authorized by all necessary action on the part of the Company and no further action is required by the Company, the Board of Directors or the Company's stockholders in connection herewith or therewith other than in connection with the Required Approvals. This Agreement and each other Transaction Document to which it is a party has been (or upon delivery will have been) duly executed by the Company and, when delivered in accordance with the terms hereof and thereof, will constitute the valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except (i) as limited by general equitable principles and applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies and (iii) insofar as indemnification and contribution provisions may be limited by applicable law.

(d) No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, the issuance and sale of the Securities and the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby do not and will not (i) conflict with or violate any provision of the Company's or any Subsidiary's certificate or articles of incorporation, bylaws or other organizational or charter documents, or (ii) conflict with, or constitute a default (or an event that with notice or lapse of time or both would become a default) under, result in the creation of any Lien upon any of the properties or assets of the Company or any Subsidiary, or give to others any rights of termination, amendment, anti-dilution or similar adjustments, acceleration or cancellation (with or without notice, lapse of time or both) of, any agreement, credit facility, debt or other instrument (evidencing a Company or Subsidiary debt or otherwise) or other understanding to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which any property or asset of the Company or any Subsidiary is bound or affected, or (iii) subject to the Required Approvals, conflict with or result in a violation of any law, rule, regulation, order, judgment, injunction, decree or other restriction of any court or governmental authority to which the Company or a Subsidiary is subject (including federal and state securities laws and regulations), or by which any property or asset of the Company or a Subsidiary is bound or affected; except in the case of each of clauses (ii) and (iii), such as could not have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(e) Filings, Consents and Approvals. The Company is not required to obtain any consent, waiver, authorization or order of, give any notice to, or make any filing or registration with, any court or other federal, state, local or other governmental authority or other Person in connection with the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of the Transaction Documents, other than: (i) the filings required pursuant to Section 4.4 of this Agreement, (ii) the filing with the Commission pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement, (iii) the notice and/or application(s) to each applicable Trading Market for the issuance and sale of the Securities and the listing of the Shares and Warrant Shares for trading thereon in the time and manner required thereby and (iv) the filing of Form D with the Commission and such filings as are required to be made under applicable state securities laws (collectively, the "Required Approvals").

(f) Issuance of the Securities. The Securities are duly authorized and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the applicable Transaction Documents, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, free and clear of all Liens imposed by the Company other than restrictions on transfer provided for in the Transaction Documents. The Warrant Shares, when issued in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable,

free and clear of all Liens imposed by the Company other than restrictions on transfer provided for in the Transaction Documents. The Company has reserved from its duly authorized capital stock the maximum number of shares of Common Stock issuable pursuant to this Agreement and the Warrants.

(g) Capitalization. The authorized capital stock of the Company consists of 1,000,000,000 shares of Common Stock and 20,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share. The Company's disclosure of its issued and outstanding capital stock (including the number of shares of Common Stock owned beneficially, and of record, by Affiliates of the Company) in the SEC Reports containing such disclosure was accurate in all material respects as of the date indicated in such SEC Reports therein. The Company has not issued any capital stock since its most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act, other than pursuant to the exercise of employee stock options under the Company's stock option plans, the issuance of shares of Common Stock to employees pursuant to the Company's employee stock purchase plans and pursuant to the conversion and/or exercise of Common Stock Equivalents outstanding as of the date of the most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act. No Person has any right of first refusal, preemptive right, right of participation, or any similar right to participate in the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. Except as a result of the purchase and sale of the Securities, there are no outstanding options, warrants, scrip rights to subscribe to, calls or commitments of any character whatsoever relating to, or securities, rights or obligations convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for, or giving any Person any right to subscribe for or acquire, any shares of Common Stock or the capital stock of any Subsidiary, or contracts, commitments, understandings or arrangements by which the Company or any Subsidiary is or may become bound to issue additional shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents or capital stock of any Subsidiary. The issuance and sale of the Securities will not obligate the Company or any Subsidiary to issue shares of Common Stock or other securities to any Person (other than the Purchasers and the Placement Agent). There are no outstanding securities or instruments of the Company or any Subsidiary with any provision that adjusts the exercise, conversion, exchange or reset price of such security or instrument upon an issuance of securities by the Company or any Subsidiary. There are no outstanding securities or instruments of the Company or any Subsidiary that contain any redemption or similar provisions, and there are no contracts, commitments, understandings or arrangements by which the Company or any Subsidiary is or may become bound to redeem a security of the Company or such Subsidiary. The Company does not have any stock appreciation rights or "phantom stock" plans or agreements or any similar plan or agreement. All of the outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, have been issued in compliance with all federal and state securities laws, and none of such outstanding shares was issued in violation of any preemptive rights or similar rights to subscribe for or purchase securities. No further approval or authorization of any stockholder, the Board of Directors or others is required for the issuance and sale of the Securities. There are no stockholders agreements, voting agreements or other similar agreements with respect to the Company's capital stock to which the Company is a party or, to the knowledge of the Company, between or among any of the Company's stockholders.

(h) SEC Reports; Financial Statements. The Company has filed all reports, schedules, forms, statements and other documents required to be filed by the Company under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, including pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) thereof, for the year preceding the date hereof (or such shorter period as the Company was required by law or regulation to file such material) (the foregoing materials, including the exhibits thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein, being collectively referred to herein as the "SEC Reports") on a timely basis or has received a valid extension of such time of filing and has filed any such SEC Reports prior to the expiration of any such extension. As of their respective dates, the SEC Reports complied in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, as applicable, and none of the SEC Reports, when filed, contained any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Company has never been an issuer subject to Rule 144(i) under the Securities Act. The financial statements of the Company included in the SEC Reports comply in all material respects with applicable accounting requirements and the rules and regulations of the Commission with respect thereto as in effect at the time of filing. Such financial statements have been prepared in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles applied on a consistent basis during the periods involved ("GAAP"), except as may be otherwise specified in such financial statements or the notes thereto and except that unaudited financial statements may not contain all footnotes required by GAAP, and fairly present in all material respects the financial position of the Company and its consolidated Subsidiaries as of and for the dates thereof and the results of operations and cash flows for the periods then ended, subject, in the case of unaudited statements, to normal, immaterial, year-end audit adjustments.

(i) Material Changes; Undisclosed Events, Liabilities or Developments. Since the date of the latest audited financial statements included within the SEC Reports, except as disclosed in the SEC Reports, (i) there has been no event, occurrence or development that has had a Material Adverse Effect, (ii) the Company has not incurred any liabilities (contingent or otherwise) other than (A) trade payables and accrued expenses incurred in the ordinary course of business consistent with past practice and (B) liabilities not required to be reflected in the Company's financial statements pursuant to GAAP or disclosed in filings made with the Commission, (iii) the Company has not altered its method of accounting, (iv) the Company has not declared or made any dividend or distribution of cash or other property to its stockholders or purchased, redeemed or made any agreements to purchase or redeem any shares of its capital stock and (v) the Company has not issued any equity securities to any officer,

director or Affiliate, except pursuant to existing Company stock option plans. The Company does not have pending before the Commission any request for confidential treatment of information. Except for the issuance of the Securities contemplated by this Agreement or as disclosed in the SEC Reports, no event, liability, fact, circumstance, occurrence or development has occurred or exists or is reasonably expected to occur or exist with respect to the Company or its Subsidiaries or their respective businesses, prospects, properties, operations, assets or financial condition that would be required to be disclosed by the Company under applicable securities laws at the time this representation is made or deemed made that has not been publicly disclosed at least 1 Trading Day prior to the date that this representation is made.

(j) Litigation. Except as disclosed in the SEC Reports, there is no action, suit, inquiry, notice of violation, proceeding or investigation pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened against or affecting the Company, any Subsidiary or any of their respective properties before or by any court, arbitrator, governmental or administrative agency or regulatory authority (federal, state, county, local or foreign) that has had or would reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect (collectively, an “Action”). None of the Actions, if any, disclosed in the SEC Reports, (i) adversely affects or challenges the legality, validity or enforceability of any of the Transaction Documents or the Securities or (ii) could, if there were an unfavorable decision, have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary, nor any director or officer thereof, is or has been the subject of any Action involving a claim of violation of or liability under federal or state securities laws or a claim of breach of fiduciary duty. There has not been, and to the knowledge of the Company, there is not pending or contemplated, any investigation by the Commission involving the Company or any current or former director or officer of the Company. The Commission has not issued any stop order or other order suspending the effectiveness of any registration statement filed by the Company or any Subsidiary under the Exchange Act or the Securities Act.

(k) Labor Relations. No labor dispute exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is imminent with respect to any of the employees of the Company, which could reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. None of the Company’s or its Subsidiaries’ employees is a member of a union that relates to such employee’s relationship with the Company or such Subsidiary, and neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is a party to a collective bargaining agreement, and the Company and its Subsidiaries believe that their relationships with their employees are good. To the knowledge of the Company, no executive officer of the Company or any Subsidiary is, or is now expected to be, in violation of any material term of any employment contract, confidentiality, disclosure or proprietary information agreement or non-competition agreement, or any other contract or agreement or any restrictive covenant in favor of any third party, and the continued employment of each such executive officer does not subject the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to any liability with respect to any of the foregoing matters. The Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with all U.S. federal, state, local and foreign laws and regulations relating to employment and employment practices, terms and conditions of employment and wages and hours, except where the failure to be in compliance could not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(l) Compliance. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary: (i) is in default under or in violation of (and no event has occurred that has not been waived that, with notice or lapse of time or both, would result in a default by the Company or any Subsidiary under), nor has the Company or any Subsidiary received notice of a claim that it is in default under or that it is in violation of, any indenture, loan or credit agreement or any other agreement or instrument to which it is a party or by which it or any of its properties is bound (whether or not such default or violation has been waived), (ii) is in violation of any judgment, decree, or order of any court, arbitrator or other governmental authority or (iii) is or has been in violation of any statute, rule, ordinance or regulation of any governmental authority, including without limitation all foreign, federal, state and local laws relating to taxes, environmental protection, occupational health and safety, product quality and safety and employment and labor matters, except in each case as could not have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(m) Environmental Laws. The Company and its Subsidiaries (i) are in compliance with all federal, state, local and foreign laws relating to pollution or protection of human health or the environment (including ambient air, surface water, groundwater, land surface or subsurface strata), including laws relating to emissions, discharges, releases or threatened releases of chemicals, pollutants, contaminants, or toxic or hazardous substances or wastes (collectively, “Hazardous Materials”) into the environment, or otherwise relating to the manufacture, processing, distribution, use, treatment, storage, disposal, transport or handling of Hazardous Materials, as well as all authorizations, codes, decrees, demands, or demand letters, injunctions, judgments, licenses, notices or notice letters, orders, permits, plans or regulations, issued, entered, promulgated or approved thereunder (“Environmental Laws”); (ii) have received all permits licenses or other approvals required of them under applicable Environmental Laws to conduct their respective businesses; and (iii) are in compliance with all terms and conditions of any such permit, license or approval where in each clause (i), (ii) and (iii), the failure to so comply could be reasonably expected to have, individually or in the aggregate, a Material Adverse Effect.

(n) Regulatory Permits. The Company and the Subsidiaries possess all certificates, authorizations and permits issued by the appropriate federal, state, local or foreign regulatory authorities necessary to conduct their respective businesses as described

in the SEC Reports, except where the failure to possess such permits could not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect (“Material Permits”), and neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any Material Permit.

(o) Title to Assets. The Company and the Subsidiaries have good and marketable title in fee simple to all real property owned by them and good and marketable title in all personal property owned by them that is material to the business of the Company and the Subsidiaries, in each case free and clear of all Liens, except for (i) Liens as do not materially affect the value of such property and do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and the Subsidiaries, and (ii) Liens for the payment of federal, state or other taxes, for which appropriate reserves have been made therefor in accordance with GAAP and the payment of which is neither delinquent nor subject to penalties. Any real property and facilities held under lease by the Company and the Subsidiaries are held by them under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases with which the Company and the Subsidiaries are in compliance.

(p) Intellectual Property. The Company and the Subsidiaries have, or have rights to use, all patents, patent applications, trademarks, trademark applications, service marks, trade names, trade secrets, inventions, copyrights, licenses and other intellectual property rights and similar rights necessary or required for use in connection with their respective businesses as described in the SEC Reports and which the failure to so have could have a Material Adverse Effect (collectively, the “Intellectual Property Rights”). None of, and neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received a notice (written or otherwise) that any of, the Intellectual Property Rights has expired, terminated or been abandoned, or is expected to expire or terminate or be abandoned, within two (2) years from the date of this Agreement, except as would not have or reasonably be expected to not have a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received, since the date of the latest audited financial statements included within the SEC Reports, a written notice of a claim or otherwise has any knowledge that the Intellectual Property Rights violate or infringe upon the rights of any Person, except as could not have or reasonably be expected to not have a Material Adverse Effect. To the knowledge of the Company, all such Intellectual Property Rights are enforceable and there is no existing infringement by another Person of any of the Intellectual Property Rights. The Company and its Subsidiaries have taken reasonable security measures to protect the secrecy, confidentiality and value of all of their intellectual properties, except where failure to do so could not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(q) Insurance. The Company and the Subsidiaries are insured by insurers of recognized financial responsibility against such losses and risks and in such amounts as are prudent and customary in the businesses in which the Company and the Subsidiaries are engaged, including, but not limited to, directors and officers insurance coverage. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has any reason to believe that it will not be able to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business without a significant increase in cost.

(r) Transactions with Affiliates and Employees. Except as disclosed in the SEC Reports, none of the officers or directors of the Company or any Subsidiary and, to the knowledge of the Company, none of the employees of the Company or any Subsidiary is presently a party to any transaction with the Company or any Subsidiary (other than for services as employees, officers and directors), including any contract, agreement or other arrangement providing for the furnishing of services to or by, providing for rental of real or personal property to or from, providing for the borrowing of money from or lending of money to or otherwise requiring payments to or from any officer, director or such employee or, to the knowledge of the Company, any entity in which any officer, director, or any such employee has a substantial interest or is an officer, director, trustee, stockholder, member or partner, in each case in excess of \$120,000 other than for (i) payment of salary or consulting fees for services rendered, (ii) reimbursement for expenses incurred on behalf of the Company and (iii) other employee benefits, including stock option agreements under any stock option plan of the Company.

(s) Sarbanes-Oxley; Internal Accounting Controls. The Company and the Subsidiaries are in compliance in all material respects with any and all applicable requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 that are effective as of the date hereof, and any and all applicable rules and regulations promulgated by the Commission thereunder that are effective as of the date hereof and as of the Closing Date. The Company and the Subsidiaries have established disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the Company and the Subsidiaries and designed such disclosure controls and procedures to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the Commission’s rules and forms. The Company’s certifying officers have evaluated the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures of the Company and the Subsidiaries as of the end of the period covered by the most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act (such date, the “Evaluation Date”). The Company presented in its most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act the conclusions of the certifying officers about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures based on their evaluations as of the Evaluation Date. Since the Evaluation Date, there have been no changes in the internal control over financial reporting (as such term is defined in the Exchange Act) of the Company and its Subsidiaries that have materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the internal control over financial reporting of the Company and its Subsidiaries.

(t) Certain Fees. With the exception of Brookline Capital Markets, a division of Arcadia Securities, LLC, which is acting as placement agent in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, no brokerage or finder's fees or commissions are or will be payable by the Company or any Subsidiary to any broker, financial advisor or consultant, finder, placement agent, investment banker, bank or other Person with respect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. The Purchasers shall have no obligation with respect to any fees or with respect to any claims made by or on behalf of other Persons for fees of a type contemplated in this Section that may be due in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(u) Private Placement. Assuming the accuracy of the Purchasers' representations and warranties set forth in Section 3.2, no registration under the Securities Act is required for the offer and sale of the Securities by the Company to the Purchasers as contemplated hereby. The issuance and sale of the Securities hereunder does not contravene the rules and regulations of the Trading Market.

(v) Investment Company. The Company is not, and is not an Affiliate of, and immediately after receipt of payment for the Securities, will not be or be an Affiliate of, an "investment company" within the meaning of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended. The Company shall conduct its business in a manner so that it will not become an "investment company" subject to registration under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

(w) Registration Rights. Except as disclosed in the SEC Reports, other than each of the Purchasers, no Person has any right to cause the Company or any Subsidiary to effect the registration under the Securities Act of any securities of the Company or any Subsidiary.

(x) Listing and Maintenance Requirements. The Common Stock is registered pursuant to Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act, and the Company has taken no action designed to, or which to its knowledge is likely to have the effect of, terminating the registration of the Common Stock under the Exchange Act nor has the Company received any notification that the Commission is contemplating terminating such registration. The Company has not, in the 12 months preceding the date hereof, received notice from any Trading Market on which the Common Stock is or has been listed or quoted to the effect that the Company is not in compliance with the listing or maintenance requirements of such Trading Market. The Company is, and has no reason to believe that it will not in the foreseeable future continue to be, in compliance with all such listing and maintenance requirements. The Common Stock is currently eligible for electronic transfer through the Depository Trust Company or another established clearing corporation and the Company is current in payment of the fees to the Depository Trust Company (or such other established clearing corporation) in connection with such electronic transfer.

(y) Application of Takeover Protections. The Company and the Board of Directors have taken all necessary action, if any, in order to render inapplicable any control share acquisition, business combination, poison pill (including any distribution under a rights agreement) or other similar anti-takeover provision under the Company's certificate of incorporation (or similar charter documents) or the laws of its state of incorporation that is or could become applicable to the Purchasers as a result of the Purchasers and the Company fulfilling their obligations or exercising their rights under the Transaction Documents, including without limitation as a result of the Company's issuance of the Securities and the Purchasers' ownership of the Securities.

(z) Disclosure. Except with respect to the material terms and conditions of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, the Company confirms that neither it nor any other Person acting on its behalf has provided any of the Purchasers or their agents or counsel with any information that it believes constitutes or might constitute material, non-public information. The Company understands and confirms that the Purchasers will rely on the foregoing representation in effecting transactions in securities of the Company. All of the disclosure furnished by or on behalf of the Company to the Purchasers regarding the Company and its Subsidiaries, their respective businesses and the transactions contemplated hereby, including the Disclosure Schedules to this Agreement, if any, is true and correct and does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements made therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The press releases disseminated by the Company during the twelve months preceding the date of this Agreement taken as a whole do not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made and when made, not misleading. The Company acknowledges and agrees that no Purchaser makes or has made any representations or warranties with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby other than those specifically set forth in Section 3.2 hereof.

(aa) No Integrated Offering. Assuming the accuracy of the Purchasers' representations and warranties set forth in Section 3.2, neither the Company, nor any of its Affiliates, nor any Person acting on its or their behalf has, directly or indirectly, made any offers or sales of any security or solicited any offers to buy any security, under circumstances that would cause this offering of the Securities to be integrated with prior offerings by the Company for purposes of (i) the Securities Act which would require the registration of any such securities under the Securities Act, or (ii) any applicable shareholder approval provisions of any Trading Market on which any of the securities of the Company are listed or designated.

(bb) Solvency. Based on the consolidated financial condition of the Company as of the Closing Date, after giving effect to the receipt by the Company of the proceeds from the sale of the Securities hereunder and except as disclosed in the SEC Reports, (i) the fair saleable value of the Company's assets exceeds the amount that will be required to be paid on or in respect of the Company's existing debts and other liabilities (including known contingent liabilities) as they mature, (ii) the Company's assets do not constitute unreasonably small capital to carry on its business as now conducted and as proposed to be conducted including its capital needs taking into account the particular capital requirements of the business conducted by the Company, consolidated and projected capital requirements and capital availability thereof, and (iii) the current cash flow of the Company, together with the proceeds the Company would receive, were it to liquidate all of its assets, after taking into account all anticipated uses of the cash, would be sufficient to pay all amounts on or in respect of its liabilities when such amounts are required to be paid. The Company does not intend to incur debts beyond its ability to pay such debts as they mature (taking into account the timing and amounts of cash to be payable on or in respect of its debt). The Company has no knowledge of any facts or circumstances which lead it to believe that it will file for reorganization or liquidation under the bankruptcy or reorganization laws of any jurisdiction within one year from the Closing Date. The SEC Reports include disclosure of all material outstanding secured and unsecured Indebtedness of the Company or any Subsidiary, or for which the Company or any Subsidiary has commitments as of the date of such applicable SEC Report. For the purposes of this Agreement, "Indebtedness" means (x) any material liabilities for borrowed money or amounts owed (other than trade accounts payable incurred in the ordinary course of business), (y) all material guaranties, endorsements and other contingent obligations in respect of indebtedness of others, whether or not the same are or should be reflected in the Company's consolidated balance sheet (or the notes thereto), except guaranties by endorsement of negotiable instruments for deposit or collection or similar transactions in the ordinary course of business; and (z) the present value of any material lease payments due under leases required to be capitalized in accordance with GAAP. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary is in default with respect to any Indebtedness.

(cc) Tax Status. Except for matters that would not, individually or in the aggregate, have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect, the Company and its Subsidiaries each (i) has made or filed all United States federal, state and local income and all foreign income and franchise tax returns, reports and declarations required by any jurisdiction to which it is subject, (ii) has paid all taxes and other governmental assessments and charges that are material in amount, shown or determined to be due on such returns, reports and declarations and (iii) has set aside on its books provision reasonably adequate for the payment of all material taxes for periods subsequent to the periods to which such returns, reports or declarations apply. There are no unpaid taxes in any material amount claimed to be due by the taxing authority of any jurisdiction, and the officers of the Company or of any Subsidiary know of no basis for any such claim.

(dd) No General Solicitation. Neither the Company nor any Person acting on behalf of the Company has offered or sold any of the Securities by any form of general solicitation or general advertising. The Company has offered the Securities for sale only to the Purchasers and certain other "accredited investors" within the meaning of Rule 501 under the Securities Act.

(ee) Foreign Corrupt Practices. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary, nor to the knowledge of the Company or any Subsidiary, any agent or other person acting on behalf of the Company or any Subsidiary, has (i) directly or indirectly, used any funds for unlawful contributions, gifts, entertainment or other unlawful expenses related to foreign or domestic political activity, (ii) made any unlawful payment to foreign or domestic government officials or employees or to any foreign or domestic political parties or campaigns from corporate funds, (iii) failed to disclose fully any contribution made by the Company or any Subsidiary (or made by any person acting on its behalf of which the Company is aware) which is in violation of law or (iv) violated in any material respect any provision of FCPA.

(ff) Accountants. The Company's accounting firm is disclosed in the SEC Reports. To the knowledge and belief of the Company, such accounting firm (i) is a registered public accounting firm as required by the Exchange Act and (ii) shall express its opinion with respect to the financial statements to be included in the Company's Annual Report for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2022.

(gg) No Disagreements with Accountants. There are no disagreements of any kind presently existing, or reasonably anticipated by the Company to arise, between the Company and the accountants formerly or presently employed by the Company and the Company is current with respect to any fees owed to its accountants which could affect the Company's ability to perform any of its obligations under any of the Transaction Documents.

(hh) Acknowledgment Regarding Purchasers' Purchase of Securities. The Company acknowledges and agrees that each of the Purchasers is acting solely in the capacity of an arm's length purchaser with respect to the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated thereby. The Company further acknowledges that no Purchaser is acting as a financial advisor or fiduciary of the Company (or in any similar capacity) with respect to the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated thereby and any advice given by any Purchaser or any of their respective representatives or agents in connection with the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated thereby is merely incidental to the Purchasers' purchase of the Securities. The Company further represents to each Purchaser that the Company's decision to enter into this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents has been based solely on the independent evaluation of the transactions contemplated hereby by the Company and its representatives.

(ii) Acknowledgment Regarding Purchaser's Trading Activity. Anything in this Agreement or elsewhere herein to the contrary notwithstanding (except for Sections 3.2(g) and 4.13 hereof), it is understood and acknowledged by the Company that: (i) none of the Purchasers has been asked by the Company to agree, nor has any Purchaser agreed, to desist from purchasing or selling, long and/or short, securities of the Company, or "derivative" securities based on securities issued by the Company or to hold the Securities for any specified term, (ii) past or future open market or other transactions by any Purchaser, specifically including, without limitation, Short Sales or "derivative" transactions, before or after the closing of this or future private placement transactions, may negatively impact the market price of the Company's publicly-traded securities, (iii) any Purchaser, and counter-parties in "derivative" transactions to which any such Purchaser is a party, directly or indirectly, presently may have a "short" position in the Common Stock and (iv) each Purchaser shall not be deemed to have any affiliation with or control over any arm's length counter-party in any "derivative" transaction. The Company further understands and acknowledges that (y) one or more Purchasers may engage in hedging activities at various times during the period that the Securities are outstanding, including, without limitation, during the periods that the value of the Warrant Shares deliverable with respect to Securities are being determined, and (z) such hedging activities (if any) could reduce the value of the existing stockholders' equity interests in the Company at and after the time that the hedging activities are being conducted. The Company acknowledges that such aforementioned hedging activities do not constitute a breach of any of the Transaction Documents.

(jj) Regulation M Compliance. The Company has not, and to its knowledge no one acting on its behalf has, (i) taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to cause or to result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of any of the Securities, (ii) sold, bid for, purchased, or paid any compensation for soliciting purchases of, any of the Securities, or (iii) paid or agreed to pay to any Person any compensation for soliciting another to purchase any other securities of the Company, other than, in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii), compensation paid to the Placement Agent in connection with the placement of the Securities.

(kk) Reserved.

(ll) Stock Option Plans. Each stock option granted by the Company under the Company's stock option plan was granted (i) in accordance with the terms of the Company's stock option plan and (ii) with an exercise price at least equal to the fair market value of the Common Stock on the date such stock option would be considered granted under GAAP and applicable law. No stock option granted under the Company's stock option plan has been backdated. The Company has not knowingly granted, and there is no and has been no Company policy or practice to knowingly grant, stock options prior to, or otherwise knowingly coordinate the grant of stock options with, the release or other public announcement of material information regarding the Company or its Subsidiaries or their financial results or prospects.

(mm) Cybersecurity. (i)(x) There has been no security breach or other compromise of or relating to any of the Company's or any Subsidiary's information technology and computer systems, networks, hardware, software, data (including the data of its respective customers, employees, suppliers, vendors and any third party data maintained by or on behalf of it), equipment or technology (collectively, "IT Systems and Data") and (y) the Company and the Subsidiaries have not been notified of, and has no knowledge of any event or condition that would reasonably be expected to result in, any security breach or other compromise to its IT Systems and Data; (ii) the Company and the Subsidiaries are presently in compliance with all applicable laws or statutes and all judgments, orders, rules and regulations of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, internal policies and contractual obligations relating to the privacy and security of IT Systems and Data and to the protection of such IT Systems and Data from unauthorized use, access, misappropriation or modification, except as would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect; (iii) the Company and the Subsidiaries have implemented and maintained commercially reasonable safeguards to maintain and protect its material confidential information and the integrity, continuous operation, redundancy and security of all IT Systems and Data; and (iv) the Company and the Subsidiaries have implemented backup and disaster recovery technology consistent with industry standards and practices.

(nn) Office of Foreign Assets Control. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary nor, to the Company's knowledge, any director, officer, agent, employee or affiliate of the Company or any Subsidiary is currently subject to any U.S. sanctions administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Treasury Department ("OFAC").

(oo) U.S. Real Property Holding Corporation. The Company is not and has never been a U.S. real property holding corporation within the meaning of Section 897 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Company shall so certify upon Purchaser's request.

(pp) Bank Holding Company Act. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or Affiliates is subject to the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, as amended (the "BHCA") and to regulation by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (the "Federal Reserve"). Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or Affiliates owns or controls, directly or indirectly, five percent (5%) or more of the outstanding shares of any class of voting securities or twenty-five percent or more of the total equity of a bank or any entity that is subject to the BHCA and to regulation by the Federal Reserve. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or Affiliates exercises a controlling influence over the management or policies of a bank or any entity that is subject to the BHCA and to regulation by the Federal Reserve.

(qq) Money Laundering. The operations of the Company and its Subsidiaries are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with applicable financial record-keeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, applicable money laundering statutes and applicable rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the “Money Laundering Laws”), and no Action or Proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company or any Subsidiary with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the knowledge of the Company or any Subsidiary, threatened.

(rr) No Disqualification Events. With respect to the Securities to be offered and sold hereunder in reliance on Rule 506 under the Securities Act, none of the Company, any of its predecessors, any affiliated issuer, any director, executive officer, other officer of the Company participating in the offering hereunder, any beneficial owner of 20% or more of the Company’s outstanding voting equity securities, calculated on the basis of voting power, nor any promoter (as that term is defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) connected with the Company in any capacity at the time of sale (each, an “Issuer Covered Person” and, together, “Issuer Covered Persons”) is subject to any of the “Bad Actor” disqualifications described in Rule 506(d)(1)(i) to (viii) under the Securities Act (a “Disqualification Event”), except for a Disqualification Event covered by Rule 506(d)(2) or (d)(3). The Company has exercised reasonable care to determine whether any Issuer Covered Person is subject to a Disqualification Event. The Company has complied, to the extent applicable, with its disclosure obligations under Rule 506(e), and has furnished to the Purchasers a copy of any disclosures provided thereunder.

(ss) Other Covered Persons. Other than the Placement Agent, the Company is not aware of any person (other than any Issuer Covered Person) that has been or will be paid (directly or indirectly) remuneration for solicitation of purchasers in connection with the sale of any Securities.

(tt) Notice of Disqualification Events. The Company will notify the Purchasers and the Placement Agent in writing, prior to the Closing Date of (i) any Disqualification Event relating to any Issuer Covered Person and (ii) any event that would, with the passage of time, become a Disqualification Event relating to any Issuer Covered Person.

3.2 Representations and Warranties of the Purchasers. Each Purchaser, for itself and for no other Purchaser, hereby represents and warrants as of the date hereof and as of the Closing Date to the Company as follows (unless as of a specific date therein, in which case they shall be accurate as of such date):

(a) Organization; Authority. Such Purchaser is either an individual or an entity duly incorporated or formed, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation or formation with full right, corporate, partnership, limited liability company or similar power and authority to enter into and to consummate the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents and otherwise to carry out its obligations hereunder and thereunder. The execution and delivery of the Transaction Documents and performance by such Purchaser of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate, partnership, limited liability company or similar action, as applicable, on the part of such Purchaser. Each Transaction Document to which it is a party has been duly executed by such Purchaser, and when delivered by such Purchaser in accordance with the terms hereof, will constitute the valid and legally binding obligation of such Purchaser, enforceable against it in accordance with its terms, except (i) as limited by general equitable principles and applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors’ rights generally, (ii) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies and (iii) insofar as indemnification and contribution provisions may be limited by applicable law.

(b) Own Account. Such Purchaser understands that the Securities are “restricted securities” and have not been registered under the Securities Act or any applicable state securities law and is acquiring the Securities as principal for its own account and not with a view to or for distributing or reselling such Securities or any part thereof in violation of the Securities Act or any applicable state securities law, has no present intention of distributing any of such Securities in violation of the Securities Act or any applicable state securities law and has no direct or indirect arrangement or understandings with any other persons to distribute or regarding the distribution of such Securities in violation of the Securities Act or any applicable state securities law (this representation and warranty not limiting such Purchaser’s right to sell the Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement or otherwise in compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws). Such Purchaser is acquiring the Securities hereunder in the ordinary course of its business.

(c) Purchaser Status. At the time such Purchaser was offered the Securities, it was, and as of the date hereof it is, and on each date on which it exercises any Warrants, it will be either: (i) an “accredited investor” as defined in Rule 501(a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), (a)(7), (a)(8), (a)(9), (a)(12), or (a)(13) under the Securities Act or (ii) a “qualified institutional buyer” as defined in Rule 144A(a) under the Securities Act.

(d) Experience of Such Purchaser. Such Purchaser, either alone or together with its representatives, has such knowledge, sophistication and experience in business and financial matters so as to be capable of evaluating the merits and risks of the prospective investment in the Securities, and has so evaluated the merits and risks of such investment. Such Purchaser is able to bear the economic risk of an investment in the Securities and, at the present time, is able to afford a complete loss of such investment.



(e) General Solicitation. Such Purchaser is not, to such Purchaser's knowledge, purchasing the Securities as a result of any advertisement, article, notice or other communication regarding the Securities published in any newspaper, magazine or similar media or broadcast over television or radio or presented at any seminar or, to the knowledge of such Purchaser, any other general solicitation or general advertisement.

(f) Access to Information. Such Purchaser acknowledges that it has had the opportunity to review the Transaction Documents (including all exhibits and schedules thereto) and the SEC Reports and has been afforded (i) the opportunity to ask such questions as it has deemed necessary of, and to receive answers from, representatives of the Company concerning the terms and conditions of the offering of the Securities and the merits and risks of investing in the Securities; (ii) access to information about the Company and its financial condition, results of operations, business, properties, management and prospects sufficient to enable it to evaluate its investment; and (iii) the opportunity to obtain such additional information that the Company possesses or can acquire without unreasonable effort or expense that is necessary to make an informed investment decision with respect to the investment. Such Purchaser acknowledges and agrees that neither the Placement Agent nor any Affiliate of the Placement Agent has provided such Purchaser with any information or advice with respect to the Securities nor is such information or advice necessary or desired. Neither the Placement Agent nor any of its Affiliates has made or makes any representation as to the Company or the quality of the Securities, and the Placement Agent and one or more of its Affiliates may have acquired non-public information with respect to the Company which such Purchaser agrees need not be provided to it. In connection with the issuance of the Securities to such Purchaser, neither the Placement Agent nor any of its Affiliates has acted as a financial advisor or fiduciary to such Purchaser.

(g) Certain Transactions and Confidentiality. Other than consummating the transactions contemplated hereunder, such Purchaser has not, nor has any Person acting on behalf of or pursuant to any understanding with such Purchaser, directly or indirectly executed any purchases or sales, including Short Sales, of the securities of the Company during the period commencing as of the time that such Purchaser first received a term sheet (written or oral) from the Company or any other Person representing the Company setting forth the material terms of the transactions contemplated hereunder and ending immediately prior to the execution hereof. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the case of a Purchaser that is a multi-managed investment vehicle whereby separate portfolio managers manage separate portions of such Purchaser's assets and the portfolio managers have no direct knowledge of the investment decisions made by the portfolio managers managing other portions of such Purchaser's assets, the representation set forth above shall only apply with respect to the portion of assets managed by the portfolio manager that made the investment decision to purchase the Securities covered by this Agreement. Other than to other Persons party to this Agreement or to such Purchaser's representatives, including, without limitation, its officers, directors, partners, legal and other advisors, employees, agents and Affiliates, such Purchaser has maintained the confidentiality of all disclosures made to it in connection with this transaction (including the existence and terms of this transaction). Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the avoidance of doubt, nothing contained herein shall constitute a representation or warranty, or preclude any actions, with respect to locating or borrowing shares in order to effect Short Sales or similar transactions in the future.

The Company acknowledges and agrees that the representations contained in this Section 3.2 shall not modify, amend or affect such Purchaser's right to rely on the Company's representations and warranties contained in this Agreement or any representations and warranties contained in any other Transaction Document or any other document or instrument executed and/or delivered in connection with this Agreement or the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby. Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the avoidance of doubt, nothing contained herein shall constitute a representation or warranty, or preclude any actions, with respect to locating or borrowing shares in order to effect Short Sales or similar transactions in the future.

(h) Former "Shell Company". Each Purchaser understands that until July 29, 2022, the Company was a "shell company" as defined in Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act. Pursuant to Rule 144(i), securities issued by a current or former shell company that otherwise meet the holding period and other requirements of Rule 144 nevertheless cannot be sold in reliance on Rule 144 until one year after the Company (a) is no longer a shell company; and (b) has filed current "Form 10 information" (as defined in Rule 144(i)) with the SEC reflecting that it is no longer a shell company, and provided that at the time of a proposed sale pursuant to Rule 144, the Company is subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act and has filed all reports and other materials required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, as applicable, during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the issuer was required to file such reports and materials), other than Form 8-K reports. As a result, the restrictive legends on certificates or book-entry positions for the Shares cannot be removed except in connection with an actual sale meeting the foregoing requirements or pursuant to an effective registration statement.

#### **ARTICLE IV. OTHER AGREEMENTS OF THE PARTIES**

##### **4.1 Transfer Restrictions.**

(a) The Securities may only be disposed of in compliance with state and federal securities laws. In connection with any transfer of Securities other than pursuant to an effective registration statement or Rule 144, to the Company or to an Affiliate of

a Purchaser or in connection with a pledge as contemplated in Section 4.1(b), the Company may require the transferor thereof to provide to the Company an opinion of counsel selected by the transferor and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the form and substance of which opinion shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Company, to the effect that such transfer does not require registration of such transferred Securities under the Securities Act. As a condition of transfer, any such transferee shall agree in writing to be bound by the terms of this Agreement and the Registration Rights Agreement and shall have the rights and obligations of a Purchaser under this Agreement and the Registration Rights Agreement.

(b) The Purchasers agree to the imprinting, so long as is required by this Section 4.1, of a legend on any of the Securities in the following form:

THIS SECURITY HAS NOT BEEN REGISTERED WITH THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION OR THE SECURITIES COMMISSION OF ANY STATE IN RELIANCE UPON AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “SECURITIES ACT”), AND, ACCORDINGLY, MAY NOT BE OFFERED OR SOLD EXCEPT PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR PURSUANT TO AN AVAILABLE EXEMPTION FROM, OR IN A TRANSACTION NOT SUBJECT TO, THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THIS SECURITY MAY BE PLEDGED IN CONNECTION WITH A BONA FIDE MARGIN ACCOUNT WITH A REGISTERED BROKER-DEALER OR OTHER LOAN WITH A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION THAT IS AN “ACCREDITED INVESTOR” AS DEFINED IN RULE 501(a) UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR OTHER LOAN SECURED BY SUCH SECURITIES.

The Company acknowledges and agrees that a Purchaser may from time to time pledge pursuant to a bona fide margin agreement with a registered broker-dealer or grant a security interest in some or all of the Securities to a financial institution that is an “accredited investor” as defined in Rule 501(a) under the Securities Act and, if required under the terms of such arrangement, such Purchaser may transfer pledged or secured Securities to the pledgees or secured parties. Such a pledge or transfer would not be subject to approval of the Company and no legal opinion of legal counsel of the pledgee, secured party or pledgor shall be required in connection therewith. Further, no notice shall be required of such pledge. At the appropriate Purchaser’s expense, the Company will execute and deliver such reasonable documentation as a pledgee or secured party of Securities may reasonably request in connection with a pledge or transfer of the Securities, including, if the Securities are subject to registration pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement, the preparation and filing of any required prospectus supplement under Rule 424(b)(3) under the Securities Act or other applicable provision of the Securities Act to appropriately amend the list of Selling Stockholders (as defined in the Registration Rights Agreement) thereunder.

(c) Certificates evidencing the Shares and Warrant Shares shall not contain any legend (including the legend set forth in Section 4.1(b) hereof), (i) while a registration statement (including the Registration Statement) covering the resale of such security is effective under the Securities Act, (ii) following any sale of such Shares or Warrant Shares pursuant to Rule 144 (assuming cashless exercise of the Warrants), (iii) if such Shares or Warrant Shares are eligible for sale under Rule 144 (assuming cashless exercise of the Warrants), or (iv) if such legend is not required under applicable requirements of the Securities Act (including judicial interpretations and pronouncements issued by the staff of the Commission). The Company shall cause its counsel to issue a legal opinion to the Transfer Agent or the Purchaser if required by the Transfer Agent to effect the removal of the legend hereunder, or if requested by a Purchaser, respectively. If all or any portion of a Warrant is exercised at a time when there is an effective registration statement to cover the resale of the Warrant Shares, or if such Shares or Warrant Shares may be sold under Rule 144 and the Company is then in compliance with the current public information required under Rule 144 (assuming cashless exercise of the Warrants), or if the Shares or Warrant Shares may be sold under Rule 144 without the requirement for the Company to be in compliance with the current public information required under Rule 144 as to such Shares or Warrant Shares or if such legend is not otherwise required under applicable requirements of the Securities Act (including judicial interpretations and pronouncements issued by the staff of the Commission) then such Warrant Shares shall be issued free of all legends. The Company agrees that at such time as such legend is no longer required under this Section 4.1(c), it will, no later than three (3) Trading Days following the delivery by a Purchaser to the Company or the Transfer Agent of a certificate representing Shares or Warrant Shares, as the case may be, issued with a restrictive legend (such date, the “Legend Removal Date”), deliver or cause to be delivered to such Purchaser a certificate representing such shares that is free from all restrictive and other legends. The Company may not make any notation on its records or give instructions to the Transfer Agent that enlarge the restrictions on transfer set forth in this Section 4. Certificates for Securities subject to legend removal hereunder shall be transmitted by the Transfer Agent to the Purchaser by crediting the account of the Purchaser’s prime broker with the Depository Trust Company System as directed by such Purchaser.

(d) In addition to such Purchaser’s other available remedies, the Company shall pay to a Purchaser, in cash, (i) as partial liquidated damages and not as a penalty, for each \$1,000 of Shares or Warrant Shares (based on the VWAP of the Common Stock on the date such Securities are submitted to the Transfer Agent) delivered for removal of the restrictive legend and subject to Section 4.1(c), \$5 per Trading Day (increasing to \$10 per Trading Day five (5) Trading Days after such damages have begun to accrue) for each Trading Day after the Legend Removal Date until such certificate is delivered without a legend and (ii) if the Company fails to (a) issue and deliver (or cause to be delivered) to a Purchaser by the Legend Removal Date a certificate

representing the Securities so delivered to the Company by such Purchaser that is free from all restrictive and other legends and (b) if after the Legend Removal Date such Purchaser purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by such Purchaser of all or any portion of the number of shares of Common Stock, or a sale of a number of shares of Common Stock equal to all or any portion of the number of shares of Common Stock that such Purchaser anticipated receiving from the Company without any restrictive legend, then, an amount equal to the excess of such Purchaser's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased (including brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any) (the "Buy-In Price") over the product of (A) such number of Shares or Warrant Shares that the Company was required to deliver to such Purchaser by the Legend Removal Date multiplied by (B) the lowest closing sale price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date of the delivery by such Purchaser to the Company of the applicable Shares or Warrant Shares (as the case may be) and ending on the date of such delivery and payment under this Section 4(d).

(e) Each Purchaser, severally and not jointly with the other Purchasers, agrees with the Company that such Purchaser will sell any Securities pursuant to either the registration requirements of the Securities Act, including any applicable prospectus delivery requirements, or an exemption therefrom, and that if Securities are sold pursuant to a Registration Statement, they will be sold in compliance with the plan of distribution set forth therein, and acknowledges that the removal of the restrictive legend from certificates representing Securities as set forth in this Section 4.1 is predicated upon the Company's reliance upon this understanding.

#### 4.2 Furnishing of Information; Public Information.

(a) Until the earlier of the time that (i) no Purchaser owns Securities or (ii) the Warrants have expired, the Company covenants to maintain the registration of the Common Stock under Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act and to timely file (or obtain extensions in respect thereof and file within the applicable grace period) all reports required to be filed by the Company after the date hereof pursuant to the Exchange Act even if the Company is not then subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act.

(b) At any time during the period commencing from the six (6) month anniversary of the date hereof and ending at such time that all of the Securities may be sold without the requirement for the Company to be in compliance with Rule 144(c)(1) and otherwise without restriction or limitation pursuant to Rule 144, if the Company (i) shall fail for any reason to satisfy the current public information requirement under Rule 144(c) or (ii) has ever been an issuer described in Rule 144(i)(1)(i) or becomes an issuer in the future, and the Company shall fail to satisfy any condition set forth in Rule 144(i)(2) (a "Public Information Failure") then, in addition to such Purchaser's other available remedies, the Company shall pay to a Purchaser, in cash, as partial liquidated damages and not as a penalty, by reason of any such delay in or reduction of its ability to sell the Securities, an amount in cash equal to one-half percent (0.5%) of the aggregate Subscription Amount of such Purchaser's Securities on the day of a Public Information Failure and on every thirtieth (30<sup>th</sup>) day (pro rated for periods totaling less than thirty days) thereafter until the earlier of (a) the date such Public Information Failure is cured and (b) such time that such public information is no longer required for the Purchasers to transfer the Shares and Warrant Shares pursuant to Rule 144. The payments to which a Purchaser shall be entitled pursuant to this Section 4.2(b) are referred to herein as "Public Information Failure Payments." Public Information Failure Payments shall be paid on the earlier of (i) the last day of the calendar month during which such Public Information Failure Payments are incurred and (ii) the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Business Day after the event or failure giving rise to the Public Information Failure Payments is cured. In the event the Company fails to make Public Information Failure Payments in a timely manner, such Public Information Failure Payments shall bear interest at the rate of one-half percent (0.5%) per month (prorated for partial months) until paid in full. Nothing herein shall limit such Purchaser's right to pursue actual damages for the Public Information Failure, and such Purchaser shall have the right to pursue all remedies available to it at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief.

4.3 Integration. The Company shall not sell, offer for sale or solicit offers to buy or otherwise negotiate in respect of any security (as defined in Section 2 of the Securities Act) that would be integrated with the offer or sale of the Securities in a manner that would require the registration under the Securities Act of the sale of the Securities or that would be integrated with the offer or sale of the Securities for purposes of the rules and regulations of any Trading Market such that it would require shareholder approval prior to the closing of such other transaction unless shareholder approval is obtained before the closing of such subsequent transaction.

4.4 Securities Laws Disclosure; Publicity. The Company shall (a) by the Disclosure Time, issue a press release disclosing the material terms of the transactions contemplated hereby, and (b) file a Current Report on Form 8-K, including the Transaction Documents as exhibits thereto, with the Commission within the time required by the Exchange Act. From and after the issuance of such press release, the Company represents to the Purchasers that it shall have publicly disclosed all material, non-public information delivered to any of the Purchasers by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or any of their respective officers, directors, employees or agents in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. In addition, effective upon the issuance of such press release, the Company acknowledges and agrees that any and all confidentiality or similar obligations under any agreement, whether written or oral, between the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates on the one hand, and any of the Purchasers or any of their Affiliates on the other hand, shall terminate. The Company and

each Purchaser shall consult with each other in issuing any other press releases with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby, and neither the Company nor any Purchaser shall issue any such press release nor otherwise make any such public statement without the prior consent of the Company, with respect to any press release of any Purchaser, or without the prior consent of each Purchaser, with respect to any press release of the Company, which consent shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed, except if such disclosure is required by law, in which case the disclosing party shall promptly provide the other party with prior notice of such public statement or communication. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall not publicly disclose the name of any Purchaser, or include the name of any Purchaser in any filing with the Commission or any regulatory agency or Trading Market, without the prior written consent of such Purchaser, except (a) as required by federal securities law in connection with (i) any registration statement contemplated by the Registration Rights Agreement and (ii) the filing of final Transaction Documents with the Commission and (b) to the extent such disclosure is required by law or Trading Market regulations, in which case the Company shall provide the Purchasers with prior notice of such disclosure permitted under this clause (b).

**4.5 Shareholder Rights Plan.** No claim will be made or enforced by the Company or, with the consent of the Company, any other Person, that any Purchaser is an “Acquiring Person” under any control share acquisition, business combination, poison pill (including any distribution under a rights agreement) or similar anti-takeover plan or arrangement in effect or hereafter adopted by the Company, or that any Purchaser could be deemed to trigger the provisions of any such plan or arrangement, by virtue of receiving Securities under the Transaction Documents or under any other agreement between the Company and the Purchasers.

**4.6 Non-Public Information.** Except with respect to the material terms and conditions of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents and the information set forth on the Disclosure Schedules, if any, which shall be disclosed pursuant to Section 4.4, the Company covenants and agrees that neither it, nor any other Person acting on its behalf will provide any Purchaser or its agents or counsel with any information that constitutes, or the Company reasonably believes constitutes, material non-public information, unless prior thereto such Purchaser shall have consented to the receipt of such information and agreed with the Company to keep such information confidential. The Company understands and confirms that each Purchaser shall be relying on the foregoing covenant in effecting transactions in securities of the Company. To the extent that the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates delivers any material, non-public information to a Purchaser without such Purchaser’s consent, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that such Purchaser shall not have any duty of confidentiality to the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates, or a duty to the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates not to trade on the basis of, such material, non-public information, provided that the Purchaser shall remain subject to applicable law. To the extent that any notice provided pursuant to any Transaction Document constitutes, or contains, material, non-public information regarding the Company or any Subsidiaries, the Company shall simultaneously file such notice with the Commission pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K. The Company understands and confirms that each Purchaser shall be relying on the foregoing covenant in effecting transactions in securities of the Company.

**4.7 Use of Proceeds.** The Company shall use the net proceeds from the sale of the Securities hereunder for working capital purposes and shall not use such proceeds: (a) for the satisfaction of any portion of the Company’s debt (other than payment of trade payables in the ordinary course of the Company’s business and prior practices), (b) for the redemption of any Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents, (c) for the settlement of any outstanding litigation or (d) in violation of FCPA or OFAC regulations.

**4.8 Indemnification of Purchasers.** Subject to the provisions of this Section 4.8, the Company will indemnify and hold each Purchaser and its directors, officers, shareholders, members, partners, employees and agents (and any other Persons with a functionally equivalent role of a Person holding such titles notwithstanding a lack of such title or any other title), each Person who controls such Purchaser (within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act and Section 20 of the Exchange Act), and the directors, officers, shareholders, agents, members, partners or employees (and any other Persons with a functionally equivalent role of a Person holding such titles notwithstanding a lack of such title or any other title) of such controlling persons (each, a “Purchaser Party”) harmless from any and all losses, liabilities, obligations, claims, contingencies, damages, costs and expenses, including all judgments, amounts paid in settlements, court costs and reasonable attorneys’ fees and costs of investigation that any such Purchaser Party may suffer or incur as a result of or relating to (a) any breach of any of the representations, warranties, covenants or agreements made by the Company in this Agreement or in the other Transaction Documents or (b) any action instituted against the Purchaser Parties in any capacity, or any of them or their respective Affiliates, by any stockholder of the Company who is not an Affiliate of such Purchaser Party, with respect to any of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents (unless such action is solely based upon a material breach of such Purchaser Party’s representations, warranties or covenants under the Transaction Documents or any agreements or understandings such Purchaser Party may have with any such stockholder or any violations by such Purchaser Party of state or federal securities laws or any conduct by such Purchaser Party which is finally judicially determined to constitute fraud, gross negligence or willful misconduct). If any action shall be brought against any Purchaser Party in respect of which indemnity may be sought pursuant to this Agreement, such Purchaser Party shall promptly notify the Company in writing, and the Company shall have the right to assume the defense thereof with counsel of its own choosing reasonably acceptable to the Purchaser Party. Any Purchaser Party shall have the right to employ separate counsel in any such action and participate in the defense thereof, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such Purchaser Party except to the extent that (i) the employment thereof has been specifically authorized by the Company in writing, (ii) the Company has failed after a reasonable period of time to assume such defense and to

employ counsel or (iii) in such action there is, in the reasonable opinion of counsel, a material conflict on any material issue between the position of the Company and the position of such Purchaser Party, in which case the Company shall be responsible for the reasonable fees and expenses of no more than one such separate counsel. The Company will not be liable to any Purchaser Party under this Agreement (y) for any settlement by a Purchaser Party effected without the Company's prior written consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed; or (z) to the extent, but only to the extent that a loss, claim, damage or liability is attributable to any Purchaser Party's breach of any of the representations, warranties, covenants or agreements made by such Purchaser Party in this Agreement or in the other Transaction Documents. The indemnification required by this Section 4.8 shall be made by periodic payments of the amount thereof during the course of the investigation or defense, as and when bills are received or are incurred. The indemnity agreements contained herein shall be in addition to any cause of action or similar right of any Purchaser Party against the Company or others and any liabilities the Company may be subject to pursuant to law.

4.9 Reservation of Common Stock. As of the date hereof, the Company has reserved and the Company shall continue to reserve and keep available at all times, free of preemptive rights, a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock for the purpose of enabling the Company to issue Shares pursuant to this Agreement and Warrant Shares pursuant to any exercise of the Warrants.

4.10 Listing of Common Stock. The Company hereby agrees to use best efforts to maintain the listing or quotation of the Common Stock on the Trading Market on which it is currently listed, and concurrently with the Closing, the Company shall apply to list or quote all of the Shares and Warrant Shares on such Trading Market and promptly secure the listing of all of the Shares and Warrant Shares on such Trading Market. The Company further agrees, if the Company applies to have the Common Stock traded on any other Trading Market, it will then include in such application all of the Shares and Warrant Shares, and will take such other action as is necessary to cause all of the Shares and Warrant Shares to be listed or quoted on such other Trading Market as promptly as possible. The Company will then take all action reasonably necessary to continue the listing and trading of its Common Stock on a Trading Market and will comply in all respects with the Company's reporting, filing and other obligations under the bylaws or rules of the Trading Market. The Company agrees to maintain the eligibility of the Common Stock for electronic transfer through the Depository Trust Company or another established clearing corporation, including, without limitation, by timely payment of fees to the Depository Trust Company or such other established clearing corporation in connection with such electronic transfer.

4.11 Subsequent Equity Sales.

(a) From the date hereof until ninety (90) days after the Effective Date, neither the Company nor any Subsidiary shall (i) issue, enter into any agreement to issue or announce the issuance or proposed issuance of any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents or (ii) file any registration statement or any amendment or supplement thereto, in each case other than (A) as contemplated pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement or (B) the filing of a registration statement on Form S-8.

(b) Subject to Section 4.11(c) below, from the date hereof until twelve (12) months after the Effective Date, the Company shall be prohibited from effecting or entering into an agreement to effect any issuance by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents (or a combination of units thereof) involving a Variable Rate Transaction. "Variable Rate Transaction" means a transaction in which the Company (i) issues or sells any debt or equity securities that are convertible into, exchangeable or exercisable for, or include the right to receive, additional shares of Common Stock either (A) at a conversion price, exercise price or exchange rate or other price that is based upon, and/or varies with, the trading prices of or quotations for the shares of Common Stock at any time after the initial issuance of such debt or equity securities or (B) with a conversion, exercise or exchange price that is subject to being reset at some future date after the initial issuance of such debt or equity security or upon the occurrence of specified or contingent events directly or indirectly related to the business of the Company or the market for the Common Stock or (ii) enters into, or effects a transaction under, any agreement, including, but not limited to, an equity line of credit, whereby the Company may issue securities at a future determined price. Any Purchaser shall be entitled to obtain injunctive relief against the Company to preclude any such issuance, which remedy shall be in addition to any right to collect damages.

(c) From the date hereof until six (6) months after the Effective Date, neither the Company nor any Subsidiary shall issue, enter into any agreement to issue or announce the issuance or proposed issuance of any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents pursuant to a shelf registration statement for an at-the-market offering.

(d) Notwithstanding the foregoing, this Section 4.11 shall not apply in respect of an Exempt Issuance.

4.12 Equal Treatment of Purchasers. No consideration (including any modification of this Agreement) shall be offered or paid to any Person to amend or consent to a waiver or modification of any provision of this Agreement unless the same consideration is also offered to all of the parties to this Agreement. For clarification purposes, this provision constitutes a separate right granted to each Purchaser by the Company and negotiated separately by each Purchaser, and is intended for the Company to treat the Purchasers as a class and shall not in any way be construed as the Purchasers acting in concert or as a group with respect to the purchase, disposition or voting of Securities or otherwise.

4.13 Certain Transactions and Confidentiality. Each Purchaser, severally and not jointly with the other Purchasers, covenants that neither it, nor any Affiliate acting on its behalf or pursuant to any understanding with it will execute any purchases or sales, including Short Sales, of any of the Company's securities during the period commencing with the execution of this Agreement and ending at such time that the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are first publicly announced pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4. Each Purchaser, severally and not jointly with the other Purchasers, covenants that until such time as the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are publicly disclosed by the Company pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4, such Purchaser will maintain the confidentiality of the existence and terms of this transaction and the information included in the Disclosure Schedules, if any. Notwithstanding the foregoing and notwithstanding anything contained in this Agreement to the contrary, the Company expressly acknowledges and agrees that (i) no Purchaser makes any representation, warranty or covenant hereby that it will not engage in effecting transactions in any securities of the Company after the time that the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are first publicly announced pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4, (ii) no Purchaser shall be restricted or prohibited from effecting any transactions in any securities of the Company in accordance with applicable securities laws from and after the time that the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are first publicly announced pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4 and (iii) no Purchaser shall have any duty of confidentiality or duty not to trade in the securities of the Company to the Company or its Subsidiaries after the issuance of the initial press release as described in Section 4.4. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the case of a Purchaser that is a multi-managed investment vehicle whereby separate portfolio managers manage separate portions of such Purchaser's assets and the portfolio managers have no direct knowledge of the investment decisions made by the portfolio managers managing other portions of such Purchaser's assets, the covenant set forth above shall only apply with respect to the portion of assets managed by the portfolio manager that made the investment decision to purchase the Securities covered by this Agreement.

4.14 Form D; Blue Sky Filings. The Company agrees to timely file a Form D with respect to the Securities as required under Regulation D and to provide a copy thereof, promptly upon request of any Purchaser. The Company shall take such action as the Company shall reasonably determine is necessary in order to obtain an exemption for, or to qualify the Securities for, sale to the Purchasers at the Closing under applicable securities or "Blue Sky" laws of the states of the United States, and shall provide evidence of such actions promptly upon request of any Purchaser.

4.15 Acknowledgment of Dilution. The Company acknowledges that the issuance of the Securities may result in dilution of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, which dilution may be substantial under certain market conditions. The Company further acknowledges that its obligations under the Transaction Documents, including, without limitation, its obligation to issue the Shares and Warrant Shares pursuant to the Transaction Documents, are unconditional and absolute and not subject to any right of set off, counterclaim, delay or reduction, regardless of the effect of any such dilution or any claim the Company may have against any Purchaser and regardless of the dilutive effect that such issuance may have on the ownership of the other stockholders of the Company.

4.16 Exercise Procedures. The form of Notice of Exercise included in the Warrants set forth the totality of the procedures required of the Purchasers in order to exercise the Warrants. No additional legal opinion, other information or instructions shall be required of the Purchasers to exercise their Warrants. Without limiting the preceding sentences, no ink-original Notice of Exercise shall be required, nor shall any medallion guarantee (or other type of guarantee or notarization) of any Notice of Exercise form be required in order to exercise the Warrants. The Company shall honor exercises of the Warrants and shall deliver Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms, conditions and time periods set forth in the Transaction Documents.

4.17 Lock-Up Agreements. The Company shall not amend, modify, waive or terminate any provision of any of the Lock-Up Agreements except to extend the term of the lock-up period and shall enforce the provisions of each Lock-Up Agreement in accordance with its terms. If any party to a Lock-Up Agreement breaches any provision of a Lock-Up Agreement, the Company shall promptly use its best efforts to seek specific performance of the terms of such Lock-Up Agreement.

## **ARTICLE V. MISCELLANEOUS**

5.1 Termination. This Agreement may be terminated by any Purchaser, as to such Purchaser's obligations hereunder only and without any effect whatsoever on the obligations between the Company and the other Purchasers, by written notice to the other parties, if the Closing has not been consummated on or before the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day following the date hereof; provided, however, that no such termination will affect the right of any party to sue for any breach by any other party (or parties).

5.2 Fees and Expenses. Except as expressly set forth in the Transaction Documents to the contrary, each party shall pay the fees and expenses of its advisers, counsel, accountants and other experts, if any, and all other expenses incurred by such party incident to the negotiation, preparation, execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement. The Company shall pay all Transfer Agent fees (including, without limitation, any fees required for same-day processing of any instruction letter delivered by the Company and any exercise notice delivered by a Purchaser), stamp taxes and other taxes and duties levied in connection with the delivery of any Securities to the Purchasers.

5.3 Entire Agreement. The Transaction Documents, together with the exhibits and schedules thereto, contain the entire understanding of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and thereof and supersede all prior agreements and understandings, oral or written, with respect to such matters, which the parties acknowledge have been merged into such documents, exhibits and schedules.

5.4 Notices. Any and all notices or other communications or deliveries required or permitted to be provided hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed given and effective on the earliest of: (a) the time of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number or email attachment at the email address as set forth on the signature pages attached hereto at or prior to 5:30 p.m. (New York City time) on a Trading Day, (b) the next Trading Day after the time of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number or email attachment at the email address as set forth on the signature pages attached hereto on a day that is not a Trading Day or later than 5:30 p.m. (New York City time) on any Trading Day, (c) the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day following the date of mailing, if sent by U.S. nationally recognized overnight courier service or (d) upon actual receipt by the party to whom such notice is required to be given. The address for such notices and communications shall be as set forth on the signature pages attached hereto.

5.5 Amendments; Waivers. No provision of this Agreement may be waived, modified, supplemented or amended except in a written instrument signed, in the case of an amendment, by the Company and Purchasers which purchased at least 50.1% in interest of the Shares based on the initial Subscription Amounts hereunder (or, prior to the Closing, the Company and each Purchaser) or, in the case of a waiver, by the party against whom enforcement of any such waived provision is sought, provided that if any amendment, modification or waiver disproportionately and adversely impacts a Purchaser (or group of Purchasers), the consent of at least 50.1% in interest (based on the initial Subscription Amounts hereunder) of such disproportionately impacted Purchaser (or group of Purchasers) shall also be required. No waiver of any default with respect to any provision, condition or requirement of this Agreement shall be deemed to be a continuing waiver in the future or a waiver of any subsequent default or a waiver of any other provision, condition or requirement hereof, nor shall any delay or omission of any party to exercise any right hereunder in any manner impair the exercise of any such right. Any proposed amendment or waiver that disproportionately, materially and adversely affects the rights and obligations of any Purchaser relative to the comparable rights and obligations of the other Purchasers shall require the prior written consent of such adversely affected Purchaser. Any amendment effected in accordance with this Section 5.5 shall be binding upon each Purchaser and holder of Securities and the Company.

5.6 Headings. The headings herein are for convenience only, do not constitute a part of this Agreement and shall not be deemed to limit or affect any of the provisions hereof.

5.7 Successors and Assigns. This Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties and their successors and permitted assigns. The Company may not assign this Agreement or any rights or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of each Purchaser (other than by merger). Any Purchaser may assign any or all of its rights under this Agreement to any Person to whom such Purchaser assigns or transfers any Securities, provided that such transferee agrees in writing to be bound, with respect to the transferred Securities, by the provisions of the Transaction Documents that apply to the "Purchasers."

5.8 No Third-Party Beneficiaries. The Placement Agent shall be the third-party beneficiary of the representations and warranties of the Company in Section 3.1 and the representations and warranties of the Purchasers in Section 3.2. This Agreement is intended for the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective successors and permitted assigns and is not for the benefit of, nor may any provision hereof be enforced by, any other Person, except as otherwise set forth in Section 4.8 and this Section 5.8.

5.9 Governing Law. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of the Transaction Documents shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York, without regard to the principles of conflicts of law thereof. Each party agrees that all legal Proceedings concerning the interpretations, enforcement and defense of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and any other Transaction Documents (whether brought against a party hereto or its respective affiliates, directors, officers, shareholders, partners, members, employees or agents) shall be commenced exclusively in the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York. Each party hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York, Borough of Manhattan for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or in connection herewith or with any transaction contemplated hereby or discussed herein (including with respect to the enforcement of any of the Transaction Documents), and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any Action or Proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such Action or Proceeding is improper or is an inconvenient venue for such Proceeding. Each party hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any such Action or Proceeding by mailing a copy thereof via registered or certified mail or overnight delivery (with evidence of delivery) to such party at the address in effect for notices to it under this Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any other manner permitted by law. If any party shall commence an Action or Proceeding to enforce any provisions of the Transaction Documents, then, in addition to the obligations of the Company under Section 4.8, the prevailing party in such Action or Proceeding shall be reimbursed by the non-prevailing party for its reasonable attorneys' fees and other costs and expenses incurred with the investigation, preparation and prosecution of such Action or Proceeding.

5.10 Survival. The representations and warranties contained herein shall survive the Closing and the delivery of the Securities.

5.11 Execution. This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, all of which when taken together shall be considered one and the same agreement and shall become effective when counterparts have been signed by each party and delivered to each other party, it being understood that the parties need not sign the same counterpart. In the event that any signature is delivered by facsimile transmission or by e-mail delivery of a “.pdf” format data file, such signature shall create a valid and binding obligation of the party executing (or on whose behalf such signature is executed) with the same force and effect as if such facsimile or “.pdf” signature page were an original thereof.

5.12 Severability. If any term, provision, covenant or restriction of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be invalid, illegal, void or unenforceable, the remainder of the terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions set forth herein shall remain in full force and effect and shall in no way be affected, impaired or invalidated, and the parties hereto shall use their commercially reasonable efforts to find and employ an alternative means to achieve the same or substantially the same result as that contemplated by such term, provision, covenant or restriction. It is hereby stipulated and declared to be the intention of the parties that they would have executed the remaining terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions without including any of such that may be hereafter declared invalid, illegal, void or unenforceable.

5.13 Rescission and Withdrawal Right. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in (and without limiting any similar provisions of) any of the other Transaction Documents, whenever any Purchaser exercises a right, election, demand or option under a Transaction Document and the Company does not timely perform its related obligations within the periods therein provided, then such Purchaser may rescind or withdraw, in its sole discretion from time to time upon written notice to the Company, any relevant notice, demand or election in whole or in part without prejudice to its future actions and rights; provided, however, that, in the case of a rescission of an exercise of a Warrant, the applicable Purchaser shall be required to return any shares of Common Stock subject to any such rescinded exercise notice concurrently with the return to such Purchaser of the aggregate exercise price paid to the Company for such shares and the restoration of such Purchaser’s right to acquire such shares pursuant to such Purchaser’s Warrant (including, issuance of a replacement warrant certificate evidencing such restored right).

5.14 Replacement of Securities. If any certificate or instrument evidencing any Securities is mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed, the Company shall issue or cause to be issued in exchange and substitution for and upon cancellation thereof (in the case of mutilation), or in lieu of and substitution therefor, a new certificate or instrument, but only upon receipt of evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Company of such loss, theft or destruction. The applicant for a new certificate or instrument under such circumstances shall also pay any reasonable third-party costs (including customary indemnity) associated with the issuance of such replacement Securities.

5.15 Remedies. In addition to being entitled to exercise all rights provided herein or granted by law, including recovery of damages, each of the Purchasers and the Company will be entitled to specific performance under the Transaction Documents. The parties agree that monetary damages may not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of any breach of obligations contained in the Transaction Documents and hereby agree to waive and not to assert in any Action for specific performance of any such obligation the defense that a remedy at law would be adequate.

5.16 Payment Set Aside. To the extent that the Company makes a payment or payments to any Purchaser pursuant to any Transaction Document or a Purchaser enforces or exercises its rights thereunder, and such payment or payments or the proceeds of such enforcement or exercise or any part thereof are subsequently invalidated, declared to be fraudulent or preferential, set aside, recovered from, disgorged by or are required to be refunded, repaid or otherwise restored to the Company, a trustee, receiver or any other Person under any law (including, without limitation, any bankruptcy law, state or federal law, common law or equitable cause of action), then to the extent of any such restoration the obligation or part thereof originally intended to be satisfied shall be revived and continued in full force and effect as if such payment had not been made or such enforcement or setoff had not occurred.

5.17 Independent Nature of Purchasers’ Obligations and Rights. The obligations of each Purchaser under any Transaction Document are several and not joint with the obligations of any other Purchaser, and no Purchaser shall be responsible in any way for the performance or non-performance of the obligations of any other Purchaser under any Transaction Document. Nothing contained herein or in any other Transaction Document, and no action taken by any Purchaser pursuant hereto or thereto, shall be deemed to constitute the Purchasers as a partnership, an association, a joint venture or any other kind of entity, or create a presumption that the Purchasers are in any way acting in concert or as a group with respect to such obligations or the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. Each Purchaser shall be entitled to independently protect and enforce its rights including, without limitation, the rights arising out of this Agreement or out of the other Transaction Documents, and it shall not be necessary for any other Purchaser to be joined as an additional party in any Proceeding for such purpose. Each Purchaser has been represented by its own separate legal counsel in its review and negotiation of the Transaction Documents. For reasons of administrative convenience only, each Purchaser and its respective counsel have chosen to communicate with the Company through its counsel, Wilson Sonsini Goodrich & Rosati, P.C., which does not represent any Purchaser. The Company has elected to provide all Purchasers with the same



terms and Transaction Documents for the convenience of the Company and not because it was required or requested to do so by any of the Purchasers. It is expressly understood and agreed that each provision contained in this Agreement and in each other Transaction Document is between the Company and a Purchaser, solely, and not between the Company and the Purchasers collectively and not between and among the Purchasers.

5.18 Liquidated Damages. The Company's obligations to pay any partial liquidated damages or other amounts owing under the Transaction Documents is a continuing obligation of the Company and shall not terminate until all unpaid partial liquidated damages and other amounts have been paid notwithstanding the fact that the instrument or security pursuant to which such partial liquidated damages or other amounts are due and payable shall have been canceled.

5.19 Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, etc. If the last or appointed day for the taking of any action or the expiration of any right required or granted herein shall not be a Business Day, then such action may be taken or such right may be exercised on the next succeeding Business Day.

5.20 Construction. The parties agree that each of them and/or their respective counsel have reviewed and had an opportunity to revise the Transaction Documents and, therefore, the normal rule of construction to the effect that any ambiguities are to be resolved against the drafting party shall not be employed in the interpretation of the Transaction Documents or any amendments thereto. In addition, each and every reference to share prices and shares of Common Stock in any Transaction Document shall be subject to adjustment for reverse and forward stock splits, stock dividends, stock combinations and other similar transactions of the Common Stock that occur after the date of this Agreement.

**5.21 WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL. IN ANY ACTION, SUIT, OR PROCEEDING IN ANY JURISDICTION BROUGHT BY ANY PARTY AGAINST ANY OTHER PARTY, THE PARTIES EACH KNOWINGLY AND INTENTIONALLY, TO THE GREATEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, HEREBY ABSOLUTELY, UNCONDITIONALLY, IRREVOCABLY AND EXPRESSLY WAIVES FOREVER TRIAL BY JURY.**

*(Signature Pages Follow)*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Securities Purchase Agreement to be duly executed by their respective authorized signatories as of the date first indicated above.

**Apexigen, Inc.**

By:

Name: Xiaodong Yang  
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

Address for Notice:

75 Shoreway Road, Suite C  
San Carlos, CA 94070

Attention: Chief Executive Officer

Email: [legal@apexigen.com](mailto:legal@apexigen.com)

With a copy to (which shall not constitute notice):

Wilson Sonsini Goodrich & Rosati  
650 Mill Page Road  
Palo Alto, CA 94304  
Attention: Kenneth A. Clark; Michael E. Coke; Lance E. Brady  
Email: [kclark@wsgr.com](mailto:kclark@wsgr.com); [mcoke@wsgr.com](mailto:mcoke@wsgr.com); [lbrady@wsgr.com](mailto:lbrady@wsgr.com)

[REMAINDER OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK  
SIGNATURE PAGE FOR PURCHASER FOLLOWS]

[PURCHASER SIGNATURE PAGES TO SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Securities Purchase Agreement to be duly executed by their respective authorized signatories as of the date first indicated above.

Name of Purchaser: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Purchaser:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Address for Notice to Purchaser:

Address for Delivery of Securities to Purchaser (if not same as address for notice):

Subscription Amount: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

Pre-Funded Warrants: \_\_\_\_\_

Beneficial Ownership Blocker ☐ 4.99% or ☐ 9.99%

Common Warrants: \_\_\_\_\_

Beneficial Ownership Blocker ☐ 4.99% or ☐ 9.99%

EIN Number: \_\_\_\_\_

[SIGNATURE PAGES CONTINUE]

**Exhibit A**  
**Form of Warrant**

See attached.

**Exhibit B**  
**Form of Pre-Funded Warrant**

Intentionally omitted.

## Exhibit C

### Form of Lock-Up Agreement

#### LOCK-UP AGREEMENT

\_\_\_\_\_, 2023

Re: Securities Purchase Agreement, dated as of January 23, 2023, between Apexigen, Inc. (the “Company”) and the purchaser(s) signatory thereto (each, a “Purchaser” and, to the extent applicable, collectively, the “Purchasers”)

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Defined terms not otherwise defined in this letter agreement (the “Letter Agreement”) shall have the meanings set forth in the Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”), dated as of January 23, 2023. Pursuant to Section 2.2(a) of the Purchase Agreement and in satisfaction of a condition of the Company’s obligations under the Purchase Agreement, the undersigned irrevocably agrees with the Company that, from the date hereof until ninety (90) days after the Effective Date (such period, the “Restricted Period”), the undersigned will not offer, sell, contract to sell, lend, hypothecate, pledge or otherwise dispose of (or enter into any transaction which is designed to, or might reasonably be expected to, result in the disposition, whether by actual disposition or effective economic disposition due to cash settlement or otherwise, by the undersigned or any Affiliate of the undersigned or any person in privity with the undersigned or any Affiliate of the undersigned), directly or indirectly, or establish or increase a put equivalent position or liquidate or decrease a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), with respect to, any shares of Common Stock of the Company or securities convertible, exchangeable or exercisable into, shares of Common Stock of the Company beneficially owned, held or hereafter acquired by the undersigned (the “Securities”). Beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act. In order to enforce this covenant, the Company shall impose irrevocable stop-transfer instructions preventing the transfer agent of the Company from effecting any actions in violation of this Letter Agreement.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, and subject to the conditions below, the undersigned may transfer the Securities provided that (a) in the case of any transfer or distribution to clauses (i) and (iv) through (vii) the Company receives a signed lock-up letter agreement (in the form of this Letter Agreement) for the balance of the Restricted Period from each donee, trustee, distributee, or transferee, as the case may be, prior to such transfer (b) any such transfer shall not involve a disposition for value, (c) such transfer is not required to be reported with the Securities and Exchange Commission in accordance with the Exchange Act and no report of such transfer shall be made voluntarily, and (d) neither the undersigned nor any donee, trustee, distributee or transferee, as the case may be, otherwise voluntarily effects any public filing or report regarding such transfers, with respect to:

- i) transfers as a *bona fide* gift or gifts;
- ii) transfers to any immediate family member or to any trust for the direct or indirect benefit of the undersigned or the immediate family of the undersigned (for purposes of this Letter Agreement, “immediate family” shall mean any relationship by blood, marriage, domestic partnership or adoption, not more remote than first cousin);
- iii) transfers to any corporation, partnership, limited liability company, or other business entity, all of the equity holders of which consist of the undersigned and/or the immediate family of the undersigned;
- iv) transfers if the undersigned is a corporation, partnership, limited liability company, trust or other business entity, (a) to another corporation, partnership, limited liability company, trust or other business entity that is an Affiliate of the undersigned or (b) in the form of a distribution to limited partners, limited liability company members or stockholders of the undersigned;
- v) transfers if the undersigned is a trust, to the beneficiary of such trust;
- vi) transfers by will, other testamentary document or intestate succession to the legal representative, heir, beneficiary or a member of the immediate family of the undersigned;
- vii) transfers by qualified domestic order or in connection with a divorce settlement;
- viii) transfers to the Company’s officers, directors or their Affiliates;

- ix) pledges of shares as security or collateral in connection with any borrowing or the incurrence of any indebtedness by any of the Company's officers or directors (provided such borrowing or incurrence of indebtedness is secured by a portfolio of assets or equity interests issued by multiple issuers);
- x) transfers pursuant to a bona fide third-party tender offer, merger, stock sale, recapitalization, consolidation or other transaction involving a change in control of the Company, provided that in the event that such tender offer, merger, recapitalization, consolidation or other such transaction is not completed, the common stock subject to this Letter Agreement shall remain subject to this Letter Agreement;
- xi) transfers to satisfy tax withholding obligations in connection with the exercise of options to purchase shares of Common Stock or the vesting or stock-based awards;
- xii) transfers in payment on a "net exercise" or "cashless" basis of the exercise or purchase price with respect to the exercise of options to purchase shares of Common Stock; and
- xiii) transfers of securities purchased in open market transactions after the Closing Date.

In addition, notwithstanding the foregoing, this Letter Agreement shall not restrict the delivery of shares of Common Stock to the undersigned upon (i) exercise of any options granted under any employee benefit plan of the Company; provided that any shares of Common Stock or Securities acquired in connection with any such exercise will be subject to the restrictions set forth in this Letter Agreement, or (ii) the exercise of warrants; provided that such shares of Common Stock delivered to the undersigned in connection with such exercise are subject to the restrictions set forth in this Letter Agreement.

Furthermore, the undersigned may enter into any new plan established in compliance with Rule 10b5-1 of the Exchange Act; provided that (i) such plan may only be established if no public announcement or filing with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or other applicable regulatory authority, is made (or required to be made) in connection with the establishment of such plan during the Restricted Period, and (ii) no sale of shares of Common Stock are made pursuant to such plan during the Restricted Period.

The undersigned acknowledges that the execution, delivery and performance of this Letter Agreement is a material inducement to each Purchaser to complete the transactions contemplated by the Purchase Agreement and the Company shall be entitled to specific performance of the undersigned's obligations hereunder. The undersigned hereby represents that the undersigned has the power and authority to execute, deliver and perform this Letter Agreement, that the undersigned has received adequate consideration therefor and that the undersigned will indirectly benefit from the closing of the transactions contemplated by the Purchase Agreement.

This Letter Agreement may not be amended or otherwise modified in any respect without the written consent of each of the Company and the undersigned. This Letter Agreement shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York without regard to the principles of conflict of laws. The undersigned hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the United States District Court sitting in the Southern District of New York and the courts of the State of New York located in Manhattan, for the purposes of any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Letter Agreement, and hereby waives, and agrees not to assert in any such suit, action or proceeding, any claim that (i) it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of such court, (ii) the suit, action or proceeding is brought in an inconvenient forum, or (iii) the venue of the suit, action or proceeding is improper. The undersigned hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any such suit, action or proceeding by receiving a copy thereof sent to the Company at the address in effect for notices to it under the Purchase Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. The undersigned hereby waives any right to a trial by jury. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any manner permitted by law. The undersigned agrees and understands that this Letter Agreement does not intend to create any relationship between the undersigned and any Purchaser, but that each Purchaser under the Purchase Agreement is a third-party beneficiary of this Letter Agreement.

This Letter Agreement shall be binding on successors and assigns of the undersigned with respect to the Securities and any such successor or assign shall enter into a similar agreement for the benefit of the Purchasers.

\*\*\* SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS\*\*\*

This Letter Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, all of which when taken together may be considered one and the same agreement.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Position in Company, if any

Address for Notice:  
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
  
\_\_\_\_\_

By signing below, the Company agrees to enforce the restrictions on transfer set forth in this Letter Agreement.

**APEXIGEN, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Xiaodong Yang  
Title: Chief Executive Officer



**Exhibit D**

**Form of Registration Rights Agreement**

See attached.

**REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT**

This Registration Rights Agreement (this “Agreement”) is made and entered into as of [\_\_\_\_], 2023, between Apexigen, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and each of the several purchasers signatory hereto (each such purchaser, a “Purchaser” and, collectively, the “Purchasers”).

This Agreement is made pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, between the Company and each Purchaser (the “Purchase Agreement”).

The Company and each Purchaser hereby agrees as follows:

1. Definitions.

**Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein that are defined in the Purchase Agreement shall have the meanings given such terms in the Purchase Agreement.** As used in this Agreement, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

“Advice” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 6(c).

“Effectiveness Date” means, with respect to the Initial Registration Statement required to be filed hereunder, the 60<sup>th</sup> calendar day following the date hereof (or, in the event of anything other than a “no review” by the Commission, the 90<sup>th</sup> calendar day following the date hereof) and with respect to any additional Registration Statements which may be required pursuant to Section 2(c) or Section 3(c), the 60<sup>th</sup> calendar day following the date on which an additional Registration Statement is required to be filed hereunder (or, in the event of anything other than a “no review” by the Commission, the 90<sup>th</sup> calendar day following the date such additional Registration Statement is required to be filed hereunder); provided, however, that in the event the Company is notified by the Commission that one or more of the above Registration Statements will not be reviewed or is no longer subject to further review and comments, the Effectiveness Date as to such Registration Statement shall be the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day following the date on which the Company is so notified if such date precedes the dates otherwise required above, provided, further, if such Effectiveness Date falls on a day that is not a Trading Day, then the Effectiveness Date shall be the next succeeding Trading Day.

“Effectiveness Period” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 2(a).

“Event” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 2(d).

“Event Date” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 2(d).

“Filing Date” means, with respect to the Initial Registration Statement required hereunder, the 30<sup>th</sup> calendar day following the date hereof (or if such date is not a Business Day, the next date that is a Business Day) and, with respect to any additional Registration Statements which may be required pursuant to Section 2(c) or Section 3(c), the earliest practical date on which the Company is permitted by SEC Guidance to file such additional Registration Statement related to the Registrable Securities.

“Holder” or “Holders” means the holder or holders, as the case may be, from time to time of Registrable Securities.

“Indemnified Party” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 5(c).

“Indemnifying Party” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 5(c).

“Initial Registration Statement” means the initial Registration Statement filed pursuant to this Agreement.

“Losses” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 5(a).

“Plan of Distribution” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 2(a).

---

“Prospectus” means the prospectus included in a Registration Statement (including, without limitation, a prospectus that includes any information previously omitted from a prospectus filed as part of an effective registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act), as amended or supplemented by any prospectus supplement, with respect to the terms of the offering of any portion of the Registrable Securities covered by a Registration Statement, and all other amendments and supplements to the Prospectus, including post-effective amendments, and all material incorporated by reference or deemed to be incorporated by reference in such Prospectus.

“Registrable Securities” means, as of any date of determination, (a) all Shares, (b) all Warrant Shares then issued and issuable upon exercise of the Warrants (assuming on such date the Warrants are exercised in full without regard to any exercise limitations therein), and (c) any securities issued or then issuable upon any stock split, dividend or other distribution, recapitalization or similar event with respect to the foregoing; provided, however, that any such Registrable Securities shall cease to be Registrable Securities (and the Company shall not be required to maintain the effectiveness of any, or file another, Registration Statement hereunder with respect thereto) for so long as (a) a Registration Statement with respect to the sale of such Registrable Securities is declared effective by the Commission under the Securities Act and such Registrable Securities have been disposed of by the Holder in accordance with such effective Registration Statement, (b) such Registrable Securities have been previously sold in accordance with Rule 144, or (c) such securities become eligible for resale without volume or manner-of-sale restrictions and without current public information pursuant to Rule 144 as set forth in a written opinion letter to such effect, addressed, delivered and acceptable to the Transfer Agent and the affected Holders (assuming that such securities and any securities issuable upon exercise, conversion or exchange of which, or as a dividend upon which, such securities were issued or are issuable, were at no time held by any Affiliate of the Company, as reasonably determined by the Company) upon the advice of counsel to the Company.

“Registration Statement” means any registration statement required to be filed hereunder pursuant to Section 2(a) and any additional registration statements contemplated by Section 2(c) or Section 3(c), including (in each case) the Prospectus, amendments and supplements to any such registration statement or Prospectus, including pre- and post-effective amendments, all exhibits thereto, and all material incorporated by reference or deemed to be incorporated by reference in any such registration statement.

“Rule 415” means Rule 415 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Rule may be amended or interpreted from time to time, or any similar rule or regulation hereafter adopted by the Commission having substantially the same purpose and effect as such Rule.

“Rule 424” means Rule 424 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Rule may be amended or interpreted from time to time, or any similar rule or regulation hereafter adopted by the Commission having substantially the same purpose and effect as such Rule.

“Selling Stockholder Questionnaire” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 3(a).

“SEC Guidance” means (i) any publicly-available written or oral guidance of the Commission staff, or any comments, requirements or requests of the Commission staff and (ii) the Securities Act.

## 2. Shelf Registration.

(a) On or prior to each Filing Date, the Company shall prepare and file with the Commission a Registration Statement covering the resale of all of the Registrable Securities that are not then registered on an effective Registration Statement for an offering to be made on a continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415. The Initial Registration Statement filed hereunder shall be on Form S-1 and shall contain (unless otherwise directed by at least 85% in interest of the Holders) substantially the “Plan of Distribution” attached hereto as Annex A and substantially the “Selling Stockholder” section attached hereto as Annex B; provided, however, that no Holder shall be required to be named as an “underwriter” without such Holder’s express prior written consent. Subject to the terms of this Agreement, the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to cause a Registration Statement filed under this Agreement (including, without limitation, under Section 3(c)) to be declared effective under the Securities Act as promptly as possible after the filing thereof, but in any event no later than the applicable Effectiveness Date, and shall use commercially reasonable efforts to keep such Registration Statement continuously effective under the Securities Act until the earlier of the date that all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement (i) have been sold, thereunder or pursuant to Rule 144, or (ii) may be sold without volume or manner-of-sale restrictions pursuant to Rule 144 and without the requirement for the Company to be in compliance with the current public information requirement under Rule 144, as determined by the counsel to the Company pursuant to a written opinion letter to such effect, addressed and acceptable to the Transfer Agent and the affected Holders (the “Effectiveness Period”). The Company shall telephonically request effectiveness of

---

a Registration Statement as of 5:00 p.m. (New York City time) on a Trading Day. The Company shall promptly notify the Holders via facsimile or by e-mail of the effectiveness of a Registration Statement on the same Trading Day that the Company telephonically confirms effectiveness with the Commission, which shall be the date requested for effectiveness of such Registration Statement. The Company shall, by 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) on the Trading Day after the effective date of such Registration Statement, file a final Prospectus with the Commission as required by Rule 424. Failure to so notify the Holder within one (1) Trading Day of such notification of effectiveness or failure to file a final Prospectus as foreshad shall be deemed an Event under Section 2(d).

(b) Notwithstanding the registration obligations set forth in Section 2(a), if the Commission informs the Company that all of the Registrable Securities cannot, as a result of the application of Rule 415, be registered for resale as a secondary offering on a single registration statement, the Company agrees to promptly inform each of the Holders thereof and use its commercially reasonable efforts to file amendments to the Initial Registration Statement as required by the Commission, covering the maximum number of Registrable Securities permitted to be registered by the Commission, on Form S-3 or such other form available to register for resale the Registrable Securities as a secondary offering, subject to the provisions of Section 2(d) with respect to the payment of liquidated damages; provided, however, that prior to filing such amendment, the Company shall be obligated to use diligent efforts to advocate with the Commission for the registration of all of the Registrable Securities in accordance with the SEC Guidance, including without limitation, Compliance and Disclosure Interpretation 612.09.

(c) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement and subject to the payment of liquidated damages pursuant to Section 2(d), if the Commission or any SEC Guidance sets forth a limitation on the number of Registrable Securities permitted to be registered on a particular Registration Statement as a secondary offering (and notwithstanding that the Company used diligent efforts to advocate with the Commission for the registration of all or a greater portion of Registrable Securities), unless otherwise directed in writing by a Holder as to its Registrable Securities, the number of Registrable Securities to be registered on such Registration Statement will be reduced as follows:

- i. First, the Company shall reduce or eliminate any securities to be included other than Registrable Securities;
- ii. Second, the Company shall reduce Registrable Securities represented by Common Warrant Shares (applied, in the case that some Common Warrant Shares may be registered, to the Holders on a pro rata basis based on the total number of unregistered Common Warrant Shares held by such Holders); and
- iii. Third, the Company shall reduce Registrable Securities represented by Shares and the Pre-Funded Warrant Shares (applied, in the case that some Shares and Pre-Funded Warrant Shares may be registered, to the Holders on a pro rata basis based on the total number of unregistered Shares and Pre-Funded Warrant Shares held by such Holders).

In the event of a cutback hereunder, the Company shall give the Holder at least five (5) Trading Days prior written notice along with the calculations as to such Holder's allotment. In the event the Company amends the Initial Registration Statement in accordance with the foregoing, the Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to file with the Commission, as promptly as allowed by Commission or SEC Guidance provided to the Company or to registrants of securities in general, one or more registration statements on Form S-3 or such other form available to register for resale those Registrable Securities that were not registered for resale on the Initial Registration Statement, as amended.

(d) If: (i) the Initial Registration Statement is not filed on or prior to its Filing Date (if the Company files the Initial Registration Statement without affording the Holders the opportunity to review and comment on the same as required by Section 3(a) herein, the Company shall be deemed to have not satisfied this clause (i)), or (ii) the Company fails to file with the Commission a request for acceleration of a Registration Statement in accordance with Rule 461 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, within five Trading Days of the date that the Company is notified (orally or in writing, whichever is earlier) by the Commission that such Registration Statement will not be "reviewed" or will not be subject to further review, or (iii) prior to the effective date of a Registration Statement, the Company fails to file a pre-effective amendment and otherwise respond in writing to comments made by the Commission in respect of such Registration Statement within ten (10) calendar days after the receipt of comments by or notice from the Commission that such amendment is required in order for such Registration Statement to be declared effective, or (iv) a Registration Statement registering for resale all of the Registrable Securities is not declared effective by the Commission by the Effectiveness Date of the Initial Registration Statement, or (v) after the effective date of a Registration Statement, such Registration Statement ceases for any reason to remain continuously effective as to all Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement, or the Holders are otherwise not permitted to utilize the Prospectus therein to resell such Registrable Securities (other than due solely to the fault of a Holder), for more than ten (10) consecutive calendar days or more than an aggregate of fifteen (15) calendar days (which need not be consecutive calendar days) during any 12-month period (any such failure or breach being referred to as an "Event"), and for purposes of clauses (i) and (iv), the

---

date on which such Event occurs, and for purpose of clause (ii) the date on which such five (5) Trading Day period is exceeded, and for purpose of clause (iii) the date which such ten (10) calendar day period is exceeded, and for purpose of clause (v) the date on which such ten (10) or fifteen (15) calendar day period, as applicable, is exceeded being referred to as “Event Date”), then, in addition to any other rights the Holders may have hereunder or under applicable law, on each such Event Date and on each monthly anniversary of each such Event Date (if the applicable Event shall not have been cured by such date) until the applicable Event is cured, the Company shall pay to each Holder an amount in cash, as partial liquidated damages and not as a penalty, equal to the product of 1.0% multiplied by the aggregate Subscription Amount paid by such Holder pursuant to the Purchase Agreement. The parties agree that the maximum aggregate liquidated damages payable to a Holder under this Agreement shall be 10.0% of the aggregate Subscription Amount paid by such Holder pursuant to the Purchase Agreement. If the Company fails to pay any partial liquidated damages pursuant to this Section in full within seven days after the date payable, the Company will pay interest thereon at a rate of 10% per annum (or such lesser maximum amount that is permitted to be paid by applicable law) to the Holder, accruing daily from the date such partial liquidated damages are due until such amounts, plus all such interest thereon, are paid in full. The partial liquidated damages pursuant to the terms hereof shall apply on a daily pro rata basis for any portion of a month prior to the cure of an Event.

(e) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, in no event shall the Company be permitted to name any Holder or affiliate of a Holder as any underwriter without the prior written consent of such Holder.

### 3. Registration Procedures.

In connection with the Company’s registration obligations hereunder, the Company shall:

(a) Not less than three (3) Trading Days prior to the filing of each Registration Statement and not less than one (1) Trading Day prior to the filing of any related Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto (including any document that would be incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference), the Company shall (i) furnish to each Holder copies of all such documents proposed to be filed, which documents (other than those incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference) will be subject to the reasonable review of such Holders, and (ii) cause its officers and directors, counsel and independent registered public accountants to respond to such reasonable inquiries as shall be necessary, in the reasonable opinion of respective counsel to each Holder, to conduct a reasonable investigation within the meaning of the Securities Act. The Company shall not file a Registration Statement or any such Prospectus or any amendments or supplements thereto to which the Holders of a majority of the Registrable Securities shall reasonably object in good faith, provided that, the Company is notified of such objection in writing no later than two (2) Trading Days after the Holders have been so furnished copies of a Registration Statement or one (1) Trading Day after the Holders have been so furnished copies of any related Prospectus or amendments or supplements thereto. Each Holder agrees to furnish to the Company a completed questionnaire in the form attached to this Agreement as Annex C (a “Selling Stockholder Questionnaire”) on a date that is not later than three (3) Business Days following a request by the Company.

(b) (i) Prepare and file with the Commission such amendments, including post-effective amendments, to a Registration Statement and the Prospectus used in connection therewith as may be necessary to keep a Registration Statement continuously effective as to the applicable Registrable Securities for the Effectiveness Period and prepare and file with the Commission such additional Registration Statements in order to register for resale under the Securities Act all of the Registrable Securities, (ii) cause the related Prospectus to be amended or supplemented by any required Prospectus supplement (subject to the terms of this Agreement), and, as so supplemented or amended, to be filed pursuant to Rule 424, (iii) respond as promptly as reasonably possible to any comments received from the Commission with respect to a Registration Statement or any amendment thereto and provide as promptly as reasonably possible to the Holders true and complete copies of all correspondence from and to the Commission relating to a Registration Statement (provided that, the Company shall excise any information contained therein which would constitute material non-public information regarding the Company or any of its Subsidiaries), and (iv) comply in all material respects with the applicable provisions of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act with respect to the disposition of all Registrable Securities covered by a Registration Statement during the applicable period in accordance (subject to the terms of this Agreement) with the intended methods of disposition by the Holders thereof set forth in such Registration Statement as so amended or in such Prospectus as so supplemented.

(c) If during the Effectiveness Period, the number of Registrable Securities at any time exceeds 100% of the number of Common Shares then registered in a Registration Statement, then the Company shall file as soon as reasonably practicable, but in any case prior to the applicable Filing Date, an additional Registration Statement covering the resale by the Holders of not less than the number of such Registrable Securities.

---

(d) Notify the Holders of Registrable Securities to be sold (which notice shall, pursuant to clauses (iii) through (vi) hereof, be accompanied by an instruction to suspend the use of the Prospectus until the requisite changes have been made) as promptly as reasonably possible (and, in the case of (i)(A) below, not less than one (1) Trading Day prior to such filing) and (if requested by any such Person) confirm such notice in writing no later than one (1) Trading Day following the day (i)(A) when a Prospectus or any Prospectus supplement or post-effective amendment to a Registration Statement is proposed to be filed, (B) when the Commission notifies the Company whether there will be a “review” of such Registration Statement and whenever the Commission comments in writing on such Registration Statement, and (C) with respect to a Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment, when the same has become effective, (ii) of any request by the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority for amendments or supplements to a Registration Statement or Prospectus or for additional information, (iii) of the issuance by the Commission or any other federal or state governmental authority of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of a Registration Statement covering any or all of the Registrable Securities or the initiation of any Proceedings for that purpose, (iv) of the receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification or exemption from qualification of any of the Registrable Securities for sale in any jurisdiction, or the initiation or threatening of any Proceeding for such purpose, (v) of the occurrence of any event or passage of time that makes the financial statements included in a Registration Statement ineligible for inclusion therein or any statement made in a Registration Statement or Prospectus or any document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference untrue in any material respect or that requires any revisions to a Registration Statement, Prospectus or other documents so that, in the case of a Registration Statement or the Prospectus, as the case may be, it will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, and (vi) of the occurrence or existence of any corporate development or potential corporate development with respect to the Company that the Company believes may be material and that, in the determination of the Company, makes it not in the best interest of the Company to allow continued availability of a Registration Statement or Prospectus; provided, however, that in no event shall any such notice contain any information which would constitute material, non-public information regarding the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(e) Use commercially reasonable efforts to avoid the issuance of, or, if issued, obtain the withdrawal of (i) any order stopping or suspending the effectiveness of a Registration Statement, or (ii) any suspension of the qualification (or exemption from qualification) of any of the Registrable Securities for sale in any jurisdiction, at the earliest practicable moment.

(f) Furnish to each Holder, if requested by such Holder, without charge, at least one conformed copy of each such Registration Statement and each amendment thereto, including financial statements and schedules, all documents incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference to the extent requested by such Person, and all exhibits to the extent requested by such Person (including those previously furnished or incorporated by reference) promptly after the filing of such documents with the Commission, provided that any such item which is available on the EDGAR system (or successor thereto) need not be furnished in physical form.

(g) Subject to the terms of this Agreement, the Company hereby consents to the use of such Prospectus and each amendment or supplement thereto by each of the selling Holders in connection with the offering and sale of the Registrable Securities covered by such Prospectus and any amendment or supplement thereto, except after the giving of any notice pursuant to Section 3(d).

(h) Prior to any resale of Registrable Securities by a Holder, use its commercially reasonable efforts to register or qualify or cooperate with the selling Holders in connection with the registration or qualification (or exemption from the registration or qualification) of such Registrable Securities for the resale by the Holder under the securities or Blue Sky laws of such jurisdictions within the United States as any Holder reasonably requests in writing, to keep each registration or qualification (or exemption therefrom) effective during the Effectiveness Period and to do any and all other acts or things reasonably necessary to enable the disposition in such jurisdictions of the Registrable Securities covered by each Registration Statement, provided that the Company shall not be required to qualify generally to do business in any jurisdiction where it is not then so qualified, subject the Company to any material tax in any such jurisdiction where it is not then so subject or file a general consent to service of process in any such jurisdiction.

(i) If requested by a Holder, cooperate with such Holder to facilitate the timely preparation and delivery of certificates representing Registrable Securities to be delivered to a transferee pursuant to a Registration Statement, which certificates shall be free, to the extent permitted by the Purchase Agreement, of all restrictive legends, and to enable such Registrable Securities to be in such denominations and registered in such names as any such Holder may request.

---

(j) Upon the occurrence of any event contemplated by Section 3(d), as promptly as reasonably possible under the circumstances taking into account the Company's good faith assessment of any adverse consequences to the Company and its stockholders of the premature disclosure of such event, prepare a supplement or amendment, including a post-effective amendment, to a Registration Statement or a supplement to the related Prospectus or any document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference, and file any other required document so that, as thereafter delivered, neither a Registration Statement nor such Prospectus will contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. If the Company notifies the Holders in accordance with clauses (iii) through (vi) of Section 3(d) above to suspend the use of any Prospectus until the requisite changes to such Prospectus have been made, then the Holders shall suspend use of such Prospectus. The Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to ensure that the use of the Prospectus may be resumed as promptly as is practicable. The Company shall be entitled to exercise its right under this Section 3(j) to suspend the availability of a Registration Statement and Prospectus, subject to the payment of partial liquidated damages otherwise required pursuant to Section 2(d), for a period not to exceed 60 calendar days (which need not be consecutive days) in any 12-month period.

(k) Otherwise use commercially reasonable efforts to comply with all applicable rules and regulations of the Commission under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, including, without limitation, Rule 172 under the Securities Act, file any final Prospectus, including any supplement or amendment thereof, with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424 under the Securities Act, promptly inform the Holders in writing if, at any time during the Effectiveness Period, the Company does not satisfy the conditions specified in Rule 172 and, as a result thereof, the Holders are required to deliver a Prospectus in connection with any disposition of Registrable Securities and take such other actions as may be reasonably necessary to facilitate the registration of the Registrable Securities hereunder.

(l) The Company may require each selling Holder to furnish to the Company a certified statement as to the number of Common Shares beneficially owned by such Holder and, if required by the Commission, the natural persons thereof that have voting and dispositive control over the shares. During any periods that the Company is unable to meet its obligations hereunder with respect to the registration of the Registrable Securities solely because any Holder fails to furnish such information within three Trading Days of the Company's request, any liquidated damages that are accruing at such time as to such Holder only shall be tolled and any Event that may otherwise occur solely because of such delay shall be suspended as to such Holder only, until such information is delivered to the Company.

4. Registration Expenses. All fees and expenses incident to the performance of or compliance with, this Agreement by the Company shall be borne by the Company whether or not any Registrable Securities are sold pursuant to a Registration Statement. The fees and expenses referred to in the foregoing sentence shall include, without limitation, (i) all registration and filing fees (including, without limitation, fees and expenses of the Company's counsel and independent registered public accountants) (A) with respect to filings made with the Commission, (B) with respect to filings required to be made with any Trading Market on which the Common Shares are then listed for trading, and (C) in compliance with applicable state securities or Blue Sky laws reasonably agreed to by the Company in writing (including, without limitation, fees and disbursements of counsel for the Company in connection with Blue Sky qualifications or exemptions of the Registrable Securities), (ii) printing expenses (including, without limitation, expenses of printing certificates for Registrable Securities), (iii) messenger, telephone and delivery expenses, (iv) fees and disbursements of counsel for the Company, (v) Securities Act liability insurance, if the Company so desires such insurance, and (vi) fees and expenses of all other Persons retained by the Company in connection with the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement. In addition, the Company shall be responsible for all of its internal expenses incurred in connection with the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement (including, without limitation, all salaries and expenses of its officers and employees performing legal or accounting duties), the expense of any annual audit and the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the listing of the Registrable Securities on any securities exchange as required hereunder. In no event shall the Company be responsible for any broker or similar commissions of any Holder or, except to the extent provided for in the Transaction Documents, any legal fees or other costs of the Holders.

#### 5. Indemnification.

(a) Indemnification by the Company. The Company shall, notwithstanding any termination of this Agreement, indemnify and hold harmless each Holder, the officers, directors, members, partners, agents, brokers (including brokers who offer and sell Registrable Securities as principal as a result of a pledge or any failure to perform under a margin call of Common Shares), investment advisors and employees (and any other Persons with a functionally equivalent role of a Person holding such titles, notwithstanding a lack of such title or any other title) of each of them, each Person who controls any such Holder (within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act) and the officers, directors, members, stockholders, partners, agents and employees (and any other Persons with a functionally equivalent role of a Person holding such titles, notwithstanding a lack of such title or any other title) of each such

---

controlling Person, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, from and against any and all losses, claims, damages, liabilities, costs (including, without limitation, reasonable attorneys' fees) and expenses (collectively, "Losses"), as incurred, arising out of or relating to (1) any untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in a Registration Statement, any Prospectus or any form of prospectus or in any amendment or supplement thereto or in any preliminary prospectus, or arising out of or relating to any omission or alleged omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein (in the case of any Prospectus or supplement thereto, in light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading or (2) any violation or alleged violation by the Company of the Securities Act, the Exchange Act or any state securities law, or any rule or regulation thereunder, in connection with the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, except to the extent, but only to the extent, that (i) such untrue statements or omissions are based solely upon information regarding such Holder furnished in writing to the Company by such Holder expressly for use therein, or to the extent that such information relates to such Holder or such Holder's proposed method of distribution of Registrable Securities and was reviewed and expressly approved in writing by such Holder expressly for use in a Registration Statement, such Prospectus or in any amendment or supplement thereto (it being understood that the Holder has approved Annex A hereto for this purpose) or (ii) in the case of an occurrence of an event of the type specified in Section 3(d)(iii)-(vi), the use by such Holder of an outdated, defective or otherwise unavailable Prospectus after the Company has notified such Holder in writing that the Prospectus is outdated, defective or otherwise unavailable for use by such Holder and prior to the receipt by such Holder of the Advice contemplated in Section 6(c). The Company shall notify the Holders promptly of the institution, threat or assertion of any Proceeding arising from or in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement of which the Company is aware. Such indemnity shall remain in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of such indemnified person and shall survive the transfer of any Registrable Securities by any of the Holders in accordance with Section 6(f).

(b) Indemnification by Holders. Each Holder shall, severally and not jointly, indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its directors, officers, agents and employees, each Person who controls the Company (within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act and Section 20 of the Exchange Act), and the directors, officers, agents or employees of such controlling Persons, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, from and against all Losses, as incurred, to the extent arising out of or based solely upon: any untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in any Registration Statement, any Prospectus, or in any amendment or supplement thereto or in any preliminary prospectus, or arising out of or relating to any omission or alleged omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein (in the case of any Prospectus or supplement thereto, in light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading (i) to the extent, but only to the extent, that such untrue statement or omission is contained in any information so furnished in writing by such Holder to the Company expressly for inclusion in such Registration Statement or such Prospectus or (ii) to the extent, but only to the extent, that such information relates to such Holder's information provided in the Selling Stockholder Questionnaire or the proposed method of distribution of Registrable Securities and was reviewed and expressly approved in writing by such Holder expressly for use in a Registration Statement (it being understood that the Holder has approved Annex A hereto for this purpose), such Prospectus or in any amendment or supplement thereto. In no event shall the liability of a selling Holder be greater in amount than the dollar amount of the proceeds (net of all expenses paid by such Holder in connection with any claim relating to this Section 5 and the amount of any damages such Holder has otherwise been required to pay by reason of such untrue statement or omission) received by such Holder upon the sale of the Registrable Securities included in the Registration Statement giving rise to such indemnification obligation.

(c) Conduct of Indemnification Proceedings. If any Proceeding shall be brought or asserted against any Person entitled to indemnity hereunder (an "Indemnified Party"), such Indemnified Party shall promptly notify the Person from whom indemnity is sought (the "Indemnifying Party") in writing, and the Indemnifying Party shall have the right to assume the defense thereof, including the employment of counsel reasonably satisfactory to the Indemnified Party and the payment of all fees and expenses incurred in connection with defense thereof, provided that the failure of any Indemnified Party to give such notice shall not relieve the Indemnifying Party of its obligations or liabilities pursuant to this Agreement, except (and only) to the extent that it shall be finally determined by a court of competent jurisdiction (which determination is not subject to appeal or further review) that such failure shall have materially and adversely prejudiced the Indemnifying Party.

An Indemnified Party shall have the right to employ separate counsel in any such Proceeding and to participate in the defense thereof, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such Indemnified Party or Parties unless: (1) the Indemnifying Party has agreed in writing to pay such fees and expenses, (2) the Indemnifying Party shall have failed promptly to assume the defense of such Proceeding and to employ counsel reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnified Party in any such Proceeding, or (3) the named parties to any such Proceeding (including any impleaded parties) include both such Indemnified Party and the Indemnifying Party, and counsel to the Indemnified Party shall reasonably believe that a material conflict of interest is likely to exist if the same counsel were to represent such Indemnified Party and the Indemnifying Party (in which case, if such Indemnified Party

---



notifies the Indemnifying Party in writing that it elects to employ separate counsel at the expense of the Indemnifying Party, the Indemnifying Party shall not have the right to assume the defense thereof and the reasonable fees and expenses of no more than one separate counsel shall be at the expense of the Indemnifying Party). The Indemnifying Party shall not be liable for any settlement of any such Proceeding effected without its written consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. No Indemnifying Party shall, without the prior written consent of the Indemnified Party, effect any settlement of any pending Proceeding in respect of which any Indemnified Party is a party, unless such settlement includes an unconditional release of such Indemnified Party from all liability on claims that are the subject matter of such Proceeding.

Subject to the terms of this Agreement, all reasonable fees and expenses of the Indemnified Party (including reasonable fees and expenses to the extent incurred in connection with investigating or preparing to defend such Proceeding in a manner not inconsistent with this Section) shall be paid to the Indemnified Party, as incurred, within ten Trading Days of written notice thereof to the Indemnifying Party, provided that the Indemnified Party shall promptly reimburse the Indemnifying Party for that portion of such fees and expenses applicable to such actions for which such Indemnified Party is finally determined by a court of competent jurisdiction (which determination is not subject to appeal or further review) not to be entitled to indemnification hereunder.

(d) Contribution. If the indemnification under Section 5(a) or 5(b) is unavailable to an Indemnified Party or insufficient to hold an Indemnified Party harmless for any Losses, then each Indemnifying Party shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by such Indemnified Party, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the Indemnifying Party and Indemnified Party in connection with the actions, statements or omissions that resulted in such Losses as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative fault of such Indemnifying Party and Indemnified Party shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether any action in question, including any untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission of a material fact, has been taken or made by, or relates to information supplied by, such Indemnifying Party or Indemnified Party, and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such action, statement or omission. The amount paid or payable by a party as a result of any Losses shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth in this Agreement, any reasonable attorneys' or other fees or expenses incurred by such party in connection with any Proceeding to the extent such party would have been indemnified for such fees or expenses if the indemnification provided for in this Section was available to such party in accordance with its terms.

The parties hereto agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this Section 5(d) were determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation that does not take into account the equitable considerations referred to in the immediately preceding paragraph. In no event shall the contribution obligation of a Holder of Registrable Securities be greater in amount than the dollar amount of the proceeds (net of all expenses paid by such Holder in connection with any claim relating to this Section 5 and the amount of any damages such Holder has otherwise been required to pay by reason of such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission) received by it upon the sale of the Registrable Securities giving rise to such contribution obligation.

The indemnity and contribution agreements contained in this Section are in addition to any liability that the Indemnifying Parties may have to the Indemnified Parties.

## 6. Miscellaneous.

(a) Remedies. In the event of a breach by the Company or by a Holder of any of their respective obligations under this Agreement, each Holder or the Company, as the case may be, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law and under this Agreement, including recovery of damages, shall be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Agreement. Each of the Company and each Holder agrees that monetary damages would not provide adequate compensation for any losses incurred by reason of a breach by it of any of the provisions of this Agreement and hereby further agrees that, in the event of any action for specific performance in respect of such breach, it shall not assert or shall waive the defense that a remedy at law would be adequate.

(b) No Piggyback on Registrations; Prohibition on Filing Other Registration Statements. Except as set forth on Schedule 6(b) attached hereto, neither the Company nor any of its security holders (other than the Holders in such capacity pursuant hereto) may include securities of the Company in any Registration Statements other than the Registrable Securities. The Company shall not file any other registration statements until all Registrable Securities are registered pursuant to a Registration Statement that is declared effective by the Commission, provided that this Section 6(b) shall not prohibit the Company from filing amendments to registration statements filed prior to the date of this Agreement so long as no new securities are registered on any such existing registration statements.

(c) Discontinued Disposition. By its acquisition of Registrable Securities, each Holder agrees that, upon receipt of a notice from the Company of the occurrence of any event of the kind described in Section 3(d)(iii) through (vi), such Holder will forthwith discontinue disposition of such Registrable Securities under a Registration Statement until it is

---

advised in writing (the “Advice”) by the Company that the use of the applicable Prospectus (as it may have been supplemented or amended) may be resumed. The Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to ensure that the use of the Prospectus may be resumed as promptly as is practicable. The Company agrees and acknowledges that any periods during which the Holder is required to discontinue the disposition of the Registrable Securities hereunder shall be subject to the provisions of Section 2(d).

(d) Amendments and Waivers. The provisions of this Agreement, including the provisions of this sentence, may not be amended, modified or supplemented, and waivers or consents to departures from the provisions hereof may not be given, unless the same shall be in writing and signed by the Company and the Holders of 50.1% or more of the then outstanding Registrable Securities (for purposes of clarification, this includes any Registrable Securities issuable upon exercise or conversion of any Security), provided that, if any amendment, modification or waiver disproportionately and adversely impacts a Holder (or group of Holders), the consent of such disproportionately impacted Holder (or group of Holders) shall be required. If a Registration Statement does not register all of the Registrable Securities pursuant to a waiver or amendment done in compliance with the previous sentence, then the number of Registrable Securities to be registered for each Holder shall be reduced pro rata among all Holders and each Holder shall have the right to designate which of its Registrable Securities shall be omitted from such Registration Statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a waiver or consent to depart from the provisions hereof with respect to a matter that relates exclusively to the rights of a Holder or some Holders and that does not directly or indirectly affect the rights of other Holders may be given only by such Holder or Holders of all of the Registrable Securities to which such waiver or consent relates; provided, however, that the provisions of this sentence may not be amended, modified, or supplemented except in accordance with the provisions of the first sentence of this Section 6(d). No consideration shall be offered or paid to any Person to amend or consent to a waiver or modification of any provision of this Agreement unless the same consideration also is offered to all of the parties to this Agreement.

(e) Notices. Any and all notices or other communications or deliveries required or permitted to be provided hereunder shall be delivered as set forth in the Purchase Agreement.

(f) Successors and Assigns. This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the successors and permitted assigns of each of the parties and shall inure to the benefit of each Holder. The Company may not assign (except by merger) its rights or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of all of the Holders of the then outstanding Registrable Securities. Each Holder may assign their respective rights hereunder in the manner and to the Persons as permitted under Section 5.7 of the Purchase Agreement.

(g) No Inconsistent Agreements. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has entered, as of the date hereof, nor shall the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, on or after the date of this Agreement, enter into any agreement with respect to its securities, that would have the effect of impairing the rights granted to the Holders in this Agreement or otherwise conflicts with the provisions hereof. Except as set forth on Schedule 6(g), neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has previously entered into any agreement granting any registration rights with respect to any of its securities to any Person that have not been satisfied in full.

(h) Execution and Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, all of which when taken together shall be considered one and the same agreement and shall become effective when counterparts have been signed by each party and delivered to the other party, it being understood that both parties need not sign the same counterpart. In the event that any signature is delivered by facsimile transmission or by e-mail delivery of a “.pdf” format data file, such signature shall create a valid and binding obligation of the party executing (or on whose behalf such signature is executed) with the same force and effect as if such facsimile or “.pdf” signature page were an original thereof.

(i) Governing Law. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of this Agreement shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

(j) Cumulative Remedies. The remedies provided herein are cumulative and not exclusive of any other remedies provided by law.

(k) Severability. If any term, provision, covenant or restriction of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be invalid, illegal, void or unenforceable, the remainder of the terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions set forth herein shall remain in full force and effect and shall in no way be affected, impaired or invalidated, and the parties hereto shall use their commercially reasonable efforts to find and employ an alternative means to achieve the same or substantially the same result as that contemplated by such term, provision, covenant or restriction. It is hereby stipulated and declared to be the intention of the parties that they would have executed the remaining terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions without including any of such that may be hereafter declared invalid, illegal, void or unenforceable.

---

(l) Headings. The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only, do not constitute a part of the Agreement and shall not be deemed to limit or affect any of the provisions hereof.

(m) Independent Nature of Holders' Obligations and Rights. The obligations of each Holder hereunder are several and not joint with the obligations of any other Holder hereunder, and no Holder shall be responsible in any way for the performance of the obligations of any other Holder hereunder. Nothing contained herein or in any other agreement or document delivered at any closing, and no action taken by any Holder pursuant hereto or thereto, shall be deemed to constitute the Holders as a partnership, an association, a joint venture or any other kind of group or entity, or create a presumption that the Holders are in any way acting in concert or as a group or entity with respect to such obligations or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any other matters, and the Company acknowledges that the Holders are not acting in concert or as a group, and the Company shall not assert any such claim, with respect to such obligations or transactions. Each Holder shall be entitled to protect and enforce its rights, including without limitation the rights arising out of this Agreement, and it shall not be necessary for any other Holder to be joined as an additional party in any proceeding for such purpose. The use of a single agreement with respect to the obligations of the Company contained was solely in the control of the Company, not the action or decision of any Holder, and was done solely for the convenience of the Company and not because it was required or requested to do so by any Holder. It is expressly understood and agreed that each provision contained in this Agreement is between the Company and a Holder, solely, and not between the Company and the Holders collectively and not between and among Holders.

\*\*\*\*\*

*(Signature Pages Follow)*

---

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed this Registration Rights Agreement as of the date first written above.

**Apexigen, Inc.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have executed this Registration Rights Agreement as of the date first written above.

Name of Purchaser: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Purchaser:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

#### **Annex A**

##### **Plan of Distribution**

Each Selling Stockholder (the “Selling Stockholders”) of the securities and any of their pledgees, assignees and successors-in-interest may, from time to time, sell any or all of their securities covered hereby on the principal Trading Market or any other stock exchange, market or trading facility on which the securities are traded or in private transactions. These sales may be at fixed or negotiated prices. A Selling Stockholder may use any one or more of the following methods when selling securities:

- ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which the broker-dealer solicits purchasers;
- block trades in which the broker-dealer will attempt to sell the securities as agent but may position and resell a portion of the block as principal to facilitate the transaction;
- purchases by a broker-dealer as principal and resale by the broker-dealer for its account;
- an exchange distribution in accordance with the rules of the applicable exchange;
- privately negotiated transactions;
- settlement of short sales;
- in transactions through broker-dealers that agree with the Selling Stockholders to sell a specified number of such securities at a stipulated price per security;
- through the writing or settlement of options or other hedging transactions, whether through an options exchange or otherwise;
- a combination of any such methods of sale; or
- any other method permitted pursuant to applicable law.

The Selling Stockholders may also sell securities under Rule 144 or any other exemption from registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), if available, rather than under this prospectus.

Broker-dealers engaged by the Selling Stockholders may arrange for other brokers-dealers to participate in sales. Broker-dealers may receive commissions or discounts from the Selling Stockholders (or, if any broker-dealer acts as agent for the purchaser of securities, from the purchaser) in amounts to be negotiated, but, except as set forth in a supplement to this Prospectus, in the case of an agency transaction not in excess of a customary brokerage commission in compliance with FINRA Rule 2121; and in the case of a principal transaction a markup or markdown in compliance with FINRA Rule 2121.

In connection with the sale of the securities or interests therein, the Selling Stockholders may enter into hedging transactions with broker-dealers or other financial institutions, which may in turn engage in short sales of the securities in the course of hedging the positions they assume. The Selling Stockholders may also sell securities short and deliver these securities to close out their short positions, or loan or pledge the securities to broker-dealers that in turn may sell these securities. The Selling Stockholders may also enter into option or other transactions with broker-dealers or other financial institutions or create one or more derivative securities which require the delivery to such broker-dealer or other financial institution of securities offered by this prospectus, which securities such broker-dealer or other financial institution may resell pursuant to this prospectus (as supplemented or amended to reflect such transaction).

---

The Selling Stockholders and any broker-dealers or agents that are involved in selling the securities may be deemed to be “underwriters” within the meaning of the Securities Act in connection with such sales. In such event, any commissions received by such broker-dealers or agents and any profit on the resale of the securities purchased by them may be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts under the Securities Act. Each Selling Stockholder has informed the Company that it does not have any written or oral agreement or understanding, directly or indirectly, with any person to distribute the securities.

The Company is required to pay certain fees and expenses incurred by the Company incident to the registration of the securities. The Company has agreed to indemnify the Selling Stockholders against certain losses, claims, damages and liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

We agreed to keep this prospectus effective until the earlier of (i) the date on which the securities may be resold by the Selling Stockholders without registration and without regard to any volume or manner-of-sale limitations by reason of Rule 144, without the requirement for the Company to be in compliance with the current public information under Rule 144 under the Securities Act or any other rule of similar effect or (ii) all of the securities have been sold pursuant to this prospectus or Rule 144 under the Securities Act or any other rule of similar effect. The resale securities will be sold only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers if required under applicable state securities laws. In addition, in certain states, the resale securities covered hereby may not be sold unless they have been registered or qualified for sale in the applicable state or an exemption from the registration or qualification requirement is available and is complied with.

Under applicable rules and regulations under the Exchange Act, any person engaged in the distribution of the resale securities may not simultaneously engage in market making activities with respect to the Common Shares for the applicable restricted period, as defined in Regulation M, prior to the commencement of the distribution. In addition, the Selling Stockholders will be subject to applicable provisions of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, including Regulation M, which may limit the timing of purchases and sales of the Common Shares by the Selling Stockholders or any other person. We will make copies of this prospectus available to the Selling Stockholders and have informed them of the need to deliver a copy of this prospectus to each purchaser at or prior to the time of the sale (including by compliance with Rule 172 under the Securities Act).

## **Annex B**

### **SELLING SHAREHOLDERS**

The Common Shares being offered by the selling shareholders are those previously issued to the selling shareholders, and those issuable to the selling shareholders, upon exercise of the warrants. For additional information regarding the issuances of those Common Shares and warrants, see “Private Placement of Common Shares and Warrants” above. We are registering the Common Shares in order to permit the selling shareholders to offer the shares for resale from time to time. Except for the ownership of the Common Shares and the warrants, the selling shareholders have not had any material relationship with us within the past three years.

The table below lists the selling shareholders and other information regarding the beneficial ownership of the Common Shares by each of the selling shareholders. The second column lists the number of Common Shares beneficially owned by each selling shareholder, based on its ownership of the Common Shares and warrants, as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2023, assuming exercise of the warrants held by the selling shareholders on that date, without regard to any limitations on exercises.

The third column lists the Common Shares being offered by this prospectus by the selling shareholders.

In accordance with the terms of a registration rights agreement with the selling shareholders, this prospectus generally covers the resale of the sum of (i) the number of Common Shares issued to the selling shareholders in the “Private Placement of Common Shares and Warrants” described above and (ii) the maximum number of Common Shares issuable upon exercise of the related warrants, determined as if the outstanding warrants were exercised in full as of the trading day immediately preceding the date this registration statement was initially filed with the SEC, each as of the trading day immediately preceding the applicable date of determination and all subject to adjustment as provided in the registration right agreement, without regard to any limitations on the exercise of the warrants. The fourth column assumes the sale of all of the shares offered by the selling shareholders pursuant to this prospectus.

Under the terms of the warrants, a selling shareholder may not exercise any such warrants to the extent such exercise would cause such selling shareholder, together with its affiliates and attribution parties, to beneficially own a number of Common Shares which would exceed 4.99% or 9.99%, as applicable, of our then outstanding Common Shares following such exercise, excluding for purposes of such determination Common Shares issuable upon exercise of such warrants which have not been exercised. The number of shares in the second and fourth columns do not reflect this limitation. The selling shareholders may sell all, some or none of their shares in this offering. See “Plan of Distribution.”

---

Name of Selling Shareholder	Number of Common Shares Owned Prior to Offering	Maximum Number of Common Shares to be Sold Pursuant to this Prospectus	Number of Common Shares Owned After Offering
-----------------------------	---	---	--

## Annex C

### APEXIGEN, INC.

#### Selling Stockholder Notice and Questionnaire

The undersigned beneficial owner of Common Shares (the “Registrable Securities”) of Apexigen, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), understands that the Company has filed or intends to file with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “Commission”) a registration statement (the “Registration Statement”) for the registration and resale under Rule 415 of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), of the Registrable Securities, in accordance with the terms of the Registration Rights Agreement (the “Registration Rights Agreement”) to which this document is annexed. A copy of the Registration Rights Agreement is available from the Company upon request at the address set forth below. All capitalized terms not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Registration Rights Agreement.

Certain legal consequences arise from being named as a selling stockholder in the Registration Statement and the related prospectus. Accordingly, holders and beneficial owners of Registrable Securities are advised to consult their own securities law counsel regarding the consequences of being named or not being named as a selling stockholder in the Registration Statement and the related prospectus.

#### NOTICE

The undersigned beneficial owner (the “Selling Stockholder”) of Registrable Securities hereby elects to include all of the Registrable Securities owned by it in the Registration Statement.

The undersigned hereby provides the following information to the Company and represents and warrants that such information is accurate:

#### QUESTIONNAIRE

**1. Name.**

- (a) Full Legal Name of Selling Stockholder:

---

- (b) Full Legal Name of Registered Holder (if not the same as (a) above) through which Registrable Securities are held:

---

- (c) Full Legal Name of Natural Control Person (which means a natural person who directly or indirectly alone or with others has power to vote or dispose of the securities covered by this Questionnaire):

---



---

## 2. Contact Information for Notices to Selling Stockholder:

---

Address:

Telephone:

Email Address:

Contact Person:

## 3. Broker-Dealer Status:

(a) Are you a broker-dealer?

Yes ☐ No ☐

(b) If “yes” to Section 3(a), did you receive your Registrable Securities as compensation for investment banking services to the Company?

Yes ☐ No ☐

Note: If “no” to Section 3(b), the Commission’s staff has indicated that you should be identified as an underwriter in the Registration Statement.

(c) Are you an affiliate of a broker-dealer?

Yes ☐ No ☐

(d) If you are an affiliate of a broker-dealer, do you certify that you purchased the Registrable Securities in the ordinary course of business, and at the time of the purchase of the Registrable Securities to be resold, you had no agreements or understandings, directly or indirectly, with any person to distribute the Registrable Securities?

Yes ☐ No ☐

Note: If “no” to Section 3(d), the Commission’s staff has indicated that you should be identified as an underwriter in the Registration Statement.

## 4. Beneficial Ownership of Securities of the Company Owned by the Selling Stockholder.

*Except as set forth below in this Item 4, the undersigned is not the beneficial or registered owner of any securities of the Company other than the securities issuable pursuant to the Purchase Agreement.*

(a) Type and Amount of other securities beneficially owned by the Selling Stockholder:

## 5. Relationships with the Company:

*Except as set forth below, neither the undersigned nor any of its affiliates, officers, directors or principal equity holders (owners of 5% of more of the equity securities of the undersigned) has held any position or office or has had any other material relationship with the Company (or its predecessors or affiliates) during the past three years.*

State any exceptions here:

The undersigned agrees to promptly notify the Company of any material inaccuracies or changes in the information provided herein that may occur subsequent to the date hereof at any time while the Registration Statement remains effective; provided, that the undersigned shall not be required to notify the Company of any changes to the number of securities held or owned by the undersigned or its affiliates.

By signing below, the undersigned consents to the disclosure of the information contained herein in its answers to Items 1 through 5 and the inclusion of such information in the Registration Statement and the related prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto. The undersigned understands that such information will be relied upon by the Company in connection with the preparation or amendment of the Registration Statement and the related prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto.

---

IN WITNESS WHEREOF the undersigned, by authority duly given, has caused this Notice and Questionnaire to be executed and delivered either in person or by its duly authorized agent.

Date: Beneficial Owner:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

**PLEASE FAX A COPY (OR EMAIL A .PDF COPY) OF THE COMPLETED AND EXECUTED NOTICE AND QUESTIONNAIRE TO:**

---





## Apexigen Announces Approximately \$2.8 Million Private Placement Financing

**SAN CARLOS, CA - January 24, 2023** – Apexigen, Inc. (Nasdaq: APGN), a clinical-stage company focused on developing innovative antibody-based therapeutics for the treatment of cancer with a focus on immuno-oncology, today announced that it has entered into definitive agreements with new, biotechnology-focused investors for the issuance and sale of an aggregate of approximately 2.0 million shares of its common stock (or pre-funded warrants in lieu thereof) and warrants to purchase up to an aggregate of approximately 2.0 million shares of common stock in a private placement offering. The purchase price per share and accompanying warrant is \$1.40 (or \$1.399 per pre-funded warrant and accompanying warrant). The warrants have an exercise price of \$1.40 per share and will expire 5 years from the effective date of the registration statement that will be filed in connection with the private placement.

The private placement is expected to close by January 31, 2023, subject to the satisfaction of customary closing conditions. The gross proceeds of approximately \$2.8 million, before deducting placement agent fees and other expenses, will be used to finance and further support the company's ongoing Phase 2 clinical study evaluating its CD40 antibody, sotigalimab, in combination with doxorubicin in patients with liposarcoma, and for general corporate purposes.

Brookline Capital Markets, a division of Arcadia Securities, LLC, served as the exclusive placement agent for the private placement transaction.

The securities to be sold in the private placement have not been registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act") or any state or other jurisdiction's securities laws, and may not be resold absent registration under, or exemption from registration under, the Securities Act. Apexigen has agreed to file a registration statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") registering the resale of the shares of common stock issued and sold in the private placement (including the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants) within 30 days of the closing of the private placement.

This press release shall not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy these securities, nor shall there be any sale of these securities in any state or other jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation or sale would be unlawful prior to the registration or qualification under the securities laws of any such state or other jurisdiction.

### ***About Apexigen***

Apexigen is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on discovering and developing a new generation of antibody therapeutics for oncology, with an emphasis on new immuno-oncology agents designed to harness the patient's immune system to combat and eradicate cancer. Sotigalimab and Apexigen's other programs were discovered using Apexigen's proprietary APXiMAB™ discovery platform. This platform has enabled Apexigen and its collaboration partners to discover and develop therapeutic antibodies against a variety of molecular targets, including targets that are difficult to drug with conventional antibody technologies. Multiple product candidates have been discovered using the APXiMAB platform, one of which is commercially available and the others are in clinical development, either internally by Apexigen or by its licensees. For more information, please visit [www.apexigen.com](http://www.apexigen.com).

### ***Forward-Looking Statements***

This press release contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, including statements regarding the use of proceeds from and the closing of the private placement; Apexigen's development of innovative oncology therapeutics; and the capabilities of therapeutics that Apexigen has developed or may develop. Any statements contained herein that are not statements of historical fact may be deemed to be forward-looking statements. In addition, any statements that refer to projections, forecasts or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any underlying assumptions, are forward-looking statements. The words "anticipate," "believe," "continue," "could," "estimate," "expect," "intends," "may," "might," "plan," "possible," "potential," "predict," "project," "should," "would" and similar expressions may identify forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that a statement is not forward-looking. The forward-looking statements contained in this press release are based on certain assumptions and analyses made by the management of Apexigen in light of their respective experience and their perception of historical trends, current conditions and expected future developments, as well as other factors they believe are appropriate in the circumstances. There can be no assurance that future developments affecting Apexigen will be those that Apexigen has anticipated. These forward-looking statements involve a

number of risks, uncertainties (some of which are beyond the control of Apexigen) or other assumptions that may cause actual results or performance to be materially different from those expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements, including the ability of Apexigen to close the private placement, continue to meet the Nasdaq listing standards, and achieve successful clinical results or commercial adoption of approved antibody candidates, or that Apexigen will have sufficient capital following the private placement to operate as anticipated. Should one or more of these risks or uncertainties materialize, or should any of Apexigen's assumptions prove incorrect, actual results may vary in material respects from those projected in these forward-looking statements. Additional factors that could cause actual results to differ are discussed under the heading "Risk Factors" and in other sections of Apexigen's current and periodic reports filed or furnished from time to time with the SEC. All forward-looking statements in this press release are made as of the date hereof, based on information available to Apexigen, and Apexigen assumes no obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statement, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

**Investor Contact:**

Bruce Mackle

LifeSci Advisors

+1-646-889-1200

[bmackle@lifesciadvisors.com](mailto:bmackle@lifesciadvisors.com)

**Apexigen Contact:**

William Duke

Chief Financial Officer

Apexigen, Inc.

+1-650-931-6236

[ir@apexigen.com](mailto:ir@apexigen.com)

---

